



Class DA32

Book P173

1
A

1339
3740

HISTORY OF ENGLAND,

ILLUSTRATED

BY CHART

AND ADAPTED

TO THE USE OF SCHOOLS, COLLEGES,

AND THE

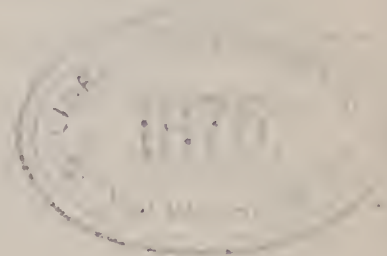
PRIVATE STUDY.

BY GEORGE PALMER.

HARTFORD, CONN.:

PUBLISHED BY E. CARRINGTON AND GEORGE PALMER.

1860.



Entered according to an Act of Congress, in the year 1860, by
GEORGE PALMER,
in the Clerk's Office of the District Court of the District of Connecticut.

Da32

P173



INTRODUCTION.

I OFFER no apology for this book and accompanying chart. If it is what it purports to be, it needs none; if it is not, no apology can avail.

Every educational man will admit that a text-book of English History, adapted to a course of public instruction, is demanded. To meet this demand, and also to furnish for the private study a convenient, concise and connected work, has been the aim of the author.

Comparatively few readers have the time and disposition to follow the full historians; and abridgments have generally furnished isolated *facts*, without much regard to the causes or the order of their narration.

The system of teaching the eye by chart and illustration is already too well appreciated to render any comment necessary. What the diagram, the skeleton or manakin are in the demonstration of geometry, anatomy and physiology, the chart is in the teaching or study of history.

No scholar's pen can represent in words a breathing, life-like resemblance like the artist's brush; no verbal

description of personal appearance can make so vivid and truthful an impression as a single glance.

By the chart, the different reigning families of England are so grouped and connected, that memory is aided and confusion avoided. Chronology, too, as important in the study of history as straw to the mortar of the ancients, is clearly exhibited.

Throughout the entire work, method, order, exactness and connectedness, so essential to insure interest and profit in any study, have been carefully observed.

In perfecting this condensation I have consulted standard authors, as Hume, Smollet, Rapin, Miller, &c., and have availed myself so liberally of their writings, that I prefer to make my acknowledgment of indebtedness thus general, and without special credit to any.

GEORGE PALMER.

HARTFORD, Conn.

TO TEACHERS.

FROM my own experience in teaching I would recommend that a thorough knowledge of the chart be obtained, before proceeding to the general history.

To facilitate this, the chapter following the "Law of the Descent" has been prepared.

GEO. PALMER.

THE LAW OF THE DESCENT

OF the crown should be thoroughly understood as preliminary to the study of the chart, in order that the student may detect the violations of the law, and be at once furnished with the *causes* of a great number of civil wars, the accounts of which occupy a large space in English history.

This law is as follows :

FIRST.—The crown of England is *hereditary*, or descendible to the next heir, on the death of the last proprietor.

SECOND.—Males are preferred to females, and the right of primogeniture among the males is strictly adhered to : Thus Edward V. succeeded to the crown, in preference to Richard, his younger brother, and Elizabeth, his elder sister.

THIRD.—On failure of the male line, the crown descends to the issue female : Thus Mary succeeded to Edward VI. ; and the line of Margaret, daughter of Henry VII., succeeded on failure of the line of Henry VIII. But among the females, the crown descends, by right of primogeniture, to the eldest daughter only, and her issue, and not as in common inheritances, to all the daughters at once : Thus Mary succeeded to the crown alone, and not in partnership with her younger sister, Elizabeth.

What is the first rule for the descent of the crown? The second? Give an illustration. The third rule? Give illustration.

FOURTH.—The doctrine of representation prevails in the descent of the crown, whereby the lineal descendants of the last proprietor stand in the same place as their ancestor, if living, would have done: Thus Richard II. succeeded his grandfather, Edward III., in right of his father, the Black Prince, to the exclusion of all his uncles, his grandfather's younger children.

FIFTH.—On failure of lineal descendants, the crown goes to the next collateral relatives of the late king; provided they are lineally descended from the blood royal, that is, from that royal stock which originally acquired the crown: Thus Henry I. succeeded to William II., John to Richard I., and James to Elizabeth, being all derived from the Conqueror, the regal stock.

SIXTH.—The doctrine of *hereditary* right, by no means implies an *indefeasible* right to the throne; for it is unquestionably in the power of the king and both houses of parliament to defeat this hereditary right; and, by particular limitations and provisions, to exclude the immediate heir, and vest the inheritance in any one else.

SEVENTH.—However the crown may be limited or transferred, it still retains its descendible quality, and becomes hereditary in the wearer of it.

These rules were not strictly observed until after the period of the Norman Conquest, as will be seen in the case of the sons of Ethelwolf succeeding to each other in the kingdom, without regard to the children of the elder branches, according to the rule of succession prescribed

The fourth rule? Illustration. Fifth rule? Illustration. Sixth rule? Seventh rule? What is said of these rules and their violation?

by their father in the heat of the Danish invasions ; and also, that of Edred, the uncle of Edwy, who mounted the throne, in right of his nephew, a minor, the times being very troublesome and dangerous ; nor were the consequences of these innovations so serious as those which followed like violations in later times.

SAXON MONARCHS.

(827) EGBERT. (838)

THE kingdoms of the Heptarchy were united in King Egbert, A. D. 827. Egbert died A. D. 838, leaving the crown to his son

(838) ETHELWOLF. (857)

Ethelwolf ascended the throne in 838, and died in 857, leaving four sons,—Ethelbald, Ethelbert, Ethelred and Alfred. By his will he shared England between his two sons,

(857) ETHELBALD AND ETHELBERT. (866)

Ethelbald and Ethelbert ascended the throne in 857. Ethelbald died in 860, and Ethelbert reigned alone till his death in 866.

(866) ETHELRED I. (871)

Ethelred succeeded his brother in 866, and died in 871.

(871) ALFRED (the Great.) (901)

Alfred, youngest son of Ethelwolf, and brother of Ethelred, ascended the throne in 871, and died in 901.

When and under whom were the kingdoms of the Heptarchy united? Who succeeded Egbert, and when? His family? How, when and to whom leave the crown? Tell us of the reigns of Ethelbald and Ethelbert; of Ethelred; Alfred (the great.)

(901) EDWARD (the Elder.) (925)

Edward, son of Alfred, succeeded his father in 901, and died in 925.

(925) ATHELSTAN. (941)

Athelstan, natural son of Edward, ascended the throne in 925, and died in 941.

(941) EDMUND. (946)

Edmund, legitimate son of Edward, succeeded Athelstan in 941, and died in 946.

(946) EDRED. (955)

Edred, brother of Edmund, succeeded to the throne in 946, and died in 955.

(955) EDWY. (959)

Edwy, nephew of Edred, and son of Edmund, ascended the throne in 955, and died in 959.

(959) EDGAR. (974)

Edgar, youngest brother of Edwy, ascended the throne in 959, and died in 974.

(974) EDWARD (the Martyr.) (978)

Edward, son of Edgar by his first marriage, succeeded his father in 974, and died in 978.

(978) ETHELRED II. (1016)

Ethelred, son of Edgar, by Elfrida, his second wife, ascended the throne in 978, and died in 1016.

Of Edward (the elder;) Athelstan; Edmund; Edred; Edwy; Edgar; Edward (the martyr;) Ethelred.

(1016) EDMUND, (Ironside.) (1017)

Edmund succeeded his father in 1016, and was murdered in 1017. He was the last of the unbroken line of Saxon kings who had reigned from the time of Egbert.

THE DANISH KINGS.

(1017) CANUTE. (1035)

Canute, the first of the Danish race of kings who ruled over England, succeeded Edmund in 1017, and died in 1035.

(1035) HAROLD, (Harefoot.) (1039)

Harold succeeded his father in 1035, and died in 1039.

(1039) HARDICANUTE. (1041)

Hardicanute succeeded his brother Harold in 1039, and died 1041.

SAXON LINE RESTORED.

(1041) EDWARD (the Confessor.) (1066)

Edward the confessor, son of Ethelred, and half brother of Edmund Ironsides, ascended the throne in 1041, and died in 1066.

Of Edmund, (Ironside.) What race of kings next took possession of the throne? How many were they? Who? Give an account of their reigns. When and in whom was the Saxon line restored? How descended? What is said of Edward the Confessor?

(1066) HAROLD II. (1066)

Harold, son of Earl Godwin, a Saxon, though not of royal blood, ascended the throne in 1066, and was killed in the battle of Hastings, which was fought the same year.

THE NORMAN FAMILY.

(1066) WILLIAM (the Conqueror.) (1087)

William I., Duke of Normandy, the first king of the Norman family, ascended the throne in 1066, and died from a bruise in 1087.

(1087) WILLIAM II., (surnamed Rufus.) (1100)

William, surnamed *Rufus*, from the color of his hair, third son of William the *Conqueror*, succeeded his father in 1087, and was slain by an arrow in 1100. He left no heirs.

(1100) HENRY I., (Beauclerk.) (1135)

Henry I., younger brother of William II., and fourth son of William I., ascended the throne in 1100, and died from eating of lampreys, in 1135. He left one daughter, Matilda, who married Geoffrey Plantaganet for her second husband.

(1135) STEPHEN. (1154)

Stephen, son of Adela, fourth daughter of William

Tell us of Harold II. What family next possessed the throne? When and in whom did this family commence? What is said of William I.; William II.; Henry I.; Stephen?

I., by Stephen, earl of Blois, ascended the throne in 1135, and died in 1154.

THE PLANTAGANETS.

The Plantaganets commenced with Henry II., and possessed the throne through eight reigns to the time of Henry the Fourth's accession, embracing a period of 245 years.

(1154) HENRY II. (1189)

Henry II., son of Matilda, daughter of Henry I. who married Geoffrey Plantaganet, ascended the throne in 1154, and died in 1189.

(1189) RICHARD I., (the Lion-hearted.) (1199)

Richard I. succeeded his father in 1189, and died in 1199 without heirs.

(1199) JOHN, (Lackland.) (1216)

John, youngest son of Henry II., succeeded his brother in 1199. At this time Arthur, son of Geoffrey, an elder brother of John, was entitled, by right of his father, to the throne. John died in 1216.

(1216) HENRY III. (1272)

Henry III., son of John, ascended the throne in 1216, and died in 1272.

What family now came on? How did this family of kings originate? Tell about them. What is said of the reign of Henry II.? Richard I.? John? Henry III.?

(1272) EDWARD I. (1307)

Edward I., son of Henry III., succeeded his father in 1272, and died in 1307.

(1307) EDWARD II. (1327)

Edward II., son of Edward I., succeeded to the throne in 1307, and was murdered in 1327.

(1327) EDWARD III. (1377)

Edward III., son of Edward II., succeeded to the throne in 1327, and died in 1377.

(1377) RICHARD II. (1399)

The Black Prince, eldest son of Edward III., died one year before his father, and his son, Richard II., succeeded to the throne 1377; was deposed in 1399, and murdered in the year 1400.

THE HOUSE OF LANCASTER.

The house of Lancaster began in 1399 with Henry IV., the son of John of Gaunt, duke of Lancaster, fourth son of Edward III., and ended with the dethroning of

Of Edward I.? Why was this Edward called Edward I.? (see note;) Edward II.; Edward III.; Richard II. What house next possessed the throne? Give a brief account of this house.

NOTE.—The name Edward has already occurred several times in this history. These were all of Saxon race; but Edward, the son of Henry III., being the first Edward of the Norman race, is always known in history by the name of Edward I.

King Henry VI., in 1461, embracing a period of 62 years.

(1399) HENRY IV. (1413)

Henry IV. ascended the throne in 1399, and died in 1413.

(1413) HENRY V. (1422)

Henry V., son of Henry IV., succeeded in 1413, and died in 1422.

(1422) HENRY VI. (1461)

Henry VI., son of Henry V., succeeded to the throne in 1422, and was dethroned in 1461 by Edward, earl of Marche.

THE HOUSE OF YORK.

The house of York possessed the crown from Edward IV., in 1461, till the death of Richard III., in 1485, embracing a period of 24 years.

(1461) EDWARD IV. (1483)

Edward IV. commenced his reign in 1461, and died in 1483.

His father, Richard, duke of York, (killed in the battle of Wakefield, in 1460,) was the son of Richard, earl of Cambridge, son of Edward de Langley, fifth son of Edward III.

What is said of Henry IV.? Henry V.? Henry VI.? What house succeeded? An account of it. When did Edward IV. ascend the throne? Trace his descent.

Upon the deposition and death of Richard II. without heirs, the crown belonged in the Lionel branch of the family of Edward III.

Lionel, duke of Clarence, the second son of Edward III., died in 1368, leaving a daughter, Phillipa, who married Edmund Mortimer. They left a son, Roger, who was the father of Ann Mortimer, who married Richard, earl of Cambridge, grandfather of Edward IV.

(1483) EDWARD V. (1483)

Edward V., son of Edward IV., was never crowned, and bore the royal title but two months and twelve days, when, with his brother Richard, he was murdered in the Tower, at the instigation of his uncle, Richard, duke of Gloucester.

(1483) RICHARD III. (1485)

Richard III., the brother of Edward IV., and uncle to the late king, ascended the throne in 1483, and was killed in the battle of Bosworth, by Henry, earl of Richmond, in 1485. He was the last king of the house of York, and the last of the family of Plantaganet, who had possessed the throne from the time of Henry II.

THE TUDOR FAMILY.

The Tudor family began with Henry VII., in 1485, and ended with Queen Elizabeth, in 1603.

An account of his reign. What is said of Edward Vth's reign? Richard III.? The last of what house? What family? What family next took the crown? In whom did this family begin and end?

Henry VII. was the son of Margaret Beaufort, the daughter of John, duke of Somerset, the son of John, earl of Somerset, who was an illegitimate son of John of Gaunt, fourth son of Edward III., by Catharine Swineford, whom he afterwards married. Their issue was legitimated by parliament, by the name of Beaufort, in the reign of Richard II., but with the express exception, that neither they nor their issue should succeed to the crown. The father of Henry VII. was Edmund Tudor, who was the son of Sir Owen Tudor, by Catharine of France, widow of Henry V.

(1485) HENRY VII. (1509)

Henry VII. ascended the throne in 1485, and died in 1509.

(1509) HENRY VIII. (1547)

Henry VIII., son of Henry VII., ascended the throne in 1509, and died in 1547.

(1547) EDWARD VI. (1553)

Edward VI., only son of Henry VIII., by Jane Seymour, his third wife, ascended the throne in 1547, and died in 1553 without heirs.

(1553) MARY. (1558)

Mary, daughter of Henry VIII., by Catharine of Aragon, his first wife, succeeded to the throne in 1553, married Philip of Spain, and died in 1558, leaving no issue.

Trace the descent of Henry VII. Give an account of the reign of Henry VII.; Henry VIII.; Edward VI.; Mary.

(1558) ELIZABETH. (1603)

Elizabeth, daughter of Henry VIII., by Anne Boleyn, his second wife, ascended the throne in 1558, and reigned till the time of her death in 1603. She never married.

She was the last sovereign of the Tudor line.

THE STUART FAMILY.

The Stuart family ascended the throne in 1603, and retained possession till the death of Queen Anne, in 1714, embracing a period of one hundred and eleven years.

(1603) JAMES I. (1625)

James I. ascended the throne in 1603, and died in 1625.

He was the son of Mary, Queen of Scots, the daughter of James V. of Scotland, the son of James IV. of Scotland, who married Margaret Tudor, daughter of Henry VII. of England.

James' father was Henry Stuart, (Lord Darnley,) the son of Margaret Douglas, the daughter of ——— Douglas who married Margaret Tudor, daughter of Henry VII.

(1625) CHARLES I. (1649)

Charles I. succeeded to the throne on the death of

Of Elizabeth. Next family? Brief account of it. Of reign of James I. Trace his descent. Charles I.

his father, in 1625, and reigned until he was beheaded, in 1649.

COMMONWEALTH OF ENGLAND.

After the death of Charles I. there was an interregnum of eleven years and four months, during most of which time the government was administered by Oliver Cromwell and his son, Richard Cromwell, under the title of Protector, until 1660, when monarchy was restored in the person of Charles Stuart, son of Charles I.

(1660) CHARLES II. (1685)

Charles II. ascended the throne in 1660, and died in 1685, without legitimate issue.

(1685) JAMES II. (1688)

James II. succeeded to the throne on the death of his brother Charles II., in 1685, and abdicated in 1688.

(1688) WILLIAM AND MARY. (1702)

William, the son of Mary, a daughter of Charles I., who married William, Prince of Orange, and Mary, the daughter of James II., ascended the throne in 1688. Mary died in 1694; and William reigned alone, under the name of William III., until his death in 1702. They left no issue.

(1702) ANNE. (1714)

Anne, second daughter of James II., reigned from

The Commonwealth. Government, how administered? Restoration of monarchy, when and in whom? Charles II.; James II.; William and Mary; Anne.

1702 to 1714. She married Prince George of Denmark. They left no heirs.

THE HOUSE OF BRUNSWICK.

The house of Brunswick, now reigning upon the English throne, commenced with George I., in 1714.

(1714) GEORGE I. (1727)

George I. was the son of Ernest Augustus, Elector of Brunswick, by Sophia, daughter of Elizabeth, eldest daughter of James I. He ascended the throne in 1714, and died in 1727.

(1727) GEORGE II. (1760)

George II., son of George I., commenced his reign in 1727, and died in 1760.

(1760) GEORGE III. (1820)

George III. was the son of Frederick William, eldest son of George II. His reign commenced in 1760, and ended in 1820.

(1820) GEORGE IV. (1830)

George IV., eldest son of George III., ascended the throne in 1820, and died in 1830.

He left no legitimate issue.

(1830) WILLIAM IV. (1837)

William IV., the third son of George III., (the

In what house did the crown next descend? When and in whom commence? Account of the reign of George I. His descent; George II.; George III.; George IV.. William IV.

second, the duke of York, dying while young,) succeeded to the throne in 1830, and died in 1837, leaving no heirs.

(1837)

VICTORIA.

Victoria, the present reigning sovereign of England, was the daughter of Edward, duke of Kent, fourth son of George III. She ascended the throne in 1837, and was married in 1840 to Albert Charles Augustus Emanuel, prince of Saxe and duke of Saxe-Coburg.

What is said of Victoria?

HISTORY OF ENGLAND.

THE early history of all ancient nations is involved in obscurity, uncertainty and contradiction. When the history of past events is intrusted to memory, or oral tradition, it is so lost or disfigured, as to afford little entertainment or valuable instruction. Fable supplies the place of history, and credulity and superstition that of knowledge.

All ancient writers represent that the first inhabitants of Britain were a tribe of Gauls or Celts, who peopled the island from the neighboring continent. Their language, their manners, their governments and their superstitions, were the same.

The inhabitants resembled, in their manners and customs, the native Indians of America. They dwelt in huts, were clothed with the skins of beasts, and lived principally by hunting, fishing and plunder. They were divided into small tribes, that were continually at war with each other. Their government was in form monarchical, and their religion was a most considerable part of their government. Their priests were called Druids, who exercised an extensive civil and criminal jurisdiction.

What is said of the early history of ancient nations? What of history intrusted to memory? Who were the first inhabitants of Britain? What of their language? Whom did they resemble? In what respect? Their government. What of their priests?

THE ROMANS.

Such was the condition of the people when Julius Cæsar made an invasion of the island 55 years B. C. After a most obstinate resistance, he established his sovereignty over a large part of the island, then retired into Gaul. The civil wars in which Rome was engaged at this time, directed the attention of the conqueror to affairs nearer home, and the Britons enjoyed their sovereignty unmolested for nearly a century, when the Emperor Claudius began to think of reducing them again under the dominion of the Romans. Other Roman generals invaded the island and advanced the Roman conquests, until finally, under Julius Agricola, the whole southern part of the island was reduced to subjection.

The Britons acquiescing in the dominion of their Roman masters, were gradually incorporated as a part of the Roman empire. But the time had now arrived when the Roman empire itself was fast approaching dissolution. Self-preservation began to supersede the ambition of power, and the emperors recalled their distant legions, and Britain was again left to itself.

No sooner were the Roman armies withdrawn from the island, than the Picts and Scots, who dwelt in the northern part beyond the Roman dominions, infested the Roman provinces with piracy and rapine. The Britons supplicated Rome for succor, which was rendered until the Romans themselves, reduced to extremities at home, informed the Britons that they must no

When did Cæsar invade Britain? What was the consequence? What now engaged the attention of the conqueror? How long did the Britons enjoy their sovereignty? Who conquered the island afterwards? What caused the Romans to abandon Britain? Who then gave the Britons trouble? Who assisted the Britons?

longer look to them for assistance, but must arm in their own defense. The Romans finally bid adieu to the island about the year 448, having held possession of the best portion for nearly five centuries.

THE BRITONS.

The Picts and Scots, finding that the Romans had finally relinquished Britain, again attacked it with redoubled force ; and the unhappy Britons, finding that no relief could be obtained from Rome, sent a deputation into Germany, to invite over the Saxons to protect and assist them.

THE SAXONS.

Of all the tribes of Germany, the Saxons were the most fierce and warlike ; and they were prompted by the invitations of the Britons to undertake an enterprise to which they were already inclined.

Hengist and Horsa, two brothers, celebrated for their valor and nobility, landed with an army for the defense of the Britons, and soon drove the Picts and Scots within their former boundaries. But Hengist and Horsa perceiving, from the easy victory over the Picts and Scots, with what facility they might subdue the Britons, determined to conquer the island for their own aggrandizement. They therefore formed an alliance with the Picts and Scots, raised an army, and proceeded to open hostilities against the Britons.

Many battles were fought, but the advantage was generally with the Saxons.

When did the Romans finally abandon Britain ? Who then gave the Britons trouble ? Whom did the Britons next invite ? Who came over ? The result ? After that what did they do ?

Other Saxon generals soon came over, and the whole island was in time reduced to subjection.

Seven Saxon kingdoms were formed, called the kingdoms of the HEPTARCHY.

These kingdoms were continually at war with each other, until they were finally united in one kingdom, called ENGLAND, under Egbert, in the year 827.

THE HEPTARCHY.

Thus was established, after a violent contest of nearly a hundred and fifty years, the Heptarchy or seven kingdoms of Britain, under which the whole southern part of the island, except Wales and Cornwall, changed its language, customs and institutions.

The Britons being confined to Cornwall and Wales, and no longer disturbing the conquerors, the alliance between the princes of the Heptarchy was in a great measure dissolved. Dissensions, wars and revolutions among themselves was the consequence.

At length, nearly four hundred years after the first arrival of the Saxons in Britain, all the kingdoms of the Heptarchy, as before related, were united in one great state under Egbert.

The history of the kingdoms of the Heptarchy is extremely barren of events,—unreliable and unimportant. Milton hesitates not to declare, “that the skirmishes of kites and crows as much merited a par-

The result of the battles? How many kingdoms were formed? What was their relation to each other? When were they united? What of the Heptarchy? What took place under it? Where were the Britons confined? The result? What of the history of the Heptarchy? What did Milton say?

ticular narrative, as the confused transactions and battles of the Saxon Heptarchy.”

In order, however, to connect the events in some tolerable measure, we shall give a succinct account of the succession of kings, beginning with that of Kent, which was first established.

KINGDOM OF KENT.

The kingdom of Kent contained only the county of Kent. It began A. D. 454, and ended A. D. 823. Its kings were

1. Hengist, began	454	10. Edrick, began	684
2. Eske,	488	11. Withdred,	685
3. Octa,	512	12. Eadbert, }	725
4. Ymbrich,	534	Edelbert, }	
5. Ethelbert,	568	13. Ethelbert,	743
6. Edbald,	616	14. Adric,	760
7. Ercombert,	640	15. Ethelbert,	794
8. Egbert,	664	16. Cudred,	799
9. Lothaire,	673	17. Baldred,	805

This last king was an illegitimate branch of the royal family. After a troublesome and precarious reign of eighteen years, he was expelled by Egbert, king of Wessex, A. D. 823.

The most memorable event in the history of this kingdom was the introduction of the Christian religion among the English Saxons, about the year 600, in the reign of Ethelbert.

What did the kingdom contain? When did it commence? When end? Give its kings. What of the last? Who expelled him? What was the most memorable event?

THE KINGDOM OF SOUTH SAXONS

Contained the counties of Sussex and Surrey. It began A. D. 491, and ended A. D. 685. Its first Christian king was Adelwach.

Little is known of the history of this kingdom, except that it was founded by Ella, and in time became almost entirely dependent on the kingdom of Wessex, in which it was merged.

Cissa, son and successor of Ella, reigned as king seventy-six years. Its kings were

1. Ella, began	491	6. Cinigsil, } began	611
2. Cissa,	514	Quicelm, }	
3. Chevelin, :	590	7. Canowalch,	643
4. Ceolwic,	592	8. Adelwach,	648
5. Ceoluph,	597		

THE KINGDOM OF EAST SAXONS

Contained the counties of Essex and Middlesex.

It was founded A. D. 527, by Erchenwin, and conquered by Egbert, A. D. 827.

Its first Christian king was Sebert. Its kings were

1. Erchenwin, began	527	8. Sighere, began	665
2. Sleda,	587	9. Sebbi,	693
3. Sebert,	598	10. Sigherd, }	694
Sexred, }		Seofird, }	
4. Seward, }	616	11. Offa,	700
Sigebert, }		12. Ceolfred,	709
5. Sigebert the Little,	623	13. Suithred,	746
6. Sigebert the Good,	653	14. Sigered,	799
7. Swithelme,	655		

Extent of the kingdom of South Saxons? When did it begin? When end? Its Christian king? What of its history? Give its kings. Extent of the kingdom of East Saxons? When and by whom founded? Who conquered it? Its first Christian king? Give its kings.

THE KINGDOM OF NORTHUMBERLAND

Contained Yorkshire, Durham, Lancashire, Westmoreland, Cumberland and Northumberland.

It was founded A. D. 547, and ended 827.

Its first Christian king was Edwin. Its kings were

1. Ella, began	547	17. Cenred, began	716
2. Adda,	559	18. Osrich,	718
3. Clappea,	565	19. Ceolulphe,	730
4. Theodwald,	572	20. Egbert,	737
5. Fridulph,	573	21. Oswulph,	758
6. Theodorick,	579	22. Edildwald,	759
7. Athelrick,	586	23. Alured,	765
8. Athelfrid,	593	24. Atheldred,	774
9. Edwin,	617	25. Alswald I.,	779
10. Osric,	633	26. Osred II.,	789
11. Oswald,	634	27. Ethelred, restored	790
12. Oswy,	643	28. Osbald,	796
13. Ethelward,	653	29. Ardulph,	797
14. Egfrid,	670	30. Aswald II.,	807
15. Alkfryd,	685	31. Andred,	810
16. Osred I.,	705		

THE KINGDOM OF MERCIA

Contained the counties of Huntingdon, Rutland, Lincoln, Northampton, Leicester, Derby, Nottingham, Oxford, Chester, Salop, Gloucester, Worcester, Stafford, Warwick, Buckingham, Bedford and Hertford; constituting one of the largest and most powerful kingdoms of the Heptarchy, and comprehending all the middle counties of England.

It was founded A. D. 582, and ended A. D. 827.

Extent of Northumberland? When founded and ended? Its first Christian king? Give its kings. Extent of Mercia? When founded and ended?

Its first Christian king was Peada. Its kings were

1. Creda, began	585	10. Ethelbald, began	716
2. Wibba,	595	11. Offa,	757
3. Cheorlas,	616	12. Egfrýd,	794
4. Penda,	625	13. Cenolf,	795
5. Peada,	656	14. Kenelme,	819
6. Wólphere,	659	15. Ceolwolf,	819
7. Ethelred,	675	16. Burnulf,	821
8. Kenred,	704	17. Ludecan,	823
9. Ceolred,	709	18. Wiglafe,	825

THE KINGDOM OF EAST ANGLES

Contained the counties of Suffolk, Norfolk, Cambridge, and the isle of Ely.

It was founded A. D. 575, and ended A. D. 792.

Its first Christian king was Redwald. Its kings were

1. Uffa, began	575	9. Adwulf, began	664
2. Titillus,	578	10. Alswald,	683
3. Redwald,	599	11. Beorna, }	749
4. Erpenwald,	624	Ethelbert, }	
5. Sigebert,	636	12. Beorna,	758
6. Egrik,	644	13. Ethelred,	761
7. Ethelere,	654	14. Ethelbert,	790
8. Ethwald,	659		

THE KINGDOM OF WEST SAXONS, OR WESSEX,

Which finally swallowed up all the other Saxon states, contained the counties of Cornwall, Devon, Dorset, Somerset, Wilts, Hants, and Berks.

It was founded A. D. 519, and ended A. D. 828.

Its first Christian king? Give its kings. Extent of East Angles? When founded and ended? Its first Christian king? Give its kings. Extent of West Saxons? When founded and ended?

Its first Christian king was Kingills. Its kings were

1. Cherdic, began . . .	519	9. Sexburga, began . . .	672
2. Kenrick, . . .	534	10. Censua, . . .	674
3. Chevline, . . .	569	11. Ceadwald, . . .	686
4. Ceolric, . . .	592	12. Ina, . . .	688
5. Ceoluph, . . .	598	13. Adelard, . . .	726
6. Kingills, } . . .	611	14. Cudred, . . .	740
Quinthelin, }		15. Sigebert, . . .	754
7. Ceonowalch, . . .	643	16. Brithrick, . . .	784
8. Adelwalch, . . .	648	17. Egbert, . . .	800

THE SAXON MONARCHS.

(827)

EGBERT.

(838)

The kingdoms of the Heptarchy were firmly united in one state, under Egbert, A. D. 827, and the union promised future tranquillity to the inhabitants of Britain; but these flattering hopes were soon dissipated by the appearance of the Danes. This people were a piratical tribe, and had twice before visited England, plundering and laying waste large portions of the country.

In the year 832 they landed on the island of Shepey, which they plundered with impunity. The next year they disembarked in Dorsetshire, from thirty-five ships, and were encountered by Egbert, at Charmouth, where they were defeated with great loss.

They afterwards entered into an alliance with the Britons of Cornwall, who were very desirous of throwing off the English yoke, and prepared to give King Egbert battle.

Its first Christian king? Give its kings. When and under whom were the kingdoms of the Heptarchy united? What of this union? How were these hopes dissipated? Who were the Danes? What did they do in 832? What the next year? What did the Danes do after their defeat?

The armies met at Hingedown, where the Danes were defeated with considerable slaughter.

The death of Egbert, whose prudence and valor had rendered him a terror to his enemies, revived the hopes of the Danes, and prompted them to new efforts.

One circumstance, of Egbert's reign, worthy of note, was his ordering, by a public edict, that so much of Britain as was possessed by the Anglo-Saxons, should be called *England*.

Egbert died A. D. 838, leaving the crown to his son Ethelwolf.

(838)

ETHELWOLF.

(857)

Ethelwolf possessed neither the abilities nor bravery of his father. He was a lover of ease and pleasure, and better qualified for a cloister than a court or camp.

But the Danes would not long let him rest, for he was hardly seated on the throne, when a fleet of these Pagan ravagers appeared off Southampton, and landing, committed great devastations. Other bodies of Danes arrived, at different times and places, until Ethelwolf, wearied with their repeated incursions, resigned to his natural son, Athelstan, the provinces of Kent, Essex and Sussex, contenting himself with the kingdom of Wessex and the sovereignty of all England.

In the year 851, a company of Danes landed on the coast of Wessex, and, after committing horrible cruel-

Where did the armies meet? The result? What encouraged the Danes? What circumstance of Egbert's reign worthy of note? When did Egbert die? Who succeeded him? What of Ethelwolf? What of the Danes? What did Ethelwolf resign to Athelstan? What took place in 851?

ties, they were met, as they were returning with their spoils, and totally routed by one of Ethelwolf's generals. Notwithstanding this, the spring following they sailed up the Thames with three hundred ships, and landed near London.

They attacked Ethelwolf and Athelstan, who were encamped near Okely, and, after a bloody battle, were defeated.

As Athelstan was not heard of afterwards, it is supposed that he was killed in this battle. Ethelwolf now reigned alone; and enjoying a short respite from his troublesome neighbors, the Danes, he made a pilgrimage to Rome, whither he carried his youngest son, Alfred, then only six years old.

Having spent a year in Rome, on his return through France, he married Judith, daughter of the Emperor Charles the Bald.

When he landed in England, he met with an opposition he little expected. Athelstan, his oldest son, had died; and Ethelbald, his second son, had formed the project of excluding his father from the throne.

The prudence of some of the chief men of both parties, and the mildness and good nature of Ethelwolf, prevented a civil war, and Ethelwolf relinquished to Ethelbald the kingdom of Wessex.

Ethelwolf lived but about two years after this event. He died A. D. 857, after a reign of twenty years.

What the next spring? What became of Athelstan? What did Ethelwolf now do? How long did he stay in Rome? Whom did he marry? What opposition did he meet in England? What prevented civil war? When did Ethelwolf die? How long did he reign?

Before his death he disposed of his dominions, by will, to Ethelbert, his second son ; after him to Ethelred, his third son, and then to Alfred, his youngest, who all, in their turn, succeeded to the throne.

ETHELBALD.

Ethelbald had reigned two years as king of Wessex, before his father's death ; after which he reigned about two and a half years.

No remarkable event happened during his reign.

Historians all agree in giving him the character of a licentious, debauched, luxurious prince ; and the English historians charge him with the crime of incest, in marrying Judith, his mother-in-law.

During this reign, England enjoyed immunity from the depredations of the Danes.

(860)

ETHELBERT.

(866)

Ethelbert, brother of Ethelbald, reigned about six years with justice and prudence.

His reign was made troublesome by the Danish incursions.

He died A. D. 866. Though he left two sons, Adhelm and Ethelward, they did not succeed him, his brother Ethelred mounting the throne by virtue of his father's will.

How did he dispose of the crown ? Who succeeded him ? How long had he reigned over Wessex ? How long did he reign after his father's death ? His character. What of the Danes during this reign ? Who succeeded Ethelbald ? When ? How long did he reign ? What troubled him ? When did he die ?

(866)

ETHELRED.

(871)

Though Ethelred defended himself with great bravery, yet during his whole reign, he enjoyed no tranquillity from the Danes, who landed in East Anglia, penetrated into the kingdom of Northumberland, and seized the city of York.

Alfred, the younger brother, assisted Ethelred against the enemy. Several battles were fought, in which the Danes and English were alternately successful.

Amidst these disorders, Ethelred died of a wound which he had received, A. D. 871, leaving several children, neither of whom came to the crown, by reason of Ethelwolf's will, which fixed the succession on his brother Alfred.

(871)

ALFRED (the Great.)

(901)

Alfred, the youngest son of Ethelwolf, succeeded Ethelred in the year 871.

The former part of his reign was full of trouble from his continual wars with the Danes; but in the latter part of it he enjoyed the utmost peace and tranquillity.

Through his entire reign he discovered himself to be a prince of most excellent character. His justice, equity, and love to his subjects were as conspicuous as his bravery and conduct in war; and in whatever light we consider him, he truly merited the surname of *Great*.

Scarcely had he buried his brother, when he was

Who succeeded him? What of his trouble with the Danes? Who assisted him? Result of the battles? When did Ethelred die? Who succeeded him? When did Alfred commence his reign? What of the former part of his reign? What of the latter part? What is said of him? What of the Danes?

obliged to take the field in order to oppose the Danes, who had seized Wilton, and were ravaging the surrounding country.

He gave them battle, and was at first successful, but pursuing his advantage too eagerly, he was opposed by the superiority of numbers, and obliged to relinquish the field.

Alfred, however, collected new forces, and exerted himself so much, that he fought eight battles in one year; and obliged the enemy to engage that they would settle in some part of England, and not suffer more of their countrymen to enter the kingdom.

Whilst Alfred expected the observance of this treaty, another body of Danes landed on the island, and collecting the scattered troops of their countrymen, again perpetrated their ravages.

This last event broke the spirits of the Saxons, who believed themselves abandoned by Heaven to destruction. Some left their country and retired into Wales, or fled beyond the sea; others submitted to the conquerors; and Alfred was obliged to seek shelter, in the meanest disguises, from the pursuit of his enemies. He concealed himself under the habit of a peasant, and for some time lived in the house of a neatherd, who had formerly been intrusted with the care of his cows. Here he lay concealed about six months, from both friends and enemies, till Providence gave a sudden and surprising turn to his affairs.

Give an account of the battle. How many battles were fought in one year? What were the Danes obliged to do? How did they break the treaty? The effect on the Saxons? What did Alfred do? Give an account of his concealment.

Hubba, a Danish general, had entered Devonshire with his army. The earl of Devon, with a small number of brave fellows, shut himself up in Kinwith Castle, which Hubba soon besieged. The earl represented to his men that they must soon fall into the hands of the merciless Danes, or boldly make themselves a passage through the enemy's army. The English, without deliberation, rushed out, sword in hand, upon the Danes; and by their sudden and furious attack, put them in great disorder; and, pursuing their advantage, before the enemy could recover from their surprise, dispersed them with terrible slaughter, Hubba himself being slain, and his famous standard, called *Reason* or the *Raven*, in which the Danes superstitiously put great confidence, being taken.

Alfred, hearing of this victory, sent word to his friends to come to him, and consult what was proper to be done.

It was agreed to collect bodies of troops in different parts of the kingdom, that should be ready to join one another upon the least warning.

Alfred, in order to gain an exact knowledge of the enemy's posture, disguised himself, and, with a harp in his hand, entered the Danish camp, and informed himself of everything he wished to know. He then returned to his friends, and at once commenced his preparations to march against the Danes.

This affair was managed with so much secrecy and

Whom did Hubba besiege? What did the earl say to his men? What did the English do? What became of Hubba and his standard? What did Alfred do? What was agreed? Where did Alfred go? On his return, for what did he make preparation? What of his management

expedition, that the king soon appeared unexpectedly, near the Danes, at the head of a numerous army ; and falling upon them, in the midst of their surprise and consternation, entirely routed them, and cut almost their entire army in pieces.

The remnant that escaped were besieged by the victors, in a fortified camp ; and, being reduced to extremity by hunger, they implored the clemency of Alfred, whose prudence converted them from mortal enemies, to faithful friends and confederates.

He required from them, as a pledge of their future sincerity, that they should embrace Christianity.

Thus Alfred, from the lowest depths of adversity, suddenly advanced to the highest pinnacle of glory and power.

He not only regained his kingdom of Wessex, but the sovereignty of all England, the Danes who were settled in Northumberland, Mercia and East Anglia, swearing allegiance to him.

To conclude the military career of Alfred, it may be proper to state, that from the beginning of his reign to the time that peace was established, he is said to have fought fifty-six battles with the Danes.

Reference to him in his civil and moral capacity is now necessary.

As the laws were very much neglected, or almost forgotten, during the wars, his first care was to revive them ; for which purpose he made a collection of the

The result of the surprise ? What of those that escaped ? What of Alfred's clemency and prudence ? What pledge did Alfred require ? What is said of Alfred at this time ? What did the Danes do ? What of Alfred's military career ? What of the laws ? What did Alfred do ?

best he could find, to which he added many of his own, agreeable to the circumstances of the times.

His next care was to have them strictly executed. To guard against the perversion of justice by corrupt magistrates, he ordered that twelve men should determine in all criminal causes; and that the judges should pass sentence according to their verdict. Hence, it is to Alfred that we owe the institution of juries.

The better to preserve order and regularity, to discover and punish criminals, and to protect the innocent, he divided England into shires or counties, the counties into hundreds, and the hundreds into tythings; and every inhabitant of the kingdom was obliged to belong to some tything, or otherwise to be considered as a vagabond or an outlaw. The effect of this wise regulation was, that as every householder was made responsible for his family, the tything was answerable for the householder, the hundred for the several tythings, and the counties for the hundreds. By these means such quiet, security and good order were introduced, as England had never known before.

For the administration of justice, Alfred established a system of courts very similar to the system now in existence among us. The head-borough decided differences that occurred among the members. In controversies among members of different tythings, the cause was brought before the hundred, and decided by twelve

His next care? How did he guard against the perversion of justice? What thus originated? Into what did Alfred divide England? Why? What of every inhabitant? The effect of this regulation? What was established? Who decided differences among the members? Who among the tythings?

freeholders, acting with the presiding magistrate, who were sworn to administer justice impartially. A county court was also established, of a superior jurisdiction than that of the hundred, from which it received appeals; and, in default of justice in these courts, an appeal lay to the king in council.

To guide the courts in the administration of justice he framed a code of laws which, though now lost, long served as the basis of English jurisprudence, and is generally deemed the origin of what is now denominated the common law.

Alfred also revived the *Saxon Wittenagemot*, or assembly of wise men, which met, generally, once a year, and was the original of the Parliaments.

He repaired the ruined cities, built castles and fortresses, established a regular militia, and founded a navy.

He introduced trade and commerce, encouraged and promoted the arts and sciences, and is said to have founded the university of Oxford, since so famous, though whether the three or four schools or colleges which Alfred founded were the first original of that university remains a matter of doubt.

But the most effectual expedient employed by Alfred for the encouragement of learning was his own example.

He divided his time into three equal portions, allotting eight hours each day to acts of devotion, eight hours to

What other court was established? To whom could there be an appeal? How were courts guided? What did Alfred revive? What repair and build? What did he introduce? What was founded? What of Alfred's example? How did he divide his time?

affairs of state, and the other eight to his studies, sleep, and the refection of his body.

As there were no clocks or hour-glasses in England, he measured his time by wax candles, marked by circular lines to distinguish the hours; and to protect them from the wind he ordered some fine white horn to be scraped till it become transparent and put into wooden frames and enclosed the candles therein. Thus *lant-horns* were the invention of a king.

Alfred died A. D. 901, in the fifty-second year of his age and the twenty-ninth of his reign. His eldest son Edmund, whom he designed for his successor, died before him.

Edward succeeded him, and Ethelward was bred a scholar at Oxford. He also had several daughters, Elfleda, Alswitha and Ethelgitha.

(901)

EDWARD THE ELDER.

(925)

The reign of Edward was one continued scene of troubles and commotion, but he had the good fortune to extricate himself from them all, and established himself as firmly and as gloriously as his father had done before him. The Danes, who had been quiet all the latter part of Alfred's reign, began, soon after his death, to meditate a revolt, and to entertain thoughts of freeing themselves from the English yoke. Their design was forwarded by Edward's cousin Ethelward, son of Alfred's elder brother Ethelbert.

How measure it? How protect the candle from wind? What was thus invented? When did Alfred die? His age? Length of reign? Who succeeded him? His title? What of his reign? What is said of the Danes? Who aided them?

Ethelward, being now of age, aspired to the throne, and disputing the justice of Ethelwolf's will, claimed that, at least, after the death of the four brothers, there was no reason why the succession should continue in the youngest. Meeting with no success from the English he joined the Danes in their revolt.

So successful was King Edward in all his engagements with the Danes, and so decisive were his victories, that the Danes at last despaired of ever being able to throw off the English yoke, and were constrained to sue for peace, which was granted, on terms favorable to Edward.

The king having subdued all his enemies, and raised himself to the summit of power and distinction, lived but a short time to enjoy the fruit of his victories.

He died A. D. 925, in the twenty-first year of his reign, leaving by his concubine Egwina, and two wives, six sons and nine daughters. Three of his sons were successively kings of England.

The university of Cambridge, according to some writers, was founded by King Edward, A. D. 915, but there are various opinions about the origin of this famous university, some making it much older, and others, of a much later date.

(925)

ATHELSTAN.

(941)

The mature age of Athelstan obtained for him the

Relate Ethelward's claim? Why did he join the Danes? What is said of Edward's success? What of the king? When did he die? How long did he reign? How many children did he have? How many of his sons became kings? Relate what is said of the university of Cambridge. When did Athelstan commence his reign? What is said of him?

preference over the legitimate children of Edward, and amidst the storms of civil conflict and foreign war he proved himself not unworthy of it. He crushed Alfred, a powerful nobleman who had conspired against him; he entered Scotland with an army and extorted the submission of Constantine, its king; he reduced to obedience the Northumbrians, and defeated, with considerable slaughter, the Danes and Welsh.

Athelstan was regarded as an able and active prince, and the remarkable law which he enacted, that a merchant who had made three long sea voyages should be admitted to the rank ofthane or gentleman, is proof of the liberality of his mind.

He died A. D. 941, after a reign of sixteen years, and was succeeded by Edmund, his legitimate brother.

(941)

EDMUND.

(946)

Nothing of importance took place during the reign of Edmund. He was assassinated by a notorious robber, Leoff, whom he had banished, and was succeeded by his brother Edred, A. D. 946.

(946)

EDRED.

(955)

Edred took care to check the incursions of the Danes, and devoted the greater part of his reign to extend and cultivate monastic life in England. The first preachers among the Saxons had laid the foundation

Whom did he crush? What of Scotland? What of the Danes and Welsh? Relate the law which Athelstan enacted? When did he die? Length of his reign? Who succeeded him? What of his reign? When and by whom was he assassinated? Who succeeded him? Whose incursions did he check? To what did he devote a greater part of his reign? What of the first preachers among the Saxons?

of the doctrine and practice of celibacy, but in this reign it was carried to its extreme. Edred died A. D. 955, and was succeeded by Edwy, his nephew, son of Edmund, his predecessor, at the age of seventeen years.

(955)

EDWY.

(959)

Edwy, charmed with the person of Elgiva, his second or third cousin, ventured to marry her. This aroused the whole force of monastic indignation. Edwy was denounced by the monks, who proceeded to open violence, and even to abuse of the queen, by Dunstan, the abbot of Glastenbury, who was at the head of the treasury; and by the archbishop of Canterbury. Edwy resented the insult and punished Dunstan. The archbishop denounced the queen, caused her to be seized, her fatal beauty to be destroyed by burning her face with a red-hot iron, then banished her to Ireland for life, and compelled Edwy to consent to a divorce, which was pronounced by the archbishop. Fearing the royal sufferer might return to the embraces of the king they caused her to be murdered; dethroned Edwy; placed his brother Edgar upon the throne, who was thirteen years of age, and made Dunstan regent.

(959)

EDGAR.

(975)

The reign of Edgar was one continued calm, without wars or commotions. By being always prepared for

When did Edred die? Who succeeded him? Whom did he marry? How was he and the queen treated? Whom did Edwy punish? What did Dunstan then do? What became of the queen? What was done with the king? Who was placed on the throne? What year? What is said of Edgar's reign.

war he lived in peace, both at home and abroad. Edgar was a great patron and protector of the monks, and this circumstance tended to promote quiet and preserve peace, as this clan, in those days, had power to create disturbances and raise rebellion, or preserve peace, at their pleasure.

The character of Edgar is variously represented by historians. The monkish writers are extravagant in his praise, as he sacrificed everything to their humor; they called him saint and virtuous man. Whilst others represent him as one of the vilest of princes. The most candid and impartial writers say that there was a great mixture of good and bad qualities in him, and that, if we consider him only in his political capacity, he was truly a great king.

Edgar contrived expedients to clear the country of wolves, which were then very numerous and made terrible havoc among the flocks and herds.

He took care, also, to free the nation from a sort of creatures worse than wolves, viz.: corrupt judges and magistrates; to this end a law was made that every judge convicted of having passed an unjust sentence should be fined, if he did it ignorantly; but if knowingly, should be dismissed from office forever.

If we consider some actions of another kind, his cruelty, his criminal amours, his many mistresses, &c., we may judge that the monks, who have been so lavish in his praises, would have given him no better quarter

How did he treat the monks? What is said of them? Relate what is said of his character? What do impartial writers say? What did Edgar contrive? How did he attempt to free the country from corrupt judges and magistrates? What is said of some of his other actions?

than they did his brother Edwy, if he had not been a fast friend to them.

Edgar reigned sixteen years after Edwy's death. He died in 975, in the thirty-second year of his age.

(975) EDWARD, (the Martyr.) (979)

Edward the Martyr succeeded Edgar 975, and died 979.

At this time there were two parties in England. The monks and their party were in favor of Edward, and the opposite party, pretending that Edward's mother was never lawfully married to Edgar, were for Ethelred, who was about eight years of age, and whose mother, Elfrida, was living.

Dunstan, taking advantage of the favor of the people, who had a high opinion of his sanctity, led prince Edward by the hand to the church, followed by the other bishops and a great crowd, and anointed him king. Dunstan immediately assumed the regency and labored hard to keep the monks in the benefices. He met with great opposition, but by various artifices he wrought upon the fears and credulity of the people to such a degree that they yielded to him in almost every particular.

Edward reigned about three years and came to a tragical end.

One day, on his return from hunting, he called on his step mother Elfrida, and as he was sitting upon his

How long did Edgar reign after Edwy's death? When did he die? His age? Who succeeded him? How many parties in England? What did each claim? Relate what Dunstan did? How did he manage the opposition? How long did Edward reign? Relate the circumstances of his death?

horse, drinking a glass of wine, at the private instigation of the queen, he was stabbed in the back with a dagger. Some writers say that he fell from his horse, and was instantly dispatched; others, that finding himself wounded he set spurs to his horse and rode, till fainting from loss of blood, he at last fell, and his foot hanging in the stirrup he was dragged till his horse stopped at a poor blind woman's door.

This was in 979. Elfrida, to atone for her crime, shut herself up in a nunnery during life.

(979)

ETHELRED II.

(1016)

This prince was now the only one left of the royal family; he ascended the throne A. D. 979. He was crowned by Dunstan at the age of about twelve years.

The people flattered themselves that they should be happy under his government, but they were sadly disappointed. He was an exceedingly weak, impolitic and avaricious prince, and his reign was full of troubles.

The kingdom had not been disturbed by the Danes for about fifty or sixty years, but soon after Ethelred's accession they renewed their attacks, and proceeded to ravage the country, with occasional short intermissions, for about ten years.

In 991 a fresh body of Danes arrived, who made such havoc that Ethelred bought them off for ten thousand pounds.

What do some writers say? What do others say? What of the queen? Who next ascended the throne? When? By whom crowned? What is said of the king? What of the Danes? When did a fresh body of Danes arrive? How did Ethelred get rid of them?

In 994, Sweyn, king of Denmark, and Olaf, king of Norway, invaded England. Ethelred, who had neither the ability nor courage to oppose them, obliged himself to pay them sixteen thousand pounds, on condition they left the kingdom.

Sweyn returned, however, in about three years, and committed greater devastations than before. The English forces were constantly defeated, and the king was so terrified that he durst not be present at any battle; and, in order to get rid of them, he agreed to pay them thirty thousand pounds.

Ethelred, having married Emma, sister to the duke of Normandy, and depending upon his assistance whenever he might have occasion, resolved on an expedient which in the end effected the ruin of England.

This was a general massacre of all the Danes. He privately sent orders to all parts of the kingdom for this purpose, which were executed with such fury that in one day, Nov. 13th, 1002, all the Danes were slain with the most horrid cruelty and barbarity. King Sweyn's sister fell among the rest. Upon being informed of this bloody tragedy Sweyn swore that he would not rest till he had revenged so monstrous an outrage. He now came, not as before for plunder, but to destroy the whole country by fire and sword. The Danes, under Sweyn, now made so thorough work, plundering and devastating the country with fire and sword, that

Who invaded England in 994? How get rid of them? When did Sweyn return? What is said of the English forces? What of the king? How much did the king give his enemies? Whom did Ethelred marry? What expedient did he resolve upon? Relate what followed? What did Sweyn swear? His purpose at this time? Relate the account of Sweyn's invasion?

Ethelred with his whole family retired to Norway, upon which the whole country submitted, and Sweyn was proclaimed king of England without opposition. He reigned not quite a year, and died suddenly in 1014.

His reign being so short, and perhaps his never being crowned, are the reasons why most historians have not ranked him among the kings of England.

Upon Sweyn's death the Danes proclaimed his son Canute king, but the English recalled Ethelred. They renewed their oath of allegiance to him, he promised fair, but they soon perceived that he had not changed, and the English lost all hopes of him.

In the meantime Canute, who had been absent for a time in Denmark, returned with a numerous army.

He was met by Edmund, the king's eldest son, a prince of noble qualities, who commanded the army against him; but Edmund, deserted by his brother-in-law, the infamous Edric, finding that he was not in a condition to stop the progress of Canute, retired into the North.

Ethelred died A. D. 1016, leaving two sons besides Edmund by his first wife; and by Emma of Normandy, Alfred and Edward, afterwards king Edward the Confessor.

(1016) EDMUND (Ironside.) (1017)

No prince ever came to the throne in more distracted

How long did Sweyn reign? When die? Why have not historians ranked him among the kings of England? On his death who was proclaimed? What did the English do? What of Canute? Who commanded the army against him? The result? When did Ethelred die? What children did he leave? Who was the next king? Condition of the country?

and troublesome times than Edmund. The city of London and all the lords that were there, proclaimed him king of England, whilst the Danes and all places in their possessions declared for Canute.

Canute besieged London three times without success. There is much confusion in English history with regard to the particulars of the war between Edmund and Canute; nor would it be a matter of much importance to us to know the detail of the matter if we could. It is sufficient to say that the kingdom was divided between them; Edmund was to have all south of the Thames, with London and part of the ancient kingdom of Essex, and Canute was to have the rest.

Edmund died suddenly, soon after this, in 1017; as to the mode of his death, historians differ, though 'tis generally agreed that it was by Edric's means.

Edmund left two sons, Edmund and Edward.

With Edmund the Saxon monarchy in England in a manner ended, having lasted one hundred and ninety years from Egbert's establishment, four hundred and thirty-two from the founding of the Heptarchy, and five hundred and sixty-eight from the arrival of Hengist.

DANISH MONARCHS.

(1017)

CANUTE.

(1036)

Canute was in possession of half of England upon

Who were for Edmund? Who for Canute? Relate what is said of the war between them? The result? What is said of the mode of Edmund's death? How many sons did he leave? What ended with Edmund? How long had it lasted? Relate the circumstances attending Canute's possession of the throne?

Edmund's death, and Edmund's sons being young, and his brothers being in Normandy, and the Assembly-General knowing that Canute was in a condition to assert his claim, at last yielded, and Canute was proclaimed king of all England, 1017.

Canute, to gain the affection of his subjects, ordered that no distinction should be made between Dane and Saxon; and many other wise regulations were made, which induced the people to believe that they had a just and equitable king, under whom they might be happy. His conduct in regard to the sons and brothers of the late king was not so laudable. Edmund's two sons were sent into Denmark, under the pretense of traveling, though in reality to have them dispatched. The person having charge of them conveyed them to the king of Sweden, who, fearing to break with Canute, sent them to the king of Hungary. He took care of their education, and at length gave one of his daughters in marriage to Edmund, the eldest, who died soon after; and to Edward he gave his sister-in-law Agatha, daughter of the emperor Henry II., by whom he had five children, Edgar Atheling, Margaret and Christian, and two that died in Hungary.

Canute would have been glad to have got rid of Alfred and Edward, who were in Normandy with their mother Emma, but was at a loss how to get them out of the hands of duke Richard their uncle.

How did he gain the affection of the people? What was his conduct toward the sons of the late king? To whom were they finally sent? Whom did Edmund marry? Whom Edward? How many children had he? What did Canute wish to do? Why did he not do it?

However, to bring that prince to his interests, he demanded in marriage his sister Emma, king Ethelred's widow, and offered him, at the same time, one of his own sisters; which proposals were accepted, and Emma became once more queen of England.

England being now in a state of profound tranquillity, Canute went over to Denmark to quell the Vandals, who were at war with the Danes, which having effected, he returned to England.

In 1025 Canute undertook an expedition against the Swedes, who had invaded Denmark, and got possession of Norway, of which he was crowned king.

Being now master of three kingdoms his ambition seemed to be satisfied, and he applied himself wholly to acts of devotion, abandoning, apparently, all thoughts of warlike affairs.

By acts of devotion; are here meant, according to the customs of those times, the founding, enriching and endowing of monasteries and churches, the way that kings and great men atoned for murder, usurpation and all manner of crimes.

But this, indeed, must be said of him, however unjustifiably he made his way to the throne, after he was firmly settled on it he gave daily marks of justice, equity and moderation, the effect of which was the universal love of his subjects.

The best expression of his piety as well as his good

How did he win Richard? Condition of England? Where did Canute go? Why? What was done in 1025? The result? To what did he now apply himself? What is meant by acts of devotion? State what is said of him after he was firmly seated on the throne? Relate the story here told of him.

sense, if the story be true, is thus told. "As he was walking by the sea-side, and his flatterers were extolling him, and comparing him with God himself, he, to convince them of their folly and impiety, caused a chair to be brought him, and seating himself where the tide was about to flow, he turned himself to the sea and said, 'O sea, thou art under my jurisdiction, and the land where I sit is mine; I command thee to come no further nor to presume to wet thy sovereign's feet.'"

But the tide coming on as usual, he from thence took occasion to let his base flatterers know that none but the King of Heaven, whom the sea and land obey, deserved the titles they impiously bestowed upon him."

Canute died A. D. 1036, in the nineteenth year of his reign.

He left three sons, to whom, as some writers say, he bequeathed his three kingdoms by will; but that is disputed.

However, Sweyn had Norway, Harold had England. and Hardicanute, Denmark.

(1036) HAROLD (surnamed Harefoot.) (1039.)

Harold ascended the throne A. D. 1036.

The history of this reign is barren of interest. The succession was disputed between the friends of Harold and Hardicanute. Harold was, however, proclaimed king, which greatly mortified queen Emma, who despaired of ever being able to recover the crown for her

When did Canute die? Length of his reign? How many sons did he leave? What did each have? When did Harold become king of England? What is said of the reign? Who disputed the succession? What is said of queen Emma?

son Hardicanute, and formed a design of setting one of her sons by Ethelred on the throne.

To this end, after having dissembled in such a manner as to cause it to be believed, as she thought, that she was quite easy and would no more concern herself in public affairs, she obtained leave of Harold to send for her two sons, Alfred and Edward, out of Normandy.

The two princes soon arrived, under pretense of only paying a visit to their mother. But the earl Goodwin, understanding the design, acquainted Harold with it, and represented to him how easily it might be crushed.

He advised getting the princes into their hands and then making way with them. Harold approved of this project and invited the two princes to come and pass some days at court. Emma was disturbed at this, fearing the worst, but as she could not well decline the king's invitation she took a middle course and sent only Alfred, keeping Edward with her under some plausible pretense.

Goodwin went himself to meet the prince, as if to do him honor, and Alfred and his little train of Normans were highly pleased with the respect that was paid him. They were invited to stop at Guilford Castle to refresh themselves, when Alfred was seized and never heard from more.

Prince Edward, upon this, made all haste back to Normandy, and Emma, being ordered to leave the kingdom, retired to Flanders.

Whom did she send for? Who acquainted Harold with the design? What did he advise? What did Harold do? Conduct of Emma? Who went to meet the prince? What of Alfred? Where were they invited to stop? What was done with Alfred? Where did Edward go?

There is much uncertainty in regard to the above story, which was, probably, founded upon common report.

However, Hardicanute began at last to bestir himself and to resolve to recover the kingdom of Wessex by force of arms. Harold's death about this time made easy what might, otherwise, have been a difficult matter to accomplish.

He died 1039, without issue.

(1039)

HARDICANUTE.

(1041)

Hardicanute ascended the throne 1039. His true name was Canute, and the appellation of *Hardy* become part of his name from his strong constitution.

Upon news of the death of Harold, Hardicanute went over to England and was unanimously acknowledged king of England.

Hardicanute was infamous for his cruelty, his gluttony and his drunkenness, to which his death is ascribable, for he died suddenly as he was revelling and carousing at the wedding of a Danish lord at Lambeth.

His death was unlamented, and the English kept the day of it as a holiday for some centuries after.

He died A. D. 1041, in the third year of his reign.

With him expired the monarchy of the Danes in England, which had lasted about twenty-six years, but after they had harassed the kingdom at times during two hundred and forty years.

What of the story? What did Hardicanute resolve to recover? What made the task easy? When did Harold die? When did Hardicanute ascend the throne? Why called Hardy? For what was he famous? State the circumstance of his death? How was the day of his death regarded? Date of his death? What ended with him?

SAXON LINE RESTORED.

(1041) EDWARD (the Confessor.) (1066)

The late king dying without issue, Edward, son of Ethelred and Emma, was the only prince now in England who had any claim to the crown.

And yet it was difficult to settle the succession, for Edward, son of Edmund Ironsides, was still alive in Hungary, who was one degree nearer the throne than his uncle Edward, Edmund's younger brother; and Sweyn, son of Canute, was yet living in Norway.

But a lucky thought of Edward settled the matter at once. He sought and obtained the protection and support of Earl Goodwin, who, in power and genius, was far superior to all the rest of the nobility. The agreement was that Edward should marry Editha, daughter of the earl. Matters being thus settled, Goodwin caused Edward to be acknowledged and proclaimed king.

Edward was a man of weak constitution and a weaker understanding. He was of an easy, indolent disposition, an unsteady and irresolute temper, and had no ability for public affairs.

This weakness of the king gave the nobles, particularly Goodwin, an opportunity of rising to an exorbitant degree of power. Though Edward and Earl Goodwin were apparently friends, they were at heart bitter

Who succeeded Hardicanute? Why was it difficult to settle the succession? How did Edward settle the matter? What was the agreement? What did Goodwin cause to be done? What is said of Edward? What did his weakness cause the nobles to do? What was the real state of feeling between Edward and Goodwin?

enemies. Policy alone dictated their actions, and they came, at last, to an open rupture. But accommodations were from time to time agreed upon, by the interposition of mutual friends, until at length Goodwin was restored to favor, and became as powerful and formidable as ever.

A little after this feigned reconciliation, William, duke of Normandy, arrived in England to pay a visit to King Edward, who received him with great marks of gratitude for the favors he had received from him and the duke, his father.

And it is probable that now, if ever, Edward nominated him his successor in his will, or promised to do so.

That he ever did is very much questioned. However, this was William's pretense for invading England after Edward's death.

In 1053 Earl Goodwin, so formidable to the king, died, and his son Harold succeeded him in all his high offices.

He had all his father's abilities, without his pride and haughtiness, and he became at last so popular, that he began to entertain thoughts of succeeding to the crown, and took his measures accordingly.

It was happy for Edward that he had no war since the beginning of his reign ; but in 1054, Macbeth, king of Scotland, seizing upon Cumberland, in prejudice of

What dictated their actions? What finally took place? Who soon arrived in England? How received? What is probable? What was William's pretense? When did Earl Goodwin die? Who succeeded him? Relate what is said of him? When did Edward commence a war with Scotland? Relate the cause.

Malcom, of the royal family of that little kingdom, King Edward took the part of the latter.

This war was short, for Siward, earl of Northumberland, by one decisive battle, drove Macbeth out of Cumberland and left Malcom in possession of it.

About the same time the Welsh made an inroad into England and took and plundered Hereford, but Earl Harold, marching against them with an army he had himself raised, drove them back into their own country.

This successful expedition added very much to the respect the people before had for him, and they now began to talk openly that no man was so worthy to succeed to the crown as Harold, since King Edward had no heirs.

The king, sensible that Harold aspired to the crown, in order to defeat his hopes, sent for his nephew Edward, son of Edmund Ironsides, who was in Hungary.

He accordingly went over to England with his son Edgar Atheling, and his two daughters, in the year 1057, but died soon after his arrival.

Prince Edward's death put new life into Harold, for as to Edgar, his son, as he was very young, there seemed to be no great difficulty in setting him aside.

Shortly after this we hear of Harold at the court of Normandy. When he was there he took an oath to Duke William, to assist him in obtaining the crown after Edward's death. However, afterwards he did not

What of its length? What of the Welsh? What of Earl Harold? What is said of the expedition? What did the king do in order to defeat Harold's hopes? Who came to England in 1057? What of Prince Edward's death? What did Harold do at the court of Normandy? How did he afterward regard his oath?

consider himself as bound by an oath that was extorted from him.

Whilst Harold was using all the address he was master of to procure his succession to the throne, King Edward gave himself no trouble about it, but was wholly engaged in building the church and monastery at Westminster.

He lived long enough to see them finished and dedicated, and died 1066, in the twenty-fifth year of his reign.

He was the last of Egbert's race, though not the last Saxon king, for Harold was of that nation though not of the blood royal.

He was a weak prince, mild and peaceable, very liberal to the monks, and remarkable neither for his virtues nor his vices.

During his reign the West Saxon, Mercian and Danish laws were reduced to one body, which from that time became common to all England, and were called the laws of King Edward.

(1066)

HAROLD II.

(1066)

According to the ancient custom of the kingdom, Edgar Atheling was the only person on whom the crown should have devolved, he being the only remaining prince of the family of ancient kings.

But Harold, Earl Goodwin's son, had managed his

Relate what is said of the king? What was he engaged in doing? How long did he live? When did he die? How long did he reign? What is said of him? His character? What was done during his reign? Who succeeded him? What is said of the succession? Mention what is said of Harold?

matters so well that upon Edward's death he easily possessed himself of the throne.

The manner of it is variously related: some writers say he was unanimously and freely elected by the General Assembly; others affirm that he compelled them to elect him, after having extorted his nomination from the late king on his death bed. Others declare that he usurped the crown without any manner of ceremony. However this may be, after he was crowned all acknowledged him for their sovereign. And whatever may be said of his aspiring to supreme authority, it is owned that he had all the qualifications requisite to a great prince. He was popular when he came to the throne, and studied to preserve the affection of his subjects. He did many popular things, lessened the taxes and caused justice to be impartially administered.

But though all things were quiet among his own subjects, more storms than one were gathering against him from abroad.

The duke of Normandy had long entertained thoughts of succeeding to the crown of England upon Edward's death. Being moved thereto either by the verbal promise or will of that prince, or probably much more by his own ambition, he now entered upon the execution of his design.

Before matters came to be decided by arms between

How did he obtain the throne? After he was crowned how was he regarded? How did he strive to preserve the affection of his subjects? What was the condition of things abroad? What is said of the duke of Normandy? What caused him to aspire to the crown?

the duke and Harold the latter had an affair in another direction to attend to.

Toston, brother of Harold, and Harfager, king of Norway, had raised an army with which they invaded England. Harold employed the same army which he had raised to march against the duke of Normandy, to meet this invasion.

The two armies, numbering about 60,000 on each side, met at Stamford bridge, where a most desperate battle was fought, lasting from seven in the morning, till three in the afternoon, which resulted in a complete victory to Harold. Harfager and Toston were both slain.

William, duke of Normandy, had, soon after King Edward's death, sent ambassadors to Harold, requiring him to deliver up the crown to him, and, in case of refusal, to charge him with breaking his oath, and to declare war against him.

Harold replied that the duke had no right to the crown, that the oath was extorted from him, and therefore was null and void, and that he would defend his own right against all opposers.

Upon this the duke prepared to invade England, and finding it difficult to raise money for the expedition by a public tax he did it by a voluntary subscription. This not being sufficient, he obtained help from several neighboring states.

Relate what is said of Harold's brother? Whom did he use to meet the invasion? The size of the armies? Relate the account of the battle. What did William, duke of Normandy, do after Edward's death? Give Harold's reply. What did the duke prepare to do? How did he obtain money?

Being conscious of the weakness of his title he induced the pope to approve his design and to excommunicate all that should oppose him, upon promise, no doubt, of doing much for the church.

Formidable preparations were made upon both sides, and in nine days after Harold's victory at Stamford bridge, the duke of Normandy, who had long been waiting for a fair wind, landed at Pevensey, in Sussex, September 29, 1066, and having built a fort near the place to favor a retreat in case of necessity, he marched along the shore as far as Hastings and awaited the coming of the enemy.

As soon as Harold was informed of their arrival he drew his forces together and marched and encamped about seven miles from the Norman army, resolving to give them battle.

Duke William, perceiving this, advanced a little forward to a commodious piece of ground, that he might draw up his army to the best advantage.

The English spent the night in singing and carousing, and the Normans in preparing for the fight and praying God for success.

The important day had now arrived, the 14th of October, 1066, being Harold's birth day, but more memorable to England for one of the greatest events that ever befel it.

The battle began with great fury and equal bravery upon both sides.

Whom did he get to approve of his design? Relate what is said of the preparations? When and where did the duke land? What did he build? Why? To what place did he march? Relate what is said of Harold. Of William. How did the English spend the night? The Normans? Give the account of the battle.

The English were at first much annoyed, by the Norman long-bows, a method of fighting they had not been used to, which put them in some disorder, but recovering themselves they so warmly engaged the Normans that they were forced to give back; nor was it in the power of the Normans to break their ranks till the duke thought of a stratagem, which was for his men to retreat as they were fighting, as if about to fly.

This emboldened the English to press upon the retiring enemy, and in their eagerness they broke their ranks, and then the Normans standing their ground, and by a familiar discipline closing their ranks again, fell on the disordered English with a terrible slaughter.

Harold again rallied his forces and drew them together upon a rising ground, when the duke ordered a fresh attack, but the English received them with great bravery, killed great numbers of the Normans, and preserved their ranks.

The battle had lasted from seven in the morning, and now night drew on, whilst victory as yet seemed to remain in suspense.

But the duke determined to make one more effort before dark to drive the English from their station. In this attack Harold was slain by an arrow, at which the English, dismayed, took to flight, and the Normans, pursuing them as long as it was daylight, made a terrible slaughter. Garth and Lewin, the king's

Mention the stratagem of William. Its result. What did Harold do? The duke? The result? How long had the battle lasted? What did the duke determine? The result?

brothers, were slain, and the Normans gained a complete victory.

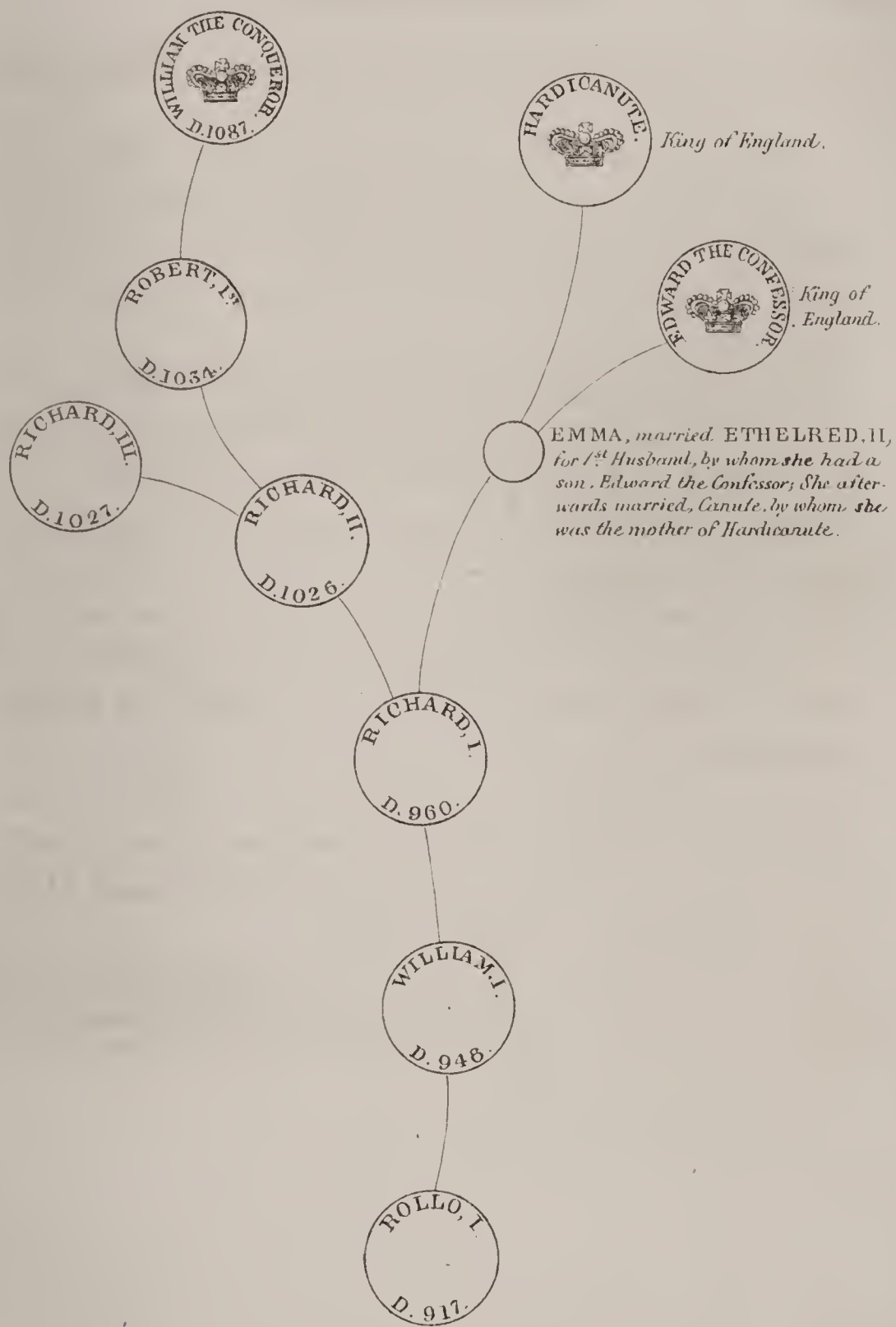
William immediately ordered his whole army to fall on their knees and thank God for so great a victory, and in the morning caused his own dead to be buried, and gave the English leave to do the same by their countrymen.

The bodies of the king and his two brothers being found, he sent them to their mother, who buried them in Waltham Abbey, which Harold had founded.

Thus fell the brave Harold, fighting valiantly not only in his own but his country's cause, after a short and turbulent reign of nine months and nine days, and with him ended the empire of the Anglo-Saxons in England, which began with Hengist, about six hundred years before.

It is remarkable that William, in effect, became master of England by this one fortunate blow, whereas all the former invaders, Romans, Saxons and Danes, conquered it as it were by inches.

What did William order his army to do? What was done with the bodies of the king and his brothers? What is said of Harold's fall? What ended with him? What fact is remarkable? What of former invaders?



Dukes of Normandy, from whom descended
William the Conqueror.

THE NORMAN FAMILY.

(1066) WILLIAM I., (surnamed the Conqueror.) (1087)

WE come now to one of the most interesting periods of English history; the Norman conquest.

The battle of Hastings was entirely decisive, and settled firmly the Norman family upon the throne of England.

That revolution was followed by a most remarkable alteration of laws, language, manners and customs.

England received a new race of kings, which either by the male or female line has continued to the present time.

These monarchs were indeed of several houses or families, taking the name of the princes or persons who espoused the princesses of England, and from such marriages gave kings and queens to the nation; or according to the different branches into which the royal family was divided.

Thus, the NORMANS began with William the Conqueror, the head of that race, and ended with Henry I., in whom the male line failed.

Stephen was the only one of the house of BLOIS, from the marriage of Adela, the Conqueror's fourth daughter, with Stephen, earl of Blois.

Who succeeded Harold? What is said of this period? What of the battle of Hastings? What followed the revolution? What did England receive? What of these monarchs? Give an account of the Norman family. Relate what is said of the house of Blois.

The PLANTAGANETS, or house of Anjou, began with Henry II., from the marriage of Matilda, daughter of Henry I., with Geoffrey Plantaganet, earl of Anjou, and continued undivided to Richard II. inclusive.

These were afterwards divided into the houses of LANCASTER and YORK. The former began with Henry IV., son of John of Gaunt, duke of Lancaster, fourth son of Edward III., and ending with Henry VI. The latter began with Edward IV., son of Richard, duke of York, who, on the father's side, was grandson of Edmund de Langley, fifth son of Edward III., and by his mother, descended from Lionel, duke of Clarence, third son of that king, and ended in Richard III.

The family of TUDORS began with Henry VII., from the marriage of Margaret, great grand-daughter of John of Gaunt, with Edmund Tudor, earl of Richmond, and ended with Queen Elizabeth.

The house of STUARTS began with James I., son of Henry Stuart (Lord Darnley) and Mary, Queen of Scots, whose grandmother was Margaret, daughter of Henry VII., and ended with Queen Anne.

William III. was the only one of the house of ORANGE, whose mother was Mary, daughter of Charles I.

The house of BRUNSWICK, now reigning, began with George I., whose grandmother was the Princess Elizabeth, daughter of James I.

Having made this digression for the better distinction of the following history, I now return to William the Conqueror.

What is said of the Plantaganets? Give an account of the house of Lancaster. Of the house of York. Give the account of the Tudors. What is said of the house of Stuart? Of the house of Orange? Give the account of the house of Brunswick.

William was the natural son of Robert, duke of Normandy, by Harlotta, daughter of a tanner in Falaise.

We have already said that Edgar Atheling, grandson of Edmund Ironsides, was at this time the only rightful heir to the crown; and it is difficult to conceive upon what ground William could lay claim to the crown of England.

Some writers assert that Edward invited him over to England, and promised to make him his heir by will.

Others claim that he held the crown by virtue of an irregular election of the people. But it is evident that he was more indebted to the success of his arms than to anything else.

Whatever may have been his claim, he was as much entitled to the throne as Harold, who was at best a usurper, the terror of whose sword, not the choice of the people, had reduced the crown to his possession.

William, finding himself firmly seated upon the English throne, ventured to pay a visit to his friends in Normandy. This proved unseasonable.

He had founded his usurpation upon the ruins of English liberty, and secured it, as he thought, by placing in the government of both church and state his Norman friends, to the utter exclusion of Englishmen. This had sown the seeds of disaffection, which broke out into open rebellion, as soon as the Conqueror had gone; and England became a theatre of insurrection and civil war.

Who was William? Who was the rightful heir to the throne? What do some say of William's title? What do others say? To what was he most indebted? What of his title as compared with Harold's? What did William do when firmly seated on the throne? How had he founded his usurpation? How had he secured it? What is said of this?

William, alarmed for the safety of his kingdom, hastened back, took the field, and ravaged the kingdom with fire and sword, until he quelled the rebellion.

He confiscated the estates of the insurgents, established a despotic sovereignty and an ecclesiastical independence in England, and set the pope at defiance.

He determined to humble the spirit of the haughty Britons, by placing all power in the hands of his Norman followers. He even formed a plan for extinguishing the English language, and for that purpose he ordered, that in all schools youth should be taught in the French tongue, and that all law proceedings should be conducted in the same idiom; hence, arises that mixture of French which is at present found in the English tongue, and particularly in legal forms.

William, during a respite from war, engaged in an undertaking which does honor to his memory. He appointed commissioners to survey all the lands in the kingdom; their extent in each district; their proprietors, tenures and value; and the quantity of meadow, wood, pasture, and arable land which they contained.

This monument of his wisdom, called *Doomsday Book*, was perfected in six years, and is still preserved in the Exchequer.

William humbled a rebellion, headed by his son Robert, in Normandy; and chastised Philip I., king of France, for an insolent witticism, by carrying fire and sword into his dominions.

What did William do? How did he attempt to subdue the Britons? How did he attempt to extinguish the English language? The consequence? What did William next do? What is the record called? What is said of it? What of the rebellion in Normandy? William's conduct toward Philip I. of France?

He died from a bruise, Sept. 9th, 1087, in the sixty-first year of his age, after having reigned in Normandy fifty-two years, and twenty-one of which he was king of England.

The character of William has been variously drawn, for he had a mixture of good and bad qualities.

He was tall and well proportioned in his younger years, and so strong, that none but himself could bend his bow. His courage and policy are not to be questioned, and he was indefatigable in whatever he designed.

He recommended William, his second surviving son, for his successor, and did all in his power to secure the crown to him. He had three other sons besides William, by his wife Matilda. To Robert, the eldest, he gave the dutchy of Normandy.

Richard was killed by a stag while hunting in the *New Forest*.

To his youngest son, Henry, he gave an annuity of five thousand marks, and when the young prince complained, as not being pleased with his portion, it is said his father told him that the dominion of his two brothers should one day be united and vested in him; which prophecy indeed came to pass.

He had also five daughters,—Cicely, Constance, Adela, Gundred and Agatha.

When and of what did William die? How long had he reigned in Normandy? How long in England? What is said of William's character? What of his person? What of his courage and policy? Whom did he recommend for his successor? How many sons had he beside William? What did he give to Robert? What became of Richard? What did he give Henry? What did he say should be added? How many daughters had William?

(1087) WILLIAM II., (surnamed Rufus.) (1100)

William, surnamed Rufus, from his red hair, was crowned in 1087.

He pursued the policy of his father, in his severity towards his English subjects, and in the suppression of several insurrections, increased their humiliation. He carried his arms into Normandy, where he met with a perilous escape. He humbled the Scots and Welch; and on his return, purchased Normandy from his brother Robert, for ten thousand marks; took possession of the dutchy, and his brother became an adventurer in the first crusade, in 1096. He humbled St. Anselm, Archbishop of Canterbury, set Pope Urban II. at defiance, and took the prelacy into his own hands for five years.

He restored the crown of Scotland to Malcolm III., the rightful heir, and expelled the Danes from the island of Anglesea.

William was upon the point of embarking for France, to take possession of Guienne and Poictiers, by purchase from William, earl of Poictiers and duke of Guienne,—a sale made to raise money for the first crusade,—when he was accidentally shot by Walter Tyrrel, a French gentleman, who accompanied the king on a hunting match, in the *New Forest*, 1100.

William was perfidious and cruel in the extreme; and opposite qualities of prodigality and rapacity, which

Who succeeded him? When? His surname? Why? What is said of the conduct and policy of this prince? What of the Welch and Scots? Of whom did he purchase Normandy? For how much? What is said of St. Anselm and the Pope? Relate what is said of the crown of Scotland and the Danes? What was William preparing to do when he died? Cause of his death? When did he die? His character?

were reconciled in him, had long estranged from him the hearts of his subjects.

The chief monuments which perpetuate his memory are the Tower, Westminster Hall and London Bridge.

William died without issue, and Henry was proclaimed king in three days after his brother's death.

(1100) HENRY I., (surnamed Beauclerc.) (1135)

Prince Henry was hunting with *Rufus*, when that monarch was killed, and hastening to Winchester, he extorted, by threats, the royal treasure from William de Breteuil, the keeper. Pursuing his journey to London, and having assembled some noblemen and prelates, whom his address or liberality had gained to his side, he was saluted king, and in three days after his brother's death he was crowned.

To maintain the dignity which he had thus usurped, Henry resolved to court, by fair professions at least, the favor of his subjects.

He secured his throne, by promising to restore the laws of Edward the Confessor, and by restoring the Archbishop Anselm to the See of Canterbury.

Henry married Matilda, daughter of Malcolm III., king of Scotland, and niece of Edgar Atheling.

These wise measures secured the throne to Henry against the disaffected Norman barons, and against the invasion of his brother Robert, upon his return from the Crusade.

Monuments that perpetuate his memory? Who succeeded him? When? What did Henry do on the death of William? How did he attempt to maintain his dignity? How did he secure the throne? Whom did he marry? What is said of his measures?

Robert returned to Normandy about a month after the death of his brother William.

After establishing his authority over Normandy, he made preparations for possessing himself of England, of which he had been so unjustly defrauded.

The opposing armies lay in sight of each other for several days without coming to action. It was finally agreed that Robert, in lieu of his pretensions to England, should receive an annual pension of three thousand marks; that if either of the princes died without issue, the survivor should succeed to his dominions; and that the adherents of each should be pardoned.

The indolence of Robert caused him to neglect the government of his dutchy, and Normandy became a scene of violence and depredation.

These disorders furnished Henry with a favorable opportunity for adding Normandy to his crown. He raised an army, and took Bayeux by storm, and was admitted into Caen by the inhabitants.

Robert, roused at last from his lethargy, advanced to meet him, with the view of terminating the quarrels by a decisive battle.* He resumed his wonted spirit; he animated his troops by his example, and threw the

When did Robert return to Normandy? What did he attempt to do? What of the armies? What was done? Relate what is said of Robert's indolence? What did this furnish Henry? What was done? Relate what is said of Robert. What the consequence of the battle of Tinchbray? (see note.)

* The battle of Tinchbray was fought in 1107; and it is a notable fact, that this single battle put the English in the possession of all Normandy, as the battle of Hastings, forty years before, had made the Normans masters of England. This fact also verifies the prediction of William I., in regard to his son Henry, before alluded to.

English into disorder. But the treachery and flight of one of his generals occasioned the total defeat of his whole army. Robert and ten thousand of his followers were made prisoners. Normandy submitted to the victors and Robert was carried to England and detained in prison during the remainder of his life, in the castle of Cardiff.

The conquest of Normandy seemed to establish the throne of Henry, but his prosperity was clouded by a severe domestic calamity. His only son, William, had reached his eighteenth year; he had been affianced to the daughter of Fulk, count of Anjou, and had been acknowledged as successor to the kingdom of England and the duchy of Normandy. The prince was detained for some hours after his father had set sail from Barfleur to return to England; and his captain and crew, having spent the time in drinking, when they weighed anchor, in their impatience to overtake the king, struck the ship on a rock, where she immediately foundered. William was put into the long-boat, and had got clear of the ship, when hearing the cries of his natural sister, the countess of Perche, he ordered the seamen to row back in hopes of saving her. But the numbers who then crowded in soon sunk the boat, and the prince and all his retinue perished. The only person that escaped to relate the melancholy tale was a butcher of Rouen, who clung to the mast and was taken up the next morning by some fishermen.

When Henry received intelligence of this mournful

What occasioned a defeat? Result of battle? What secured Henry his throne? Relate the story of Henry's domestic calamity. What person escaped? How? The effect of William's death on Henry?

event he fainted away, and it was remarked that he was never afterwards known to smile. Henry had now no legitimate issue, except one daughter, Matilda, who was betrothed at the age of eight years to Henry V., of Germany, and who, becoming a widow, afterwards married Geoffrey Plantagenet, son of Faulk, count of Anjou.

Henry died in 1135, from eating too plentifully of lampreys, in the sixty-seventh year of his age and the thirty-fifth of his reign, leaving by will his daughter Matilda the heir of all his dominions.

Henry was a prince of great courage and skill, both in civil and military affairs; his person was manly and his countenance engaging. By his progress in literature he acquired the name of *Beau Clerc*, or *the Scholar*. But all his good qualities were sullied by his many vices, particularly those of cruelty and avarice. His barbarous use of his brother, in stripping him of his dominions and detaining him so long in prison, can, on no pretense whatever, be justified.

(1135) STEPHEN, (the Usurper.) (1154)

The failure of male heirs to the kingdom of England and duchy of Normandy seemed to leave the succession open, without a rival, to the princess Matilda. But no sooner had Henry breathed his last than Stephen, son of Adela, daughter of William the Conqueror, hastened to London and was saluted king.

His father was the count of Blois.

What is said of Matilda? When did Henry die? His age? Length of reign? His character? His person? What of his vices? Who succeeded him? When? Who was the true heir? How was Stephen descended?

The barons and clergy supported Stephen, as being better adapted to the necessity of the times than Matilda or her young son Henry.

Stephen, on his part, granted them every indulgence consistent with the safety of the crown, even to coin money, erect castles and to garrison them with their own troops.

These indulgences not only weakened and almost destroyed the authority of the crown, but laid the foundation of those wars of the barons which afterwards drenched England with blood.

In the midst of anarchy thus occasioned, David, king of Scotland, invaded England with a powerful army to enforce the claims of his niece, Matilda, but was defeated at the battle of Standard with great slaughter, and made his escape to Scotland.

Matilda next landed in England from Normandy, asserted her own rights, and kindled a civil war, which raged with such violence as to produce a general famine, which greatly distressed the kingdom. Stephen was captured, loaded with irons and thrown into prison.

The authority of Matilda now seemed to be established over the island.

Stephen was called from prison and exchanged for Robert, the natural brother and champion of Matilda, and the war was rekindled. This was again soon quelled by mutual consent, and Matilda returned to Normandy.

Who supported him? Why? What did Stephen do? The effect of these indulgences on the crown? Who invaded England and why? Result? Who next invaded England? What is said of the war that followed? What became of Stephen? For whom was he exchanged? How was the war again quelled?

Prince Henry, upon the death of his father, being about sixteen years of age, took possession of the provinces of Anjou and Maine, espoused Eleanor, the divorced queen of Lewis VII., of France, who brought him Guienne and Poictou, which placed him on a foundation to recover his claims upon the crown of England.

Two years after this Henry invaded England and prepared to encounter Stephen in a pitched battle. The great men on both sides, alarmed at the consequences of a decisive action, compelled the rival princes to a negotiation.

It was agreed that Stephen should hold the crown during his life, and that on his demise it should revert to Henry. Stephen's death the next year, (1154,) in the fiftieth year of his age and nineteenth of his reign, put an end to further jealousies.

Though the steps by which Stephen gained the throne can not be justified, it must be confessed that he was a prince of undoubted valor and bravery and of great clemency and generosity.

In this reign the Canon Law was introduced into England, and the See of Rome made rapid progress in its encroachments, and ultimately pretended to a permanent authority over the country.

What is said of prince Henry's marriage? What did she bring him? When did Henry invade England? What did the great men do? What was agreed to? What put an end to further jealousies? How old was Stephen? Length of his reign? What is said of Stephen? What took place during his reign?

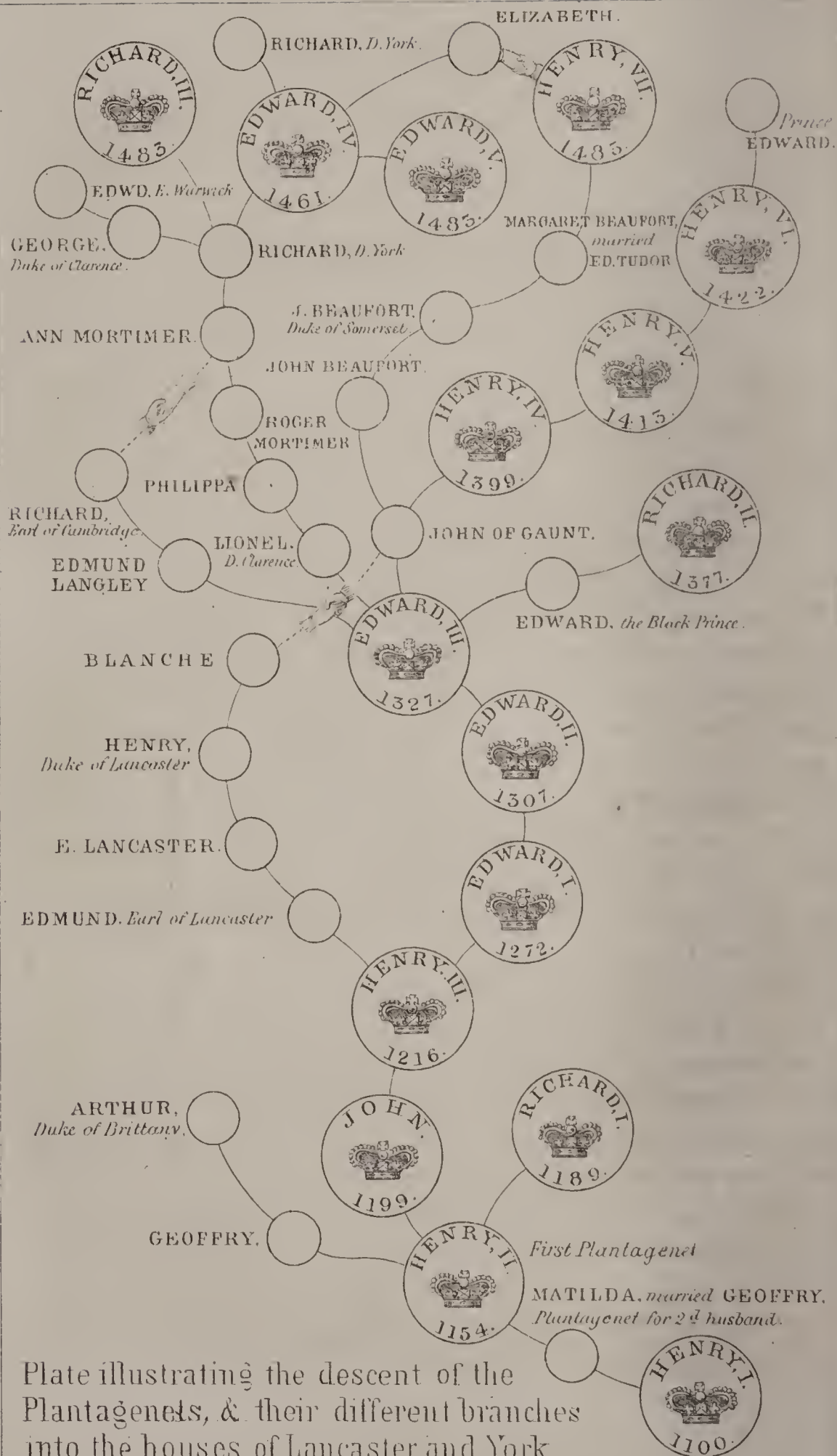


Plate illustrating the descent of the Plantagenets, & their different branches into the houses of Lancaster and York.

THE PLANTAGENETS.

(1154)

HENRY II.

(1189)

UPON the death of Stephen, Henry succeeded to the crown without opposition. He was at this time duke of Normandy, the empress, his mother, having delivered up that duchy to him.

He was the first of the Plantagenets, and by the death of his father, Geoffry Plantagenet, was earl of Anjou, Tourraine and Maine. By virtue of his marriage with Eleanor, Henry was also possessed of Poictou and Guienne. So that Henry, for extent of dominion, was one of the most powerful princes of his time. And what made him more acceptable to the English was, that in him the Saxon line was restored, he being descended, by his mother's side, from the Saxon kings.

The first acts of Henry's government corresponded with the high ideas entertained of his abilities. He dismissed all the foreign mercenaries of Stephen, and restored the charter of liberty of Henry I.

The war which soon broke out between Henry and Lewis VII., of France, led Henry to see the unwieldy mode of waging war by means of the barons and their vassals, according to the feudal mode. He therefore levied a tax of three pounds on each knight's fee; with this money he raised the first *independent army* and brought the war to a speedy close.

Henry next turned his attention to the church, where he found the sale of indulgences and the composition of penances

Who succeeded Stephen? When? What were his possessions? What made him more acceptable to England? What is said of the first acts of his reign? What did he restore? What of the war? What did Henry do? To what did he next turn his attention?

raised more annual revenue than the crown. He set himself to work to correct this abuse. The church had become a sink of corruption and claimed exemption from all civil jurisdiction. Murders, robberies and assassinations were committed daily by the ecclesiastics with impunity, and more than one hundred were proved upon men in holy orders, since his succession, without even an inquiry, why or wherefore.

To effect this great object and correct the abuses of the mitre, Henry advanced Thomas à Becket, his chancellor, to the See of Canterbury; the first instance of English promotion since the days of William the Conqueror.

Becket was a splendid courtier, gay in his amusements, fond of diversions, a jovial sportsman, yet he knew how to render his industry useful to his master. Becket knew the motives of the king, felt his elevated situation, and determined to make the most of it. He threw off the character of the chancellor and put on that of the saint; assumed the severest monkish austerity and mortification, wore sackcloth next to his skin and became a beast of dirt and vermin; his food was bread and water, and his back was often lacerated with penitential scourging; daily upon his knees, in imitation of the Savior of men, he washed the feet of thirteen beggars and dismissed them with presents.

The sanctity and mortification of the holy primate, together with his sacred devotions, became the wonder and admiration of the nation.

This knight of the cross, in his citadel of sanctity, levied war upon the king. A parish clerk in Worcestershire first debauched a gentleman's daughter and then murdered the father. Henry demanded that the offender should be delivered up to the magistrate. Becket claimed the privileges

What is said of the church? What did Henry do to correct these abuses? Relate the account of Becket. What is said of Becket's sanctity? On whom did he make war? What crime was committed and by whom? What did Henry do? Becket's claim?

of the church, and demanded that he should be only degraded. Henry summoned a council of bishops and nobles, and submitted the great question, which produced what was called the *Constitutions of Clarendon*.

Henry ordered the Constitutions to be reduced to writing, and signed and sealed by all the prelates, with a promise to observe them *legally* and in *good faith* and without *fraud* or *reserve*, and sealed the whole with an oath.

With all this the primate Becket was obliged to comply. A copy of the Constitutions of Clarendon, as signed, sealed and sworn to observe, Henry sent to the pope, Alexander III., for ratification of his holiness. He abrogated, annulled and rejected them. This kindled anew the austerities of Becket, and he declined all ecclesiastical duties until he had received absolution from the pope. This he soon obtained and then gave free scope to his ambition.

CONSTITUTIONS OF CLARENDON.

“Voted, without opposition, that no chief tenant of the crown shall be excommunicated or have his lands put under an interdict without the king’s consent; that no appeals in spiritual causes shall be carried before the holy see, nor any clergyman suffered to depart the kingdom unless with the king’s permission; that laymen shall not be accused in spiritual courts, except by regal and respectable prompters and witnesses; and, lastly, that churchmen accused of any crime shall be tried in civil courts.”

The rejection of these articles by the pope and the haughty overbearing spirit of Becket, called into requisition all the energies of Henry. He summoned Becket to give an account of the revenues of the abbies, prelates and baronies, which were subjected to his management as chancellor. This kindled the fire. Becket again intrenched himself more strongly in his

What did Henry summons? What was produced? Henry’s order? What of Becket? To whom was a copy sent? What did the pope do? Its effect on Becket. Give the Constitutions of Clarendon. What did Henry do? What is said of Becket?

citadel of austerity and sanctity, defied the arm of the law, strictly prohibited all his suffragans to assist the king in any manner, in any trial against him; put himself under the protection of the vicar of Christ, and made his appeals to his holiness in the face of the Constitutions which he had signed, sealed and sworn to obey.

This was his style: "The indignation of a great king, such as Henry, with his sword, can only kill the body; while that of the Church, intrusted to the primate, can kill the soul, and throw the disobedient into infinite and eternal perdition."

Becket, upon this, retired to France, where he was honored and distinguished by the pope and other potentates. The exclamations of the exile filled Henry with anxiety, and all Christendom with intrigue. The primate triumphed over Henry so far that he was honorably restored to his See of Canterbury and enjoyed his usual honors.

Henry had retired into Normandy during this controversy, and Becket rode in triumph through England, and proclaimed war against Henry with renewed violence, threatening with spiritual thunders all the prelates who had assisted at the coronation of the king.

The spirit of Henry could not endure this, and he exclaimed, "Will my servants leave me exposed to the insolence of this ungrateful and imperious priest?"

This armed four of the king's household, who passed over into England and dispatched Becket.

The death of the primate filled Henry with more distress than his life. He shut himself up for three days, denying himself all sustenance, as well as the light of the sun; and by a solemn embassy, attempted to appease the vengeance of the pope, by protesting his innocence.

Give the specimen of his style. Whither did Becket retire? The effect of his exclamations? How far did the primate triumph? Where was Henry? What did Becket do? Relate what Henry said. Who dispatched Becket? The effect of his death on Henry? What of the pope?

His holiness listened graciously, whilst all Europe resounded with the praises of the holy martyr, whose sacred tomb wrought all manner of miracles ; restored the dead to life, both men, women and children, dogs, horses and cows ; and was loaded with presents from all parts of Christendom, to obtain his intercession in heaven, and which received the devotions of more than one hundred thousand pilgrims in one year.

In the midst of this religious frenzy, Henry undertook the conquest of Ireland, then in its most rude and barbarous state, governed by the laws of force, executed by murders, assassinations and pillage.

After the conquest of Ireland, Henry repaired to Normandy to meet the pope's legates ; settled his peace with the church by clearing himself, by oath, from all concern in Becket's death ; made some concessions which were satisfactory, and the storm was hushed ; but another soon sprang up in its place.

The king had appointed Henry, his eldest son, to be his successor in the kingdom of England, the dutchy of Normandy, and the counties of Anjou, Maine and Touraine ; Richard, his second son, was invested in the duchy of Guienne and county of Poictou ; Geoffrey, his third son, inherited, in right of his wife, the duchy of Brittany ; and the new conquest of Ireland was destined for the appendage of John, his fourth son.

This exaltation of his family excited the jealousy of all his neighbors, who made those very sons, whose fortunes he had so anxiously established, the means of embittering his future life, and disturbing his government.

A conspiracy was formed against him by his Queen, Eleanor, and his sons, Henry, Richard and Geoffrey, into which were drawn several of the barons, and which was countenanced and

What is said of Becket's tomb ? What did Henry undertake ? How was it then governed ? After the conquest, what did Henry do ? Whom did Henry appoint as his successor ? What did Richard have ? What did Geoffrey inherit ? What did John have ? What of exaltation of his family ? By whom was a conspiracy formed ?

encouraged by the king of France, and several other foreign princes.

Queen Eleanor was moved to this by her extreme jealousy, which had caused her to dispatch the fair Rosamand, the king's chief mistress.

Young Henry was weary of the title of king without the authority. Richard and Geoffrey were dissatisfied with their father's retaining the sovereignty of the counties assigned for their portions.

Henry privately withdrew from court, and went over to the king of France. When Eleanor was informed of this, she sent thither also Richard and Geoffrey. Richard caused the greater part of Guienne to revolt; Geoffrey raised an insurrection in Bretagne; the king of France attacked Normandy; and William, king of Scotland, invaded the northern part of England.

The earl of Leicester having levied an army in France, landed at Southhampton, hoping to stir up the English against the king.

In the meantime, young Henry, who continued at Paris, acted as though he was sole king of England, receiving the homage of the vassals, making grants and donations of the crown lands, and exercising other acts of sovereignty.

Never did prince stand more in need of courage and resolution, and never was it better exerted than by Henry on this occasion. Though the conspiracy was deeply laid and broke out suddenly, almost before he knew anything of the matter, yet he managed his affairs with such vigor, prudence and magnanimity, that he got the better of all his enemies, and procured to himself, once more, the peaceable possession of all his dominions.

What moved Queen Eleanor to this? What of the king's sons? What of Henry? What did Richard do? What did Geoffrey do? The king of France? Who invaded the North of England? What is said of the earl of Leicester? What is said of young Henry? Relate what is said of King Henry.

After all these great successes, King Henry granted a general pardon to all who revolted against him, without exception, and his sons promised to be obedient for the future.

A few years after, Henry found his eldest son again engaged in conspiracies and ready to take arms against him. But while the young prince was conducting these intrigues, he was seized with a fever, and died, full of remorse for his undutiful behavior to his father. His brother Geoffrey did not long survive him; he died in 1186, leaving a son, Arthur.

The death of Henry put a stop, for some time, to the troubles that had distracted the royal family. But Prince Richard, who was now heir-apparent to the crown, incited new disturbances in the king's foreign dominions.

The mortification of Henry was increased on this occasion by discovering that his fourth son, John, had secretly entered into the unnatural conspiracy which Richard had formed against him. The unhappy father, already overloaded with cares and sorrows, finding this last disappointment in his domestic tenderness, broke out into expressions of the utmost despair, cursed the day on which he received his miserable being, and bestowed on his ungrateful and undutiful children a malediction which he could never be prevailed on to retract.

The agitation of his mind threw him into a lingering fever, of which he died, A. D. 1189, in the fifty-eighth year of his age, and the thirty-fifth of his reign.

There was a great mixture of vices and virtues in King Henry. He was certainly a prince of an exalted genius, valiant, generous, politic and learned; but at the same time he was exceedingly haughty and ambitious, and of boundless lust. Where love or empire were concerned, he hesitated at nothing to accomplish his desires.

To whom did he grant a pardon? Who was afterward found in a conspiracy? What is said of this prince? When did Geoffrey die? What of the death of Henry? What is said of Richard? What of John? The effect of this on the king? What was the effect of this agitation of his mind? When did he die? His age? Length of his reign? Give his character.

Of five sons by Eleanor, two only, Richard and John, survived him.

(1189) RICHARD I., (surnamed Cœur de Lion.) (1199)

Richard was in France at the time of his father's death. He shortly returned to England, and was crowned in 1199.

A new crusade, for the recovery of Jerusalem from the infidels, had been resolved upon between Philip of France and King Henry, in which Richard was to bear a part; but their private quarrels put an end to the undertaking. Philip and Richard being now on amicable terms, they resumed the design according to both their vows. King Richard's thoughts were wholly taken up with this affair from his very accession; whether for *glory* or *religion*, let the reader judge.

As he designed to make a great figure in this expedition, it was necessary that he should take with him a numerous army, to maintain which he scrupled at no method to raise money. Whilst Richard was extorting money for the expedition, the clergy did all in their power to procure him soldiers, and the army soon became very numerous.

Having completed his preparations for the voyage, he gave the regency, during his absence, to Longchamp, his high-chancellor, joining with him the bishop of Durham. As to his brother, Prince John, he did not allow him to have any share in the government, for fear of giving an opportunity to act against him. He however invested him with the earldoms of Cornwall, Dorset, Somerset, Nottingham, Derby and Lancaster.

All things being settled, Richard passed over into France, A. D. 1190, and the two armies of France and England, making together over 100,000 men, joined at Veazely according to agreement. Thence they marched to the ports of Genoa

What is said of his family? Who succeeded Henry? When? Where was he at the time of his father's death. When was he crowned? Relate what is said of a new crusade? What was necessary? Who assisted him? To whom did he give the regency? What of Prince John? When did Richard start? Where did the armies join? Where did they march?

and Marseilles, where they each embarked his army for the *Holy Land*. They were forced by stress of weather to winter at Messina; were entangled in an intrigue with the king of Naples, quarreled with the Messinians, and with each other. Richard seized on the city of Messina, and planted his standard on the walls.

Richard and Philip settled their quarrels, and again embarked upon their adventure, A. D. 1191.

Richard was wrecked upon the island of Cyprus. Some of his vessels were plundered, and their crews imprisoned. Richard took vengeance on Isaac, king of the island, repaired his fleet, and again set sail.

The Christians had pushed the siege of Ptolemais, a strong seaport city in Palestine, in possession of the Saracens. This siege had proved fatal to Frederick II., son and successor of Frederick I., emperor of Germany, and ruinous to his army. Here Richard landed his army, joined Philip again, and took part in the siege, which he prosecuted so vigorously that the city surrendered.

The martial superiority of Richard disgusted Philip, and the dissensions of the two kings broke out afresh.

Philip renewed his oath of peace and amity with Richard, left him two thousand men under the duke of Burgundy, and returned with his army to France.

Touching at Italy on his way, he applied to Clement III. to absolve him from his oath, who refused. He then attempted to manage by intrigue, what his oath restrained him from doing by open hostility.

Richard put himself at the head of the confederates, and marched to the siege of Ascalon. Saladin, with an army of 300,000 men, disputed his passage. An action ensued, the

What is said of the weather? Relate what took place during the winter. What did Philip and Richard do? Relate what is said of Richard. Of the siege of Ptolemais? Of Richard's martial superiority? What is said of Philip? What did Richard do? What did Saladin do? Give the account of the battle.

conflict was terrible. Forty thousand Saracens strewed the field of death. The Christians were triumphant. Ascalon fell into their hands, and the way was open to Jerusalem.

In full view of the great object of their enterprise and labors, a magical languor seized all the princes; they resolved to abandon the enterprise, settled a peace with Saladin, and returned to Europe.

Whilst Richard was making himself famous abroad, by his heroic conduct, Longchamp, the regent, abused his power at home to such a degree, that his colleague, the bishop of Durham, and the counsellors which the king had appointed to assist them, complained to Prince John, and persuaded him to join with them in order to depose him.

John was glad of this opportunity of having a hand in the administration, and so improved it as to make a strong party for the crown, in case his brother died during his expedition, in prejudice of his nephew, Arthur, duke of Bretagne, son of his elder brother, Geoffrey.

The fear of Philip's attacking his dominions in his absence, and the news of what John was doing in England, made Richard resolve to return home.

On his return, in the garb of a pilgrim, Richard was seized and imprisoned by Leopold, duke of Austria, who had been his companion in arms at the siege of Ptolemais. Leopold sold Richard to the Emperor Henry VII., who loaded him with irons, and immured him in a dungeon in the heart of Germany. The news of the king's imprisonment quickly reached England, and caused the greatest consternation among his friends, whilst Prince John took this opportunity to endeavor to wrest the crown from his brother, but was prevented by the diligence of

What is related of the princes? Give an account of the condition of affairs in England. What is said of John? What caused Richard to return? Give the account of Richard's imprisonment. The effect of his imprisonment

the queen, his mother, and the barons, who preserved their fidelity to their imprisoned sovereign.

Finding that he could not make a sufficient party in England, he went over to Normandy, and failing there also, in his attempts, he applied to the king of France, and made a treaty with him. Philip, glad of any pretense to embroil Richard's affairs, resolved to seize upon the provinces he held in France.

In the mean time, queen Eleanor greatly exerted herself to procure the liberty of the king, her son; whilst Philip and John did all they could to prevail with the emperor, to keep him still a prisoner.

Richard was finally set at liberty upon paying down *one hundred thousand marks* of silver, which the queen had raised in England, and giving hostages for the payment of *fifty thousand* more.

The king was no sooner released than he hastened with all speed to England, and arrived in March, 1194, after having been absent four years, fifteen months of which time he was a prisoner.

The joy of the English nation upon the arrival of Richard was inexpressible; but the chagrin and alarm of Philip were best expressed in his caution to John, brother to Richard, who had been his confederate in his intrigue: "Take care of yourself, the devil has broke loose." Richard had no sooner recovered his throne than he carried war into Normandy, to revenge the perfidious intrigues of Philip and his brother John.

John submitted, craved pardon, and Richard granted it with this expression, "I hope I shall as easily forget his offenses as he will my pardon."

After having made a truce with France, Richard returned to

Where did John go? What did Philip do? What was the conduct of Queen Eleanor? Upon what terms was Richard released? When did he arrive in England? How long had he been absent? How long a prisoner? What was the effect of his arrival? Its effect on Philip? What did he say to John? What did Richard do? What was John's conduct? Give Richard's reply to him.

England and might have enjoyed some repose from his fatigues had not his avarice put him upon an action which occasioned his death. A gentleman in the duchy of Guienne having found a treasure that had been hid for some ages in his grounds, Richard claimed it, as being sovereign of the country. The gentleman applied to Vidomar, viscount of Limoges, for protection. Vidomar sheltered him in the castle of Chaluz, which Richard besieged. In the attempt he was wounded by an arrow in the shoulder near the neck. The wound, under the management of an unskillful surgeon, gangrened, and he died in eleven days, April 6th, 1199.

Thus fell Richard I., king of England, the hero of Palestine and the idol of his people, with the title of *Cœur de Lion*, (or *the lion hearted*,) in the forty-third year of his age and tenth of his reign.

Richard before he died made his will, leaving his kingdom to his brother John, and ordering his body to be buried at the feet of the king, his father, to testify his grief for his undutiful behavior towards him.

(1199) JOHN, (surnamed Lackland.) (1216)

Though Richard had by his will given all his dominions to his brother John, he did not succeed to them without some trouble. He had a competitor who had a better title to the crown than himself, Arthur, duke of Bretagne, son of his elder brother Geoffry.

In England, however, there appears to have been no regulation with regard to the succession of the crown, since the Norman conquest, and so John's title might be as good as Arthur's, besides having his brother's will on his side. But in the foreign provinces possessed by the English, the right of suc-

Whom did Richard besiege? The result? What is said of Richard's death? His age? Length of his reign? What did Richard do in his will? Who succeeded him? When? What is said of John's competitor? What is said of the succession of the crown?

cession in the direct line was generally received. Of those who advocated the cause of John in England, were his mother, Queen Eleanor; Hubert, archbishop of Canterbury; William Marshal, afterwards earl of Pembroke, and the chief justiciary, who had great power during the interregnum.

As Queen Eleanor was very much beloved by the people, the archbishop was at the head of the clergy, and Marshal was a lord of distinguished worth; these four persons served John so effectually that in a short time all the lords were at last prevailed upon to swear allegiance to him.

In France things did not go so well. The pretensions of young Arthur, the apprehension of his being favored by the king of France, and the general good will of the people towards him, made John a great deal of trouble. John was crowned duke of Normandy, and then went over to England, where he was crowned at London, in May, 1199.

His whole reign was nothing but a series of misfortunes. Philip, of France, Pope Innocent III., and his own barons, in their turn, furnished so much work for him as rendered him unhappy as long as he lived.

In a victory which John had gained over Arthur, the latter was taken prisoner, and John ordered him to be confined in the Tower, where, as some writers assert, John ordered his eyes to be put out, but finding that the order had not been complied with, he murdered him with his own hands.

The inhuman murder of Arthur drew upon John the vengeance of his English subjects. They even made overtures to Philip, king of France, to revenge the barbarity. Philip embraced the favorable moment, seized on Normandy, Anjou, Maine, Tourraine, and part of Poictou, and added them to the

Who advocated John's cause in England? What is said of those persons? What is said of the condition of things in France? When and where was John crowned? What is said of his reign? What is said of Philip and the pope? Relate the account of Arthur. What was the effect of Arthur's murder? What did Philip do?

crown of France. John fled to England, where he became the sport of his barons and the pope.

Clement III. attempted to exercise his sovereignty in appointing an archbishop of Canterbury, John opposed. Clement issued his spiritual thunders with a sentence of deposition. To enforce these thunders the pope proffered to Philip of France the eternal joys of Heaven, together with the crown of England, if he would enforce the decree. Philip readily accepted, levied a great army, together with a fleet, to execute the decree. John prepared as formidably for the defence, and all Europe was alive to the issue.

In the midst of this vast preparation, Innocent III. received the submission of John, sent Pandolf, his legate, into England to receive the homage of the king, and, at the hands of John, took the crown of England to himself.

John, upon his knees, before the throne of the legate, resigned his crown and swore fealty to Innocent III. in the following style: *"I, John, by the grace of God king of England and lord of Ireland, for the expiation of my sins, and out of my own free will, with the advice and consent of my barons, do give unto the church of Rome, and to Pope Innocent III., and his successors, the kingdoms of Ireland and England, together with all rights belonging to them; and will hold them of the pope as his vassal. I will be faithful to God, to the church of Rome, to the pope, my lord, and to his successors, lawfully appointed, and I bind myself to pay him a tribute of 1,000 marks of silver yearly, viz.; 700 for the kingdom of England, and 300 for Ireland."*

John was absolved and after five days again invested with the regalia of majesty, A. D. 1213.

Philip, stung with mortification and rage, to be duped by such a pious fraud, resolved to execute his purpose, even against

What is said of John? Relate the conduct of Clement III. What did he do to enforce his thunders? What is said of Philip? What of John? What did Innocent III. do? Relate the conduct of John. Give his oath. When was he again made king? What is said of Philip?

the commands of the pope. But the English fleet, under the command of the earl of Salisbury, the king's natural brother, attacked the French in their harbors, and by the destruction of the greater part of their armament, compelled Philip to abandon the enterprise.

The introduction of the feudal system into England, by William the Conqueror, had infringed on the liberties enjoyed by the Anglo-Saxons, and had reduced the people to a state of vassalage, and in some respects, real slavery to the kings or barons. The necessity, also, of entrusting great power in the hands of a prince who was to maintain military dominion over a vanquished nation, had engaged the Saxon barons to submit to a more severe and absolute prerogative than that to which men of their rank were commonly subjected; and England, during a period of an hundred and fifty years, had been governed by an authority unknown, in the same degree, to all the kingdoms founded by the northern conquerors.

Henry I., that he might allure the people to exclude his elder brother, Robert, had granted them a charter, favorable in many particulars to their liberties; Stephen had renewed the grant; Henry II. had confirmed it; but the concessions of all these princes had remained a dead letter; when John, equally odious and contemptible, both in public and private life, provoked the people to form a general confederacy, and to demand a restoration of their privileges.

Nothing forwarded this confederacy so much as the concurrence of Langton, archbishop of Canterbury; a man whose memory ought always to be respected by the English. This prelate formed the plan of reforming the government, and paved the way for it, by inserting a clause in the oath which he administered to the king before he would absolve him from

What did the English fleet do? What is said of the feudal system? What is said of the power of the princes? What is said of Henry I.? Of Stephen? Henry II.? What of the concessions of these princes? What is said of John's conduct? What forwarded this confederacy? How did he pave the way for this?

excommunication. "*That he would re-establish the good laws of his predecessors, abolish the wicked ones, and maintain justice and right in all his dominions.*"

By the zeal and eloquence of Langton, the confederacy was extended, until the barons took oath to adhere to each other, and to make endless war upon the king till he should grant their demands. They agreed that they would prefer in a body their common petition, and that in the mean time they would enlist men, and purchase arms, and supply their castles with necessary provisions. On the day appointed, the barons appeared in London and required the king, in consequence of his oath before the primate, as well as in deference to their just rights, to renew the charter of Henry, and confirm the laws of Edward. The king asked for a delay, which was granted.

The interval was employed by John in appealing to the pope, against the violence of his barons. Innocent exhorted the prelates to employ their good offices in putting an end to civil discord, expressed his disapprobation of the conduct of the barons, and advised the king to grant such demands as should appear reasonable.

Though the barons perceived that the pope was inimical to their interests, they had advanced too far to recede from their pretensions; and they foresaw that the thunders of Rome, when not seconded by the efforts of English ecclesiastics, would avail little against them. At the time, therefore, when they were to expect the king's answer to their petition, they assembled their forces, consisting of about two thousand knights, besides retainers, and inferior persons without number. They advanced in a body to within twenty miles of Oxford, the place where the court then resided; when they received a message from the king, desiring to know what those liberties were, which they so

Give the clause. What is said of Langton's zeal and eloquence? What was agreed? What did they require the king to do? To whom did John appeal? What did the pope do? What did the barons perceive? What did they do when they expected the king's answer? To what place did they advance? What did they receive?

zealously demanded from the sovereign. They delivered to the messenger a schedule containing the chief articles of their demands, which was no sooner shown to John, than he burst into a furious passion, swearing he would never grant such privileges as must reduce himself to slavery.

The confederated nobles, informed of his answer, proceeded without ceremony to levy war upon the king. They besieged the castle of Northampton, were admitted into that of Bradford, occupied Ware, and entered London without opposition. They laid waste the royal parks and palaces; and all the barons who had hitherto appeared to support the king, openly joined a cause which they had secretly favored.

So universal was the defection that the king was left with a retinue of only seven knights. After trying several expedients, and offering to refer all differences to the pope, he found himself at last obliged to yield without reserve.

A conference took place between the king and the barons, at *Runnymede*, between Windsor and Staines,—a place which has ever since been famous on account of that great event. After a debate of a few days, the king, with a facility rather suspicious, signed and sealed, June 19, 1215, the famous deed, called *MAGNA CHARTA*, or the *Great Charter*, which granted and secured very important liberties to the clergy, the barons and the people.

The articles of this charter contain such mitigations and explanations of the feudal laws as are reasonable and equitable; and also involve all the chief outlines of a legal government, providing for the equal distribution of justice, and the free enjoyment of property.

John apparently submitted to all these regulations, however injurious to majesty; but he only awaited a proper opportunity for annulling his concessions. He retired to the isle of Wight,

What did they deliver to the messenger? Conduct of John? What did the nobles do? What is said of the defection? What is said of the king? Relate what took place at Runnymede? What was signed, and when? What did it grant? What is said of the articles? What is said of John? Whither did he retire?

where he meditated the most fatal vengeance against his enemies. He secretly sent his emissaries to France, Germany and Flanders, to raise foreign troops, promising that whoever should enlist in his service, should be rewarded by the confiscated estates of his rebellious barons, as he called them. He also dispatched a messenger to Rome, to complain before that tribunal of the violence which had been imposed upon him.

Innocent, considering himself as feudal lord of the kingdom, issued a bull, by which he annulled the whole charter, as unjust in itself, and derogatory to the dignity of the Apostolic See. He prohibited the barons from exacting the observance of it, and the king from paying any regard to it; and pronounced a general sentence of excommunication against every one who should persevere in maintaining such iniquitous proceedings.

As the foreign forces arrived with this bull, the king, under the sanction of the pope's decree, threw off the mask. The barons, being taken by surprise, the king was master of the field; and marching through the whole extent of England, from Dover to Berwick, laid waste the provinces on each side.

The barons, reduced to this extremity, employed a remedy no less desperate. They applied to the court of France, and offered to acknowledge Louis, the eldest son of Philip, as their sovereign, provided he would protect them from the violence of the tyrant. The prospect of such a prize, rendered Philip regardless of the menaces of the pope of Rome, which threatened him with excommunication, if he attacked a prince under the protection of the Holy See.

Louis entered England with a numerous army; and John's foreign troops being mostly levied in Flanders and other provinces of France, refused to serve against the heir of that monarchy. Many noblemen deserted John's party. His castles

What did he do? What did the pope do? What did he prohibit? When the foreign forces arrived, what did the king do? What did the barons do in their extremity? What is said of Philip? Who entered England? What is said of John's foreign troops? What of the noblemen?

fell into the hands of the enemy, and Dover was the only place that resisted the progress of Louis.

King John was assembling an army with the intention of fighting one great battle for his crown; but passing from Lyme to Lincolnshire, his road lay along the sea-shore, which was overflowed at high water, and not choosing the proper time for his journey, he lost in the inundation, all his carriages, treasure, baggage, and regalia. His grief for this, and his other vexations, threw him into a fever of which he died October 18th, A. D. 1216, in the fifty-first year of his age, and eighteenth of his reign.

The monks, in giving the character of this prince, have blackened it to a great degree; but these writers should be read with caution whenever they give the characters of princes who have had any contest with the pope. However, judging from his actions, all must allow that he was a bad king. It is hard to say whether his conduct to his father, his brother, his nephew, or his subjects, was most culpable. By his misconduct, he lost his provinces in France; subjected his kingdom to a shameful vassalage under the see of Rome; and died when in danger of being totally expelled by a foreign power, and of either ending his life in prison, or in seeking shelter as a fugitive from the pursuit of his enemies.

He left, by his wife Isabella, two sons; Henry, his successor, and Richard; the eldest of whom was only nine years old, and the other seven.

King John was the first king of England, who wrote in the plural number; using *we* for *I*; a style which his successors have always copied.

John, to raise money, sold to the city of London, a charter,

What was John preparing to do? Give an account of his march. When, and of what did he die? His age? Length of his reign? What have the monks done? When should we read their accounts with caution? What must we allow? What of his conduct? What were the results of his misconduct? How many sons did he leave? Their ages?

securing to the citizens the right of choosing their own mayor; an important feature in the progress of free institutions.

(1216)

HENRY III.

(1272)

Henry, the eldest son of King John, was in his tenth year, when his father died.

Soon after John's death, the earl of Pembroke convened the lords, and presenting young Henry to them, said, "behold your king;" and then making a pathetic speech to them, which was applauded by the whole assembly, they unanimously cried out, "Henry shall be our king." He was accordingly crowned on the 28th of October.

He then did homage to the holy see, as the assistance of the pope was of great importance to him at this time.

After the coronation, the lords chose the earl of Pembroke guardian to the young king, and regent of the kingdom. Pembroke forthwith sent letters to all the barons and corporations, informing them of Henry's accession, and promising rewards to all who would return to duty. This caused many of the confederate barons to make peace with the new king; toward which, the *excommunication* of Prince Louis, which was published every Sunday, and renewed by the league, contributed not a little. Toward Christmas, a truce was agreed upon, during the holidays, which was prolonged to Easter. And, during the absence of Louis in France, many of the barons left his party and made peace with the king.

When the truce had expired, the regent sent the earl of Chester to besiege Mount Sorrel; but a detachment from Louis' army, under the earl of Perche, obliged him to raise the siege; and, flushed with success, the earl went to besiege Lincoln Castle. This Castle, being of great importance, the regent drew all his forces together, and marched to its relief. A battle ensued, in

How was Henry III. descended? His age when his father died? Manner of his accession? Who was chosen guardian? What did he do? effect of this? What is said of a truce with France? What followed the truce?

which the French army was totally routed, and the earl of Perche slain.

Louis, hearing of the defeat at Lincoln, retired to London, and sent to Philip, his father, for succor. Philip, to keep on good terms with the pope, acted covertly in the affair, and so ordered it, that Blanche, Louis's consort, raised a body of troops, with ships to transport them to England. As they were going over, they were attacked by the fleet of the Cinque Ports, which took and destroyed the greatest part of the French fleet.

Louis now sued for peace ; and a treaty was concluded on the 11th of September, whereby it was agreed, that all who had sided with him, should be restored to whatever rights and privileges they enjoyed before the troubles ; and Louis renounced all pretensions to England. Soon after, Louis set sail for France, leaving Henry in full possession of the kingdom.

Affairs being thus happily settled, the regent, to give further satisfaction to the minds of the people, sent positive orders to all the sheriffs, to see the two charters of King John, punctually observed.

But whilst this great man was thus wisely pursuing the interests of his sovereign, and good of the people, he was taken sick and died in the year 1219.

The Bishop of Winchester was now made regent, and Hubert de Burgh was made chief justiciary.

In 1221 the new building at Westminster Abbey was begun, King Henry, himself, laying the first stone. The same year, Joanna, the king's sister, married Alexander II. of Scotland ; and Hubert de Burgh married Alexander's eldest sister.

A difficulty soon arose between the new ministers ; And Hubert gained an ascendancy with his master, over Winchester,

Give an account of a battle and its results. What did Louis do ? Explain Philip's conduct. What did Blanche do ? What happened to the fleet ? Give an account of a treaty and its effects. What did the regent next do ? When did the regent die ? Who was next made regent ? What building was begun in 1221 ? What marriages took place about this time ? What difficulty soon arose ? the consequence.

and so insinuated himself into the royal favor, that he rose to an exorbitant degree of power, which he exercised in a most illegal and arbitrary manner. He first contrived, by an artifice, to get Winchester removed, as we shall soon see.

Louis VIII, king of France, who succeeded his father Philip, broke the peace with England, in 1224. His pretense was, that Henry, as duke of Guienne, had not been present at his coronation; but in reality, it was because he thought the minority of that prince afforded a proper opportunity for him to expel the English entirely from France. The king raised an army and sent it into Guienne, under command of his brother, Prince Richard; but we do not find that he made any great progress there.

In 1226, the parliament declared the king of age. Henry was wholly governed by Hubert de Burgh, who, representing to him, that if he kept the bishop of Winchester near him, he would still be looked upon as under a regent, that the prelate was dismissed and sent to his diocese.

And now, Hubert, being without a rival, and having perfect sway over his master, began to set himself above the laws, making the king believe that his only design was to render him absolute, to which Henry, a weak and capricious prince, was of himself, but too much inclined.

What most contributed towards alienating the people's affections from their sovereign was his annulling the two charters of the king, his father, which he had solemnly sworn to observe.

The barons were so displeased with this, that they entered into a confederacy with Prince Richard, whom the king, his brother had offended, and took up arms to compel the king to restore the charter. But Hubert brought about a reconcilia-

How did he exercise his power? How was the peace broken between England and France? What followed? What did the king do? The result? What did Hubert do? The consequence? Hubert's next conduct? What contributed to alienate the king from his subjects? The effect upon the barons? What did they do? What was brought about? How?

tion between the king and his brother, and the confederacy was broken off.

Henry, about this time, neglected a favorable opportunity of retrieving the affairs of England in France. Louis IX. succeeding his father, Louis VIII., under the regency of Blanche, his mother, the French barons entered into a league against her. The Normans sided with them, and sent Henry word that they would unanimously receive him, and put him in possession of that province. The Poitevins and Gascons, also pressed him to seize the present juncture—to drive the French out of the places they held in those provinces. But 'twas all to no purpose; he sent them answer that he would wait for a more convenient opportunity.

When this advantage was at an end, by matters being accommodated between the French lords and the queen-regent, Henry very suddenly resolved upon recovering, by arms, the provinces the English had lost. He assembled a gallant army at Portsmouth, but not having ships enough to transport them, the design came to nothing.

The king having spent the winter in extorting large sums of money from his subjects, went over to France in the spring, with his army. But upon the approach of the queen-regent's army, he shamefully returned to England.

In 1232, the king demanded a subsidy of the parliament, for the payment of the debts contracted on account of this expedition; but had the mortification to be refused, as so ill a use had been made of the money that had been granted him.

Things were so badly managed, both at home and abroad, that the enemies of Hubert de Burgh did not cease to meditate his downfall. In order to this, they prevailed on the king to re-admit the bishop of Winchester, Hubert's mortal enemy, to

What did Henry now neglect? How did opportunity occur. What assistance was proffered Henry? How did he act? What did Henry afterwards resolve upon? What did he do? The result? How did Henry spend the winter? What do in the spring? What did Henry demand of parliament? The result? How was Hubert de Burgh's downfall effected?

his presence and councils. The consequence was, Hubert was turned out of his office of chief justiciary, and Seagraves, a confidant of the bishop, was put in his stead.

The bishop was now prime minister, and soon acquired an exorbitant power over the king, which he made a worse use of than even Hubert de Burgh himself. He did all he could to alienate the king's affections from his subjects, representing the barons as too powerful, turbulent and aspiring; and that they wanted to make themselves independent; and therefore, the only way to repress their insolence, was to send for a number of foreigners, and give them the posts and places which the barons held. This pernicious advice, being agreeable to the arbitrary disposition of the king, in a short time a great number of Gascons and Poitevins arrived, who were promoted to the chief posts in the government, and had the wardship of the young nobility committed to them.

The barons were exceedingly exasperated at these proceedings, and Richard, earl of Pembroke, brother to the late earl, took the liberty to remonstrate to the king in strong terms, against them. But the bishop gave him a haughty and insolent answer, telling him, among other things, that if the foreigners already in the kingdom, were not enough to reduce the king's rebellious subjects to obedience, more should be sent over. The Barons from this time, began to withdraw from court, and to enter into a league, in order to put a stop to these arbitrary and despotic measures. Not long after, the king having called a parliament, the barons, instead of meeting according to the summons, sent deputies to tell him that, if he did not remove the bishop of Winchester, and the Poitevins, they were resolved to set another prince

Who was now prime minister? How did he exercise his power? How did he manage to alienate the king's affections from his subjects? What did he advise? How did this advice affect the king? The consequence? The effect upon the barons? What did they do? How did the bishop answer them? From this time what did the barons do? What did the barons do when summoned to parliament?

upon the throne, who should govern according to law. The minister then undertook to force the barons to submission; but finding this impracticable he attempted, and effected his purpose by treachery. As the council consisted of none but his creatures, he sent an order to the governors of Ireland to plunder the estates of the earl of Pembroke, the leader of the disaffected party, on purpose to draw him over thither. The Irish governors set about executing the order; they levied an army and ravaged the earl's lands, which drew him over to Ireland, and being there, he was basely betrayed by some pretended friends, who engaged him in battle, in which he was killed by a stab in the back with a dagger.

The archbishop of Canterbury made such representations to the king, of the ill consequences of his keeping so odious a minister near him, that his eyes were at last opened, and the minister was disgraced and sent to his diocese, and Rivaulx, Seagrave, and all the rest of his creatures, turned out.

In 1236, King Henry married Eleanor, second daughter of Raymond, earl of Provence. This marriage proved unhappy to the nation. For though Henry had so lately experienced the ill effects of his unbounded favors to foreigners, yet now he became more impolitic than ever in this respect, giving himself wholly up to the direction of the queen's relations and other foreigners, their adherents, loading them with gifts, pensions, places and offices, to the great prejudice and oppression of his English subjects, and impoverishment of the realm; which, together with the grievances occasioned by this measure, was the source of perpetual disputes and misunderstandings between the king and his parliaments for nearly thirty years, and ended at last in a civil war, called the *baron's war*.

What did the minister attempt? The consequence? How did he finally succeed in his purpose? How was Pembroke betrayed? How murdered? What did the archbishop of Canterbury represent to the king? The consequence? When and whom did Henry marry? The consequence of this marriage? What did this cause? How did it end?

We can not enter into a detail of all the particulars during this long and confused period, nor indeed would it signify much to do so. Let it suffice, therefore, to take notice of some of the principal events.

Soon after the king's marriage, William of Provence, the queen's uncle, became prime minister, and managed everything as he pleased; at which the English barons and the parliament made serious complaints. The king, to quiet them, made a show of redressing some grievances, but still adhered to his favorite.

When Henry promised to redress grievances, it was all a pretense to bring about his own ends and obtain money from the parliament; which having succeeded in, he always returned to his old courses, and governed as bad or worse than ever.

And now, as though he was disposed to affront his subjects in the highest degree, he recalled to court the two hated ministers, Seagrave and Rivaulx, and again made them his favorites and confidants.

In 1237, the king, in order to obtain another subsidy from his parliament, pretended to condemn his former conduct, and to be no longer guided by foreigners. But this did not prevail on the barons, who too well knew the king's insincerity and dissimulation. However, having promised to restore the charters obtained in the last reign, and having added to his council some lords, who were acceptable to the barons, the parliament granted the subsidy. And yet the money was no sooner raised, than the king seized it, and made the same bad use of it as ever.

In 1239, the queen was delivered of a prince, who was named Edward, and succeeding his father, proved a great and famous king.

Who now became prime minister? Effect upon the barons? Henry's conduct? What did Henry next do? What did Henry do in 1237? His object? What did parliament grant? The conditions? How did Henry use the money? When was Prince Edward born? What is said of him?

When the parliament, who had been so often deceived by the king, refused to grant him any subsidies, he raised money from the people by loans and other illegal methods.

Whilst the king was thus oppressing the rest of his subjects, the clergy were no less exposed to the oppressions of the pope. They both went hand in hand, in draining and ruining the nation.

In 1241, Henry got Boniface, brother of the queen, elected archbishop of Canterbury; thus placing a young man, and a foreigner, at the head of the English church.

Though France was in possession of Poictou, Henry invested his brother Richard with that earldom. This occasioned a war between the two crowns, in which Henry came off with as little reputation as usual.

In 1245, the queen was delivered of another son, who was named Edmund.

The court of Rome continuing its exactions, the parliament, in 1246, in letters signed by the king, the bishops and the barons, laid before the pope a list of their grievances, demanding satisfaction therein. But instead of redressing these grievances, the pope took occasion to oppress the clergy more than ever, and would have laid new impositions upon them if the king had not now a little exerted himself.

In 1248, the king demanded a new subsidy from his parliament; but instead of complying with his will, they upbraided him with his excessive bounty to foreigners, to the prejudice of his native subjects. Whereupon he prorogued them, and at the next meeting he addressed them in very rough and haughty language. But this only provoking them the more, the barons told him that since he did not intend to reform what was amiss,

What means did Henry now use to raise money? What did the pope do? Who was elected archbishop of Canterbury? What occasioned a war with France? When was Edmund born? What was laid before the pope? The effect? What did Henry demand in 1248? What did parliament do? What did the king next do? How did he address the next parliament? The effect upon the barons? What did they say?

they were not so mad as to impoverish themselves for the sake of foreigners.

The kingdom of Sicily being in dispute between the pope and Conradin, son of the Emperor Conrad, and the former not being able to carry on the war without the assistance of some other power, made an offer of the crown of Sicily to Henry, for his second son, Edmund, in case he would assist in the conquest of that kingdom. Henry greedily accepted this imaginary present, and by this means became the bubble and tool of the pope. To raise money to carry on this war, the court of Rome used the most unjust and scandalous means to extort immense sums from the clergy; whilst Henry was equally oppressive in exacting it from his other subjects. This raised a universal discontent in the nation.

It was now that the barons began to exert themselves, and to take measures against the king. In a parliament held at Oxford, in 1258, the confederacy was so strong against the king that they compelled him in effect to lay down the sovereign authority, and to lodge it with twenty-four commissioners, twelve to be chosen by the king, and twelve by the barons. Simon de Montfort, earl of Leicester, was chosen their president, and drew up the articles of agreement, which were approved by the parliament, called "the statutes, provisions or expedients of Oxford;" to which the king was obliged to give his assent.

But the king could not well brook this restraint, and soon sought means to free himself from the yoke of the barons. At last having gained to his side Prince Richard, his brother, and his son, Prince Edward, Henry was more emboldened than ever to oppose the barons, who were firmly resolved to stand by what had been agreed upon in the parliament at Oxford.

What offer was now made to Henry? By whom? The consequence? How did the court of Rome raise money? Henry? The consequence? What did the barons next do? What did they compel Henry to do? Who was chosen president? What statute was passed? What did the king next do?

The war accordingly broke out between the parties, in 1263, the barons having chosen the earl of Leicester for their general. They soon took several strong places, and the city of London declared in their favor. Nevertheless the war remained doubtful, each side gaining advantages over the other, till the famous battle of Lewes, which was fought on the 14th of May, 1264, in which the royal army was routed. King Henry himself, and his brother, the king of the Romans, were taken prisoners; and Prince Edward, and Henry, son to the king of the Romans, were forced to surrender themselves prisoners to the barons.

The barons now drew up a new plan of government, which was confirmed by the parliament, which met on the 22d day of June; previously, they made the king sign commissions, appointing in each county certain magistrates, called *conservators*, who were ordered to send up four *knights* of each county, chosen by their respective counties, to sit in the parliament as *representatives* of their several *shires*. From this many date the original of the *Commons* sitting in parliament.

Thus things continued for about a year, whilst the earl of Leicester continued at the head of the government, and, in effect, exercised the supreme authority in the name of the king. Several insurrections were formed against him, which he had the good fortune to put down.

The earl of Gloucester, now jealous of Leicester's aspiring to the crown, commenced raising an army to march against him. The prince, not long after, had the good fortune to make his escape, and at once putting himself at the head of Gloucester's troops, attacked the earl of Leicester, and totally routed him, near *Evesham*, after a bloody fight, on August 4th, 1265, the earl himself and his son Henry being slain on the spot. The

Give an account of the war. What famous battle was fought? When? The result? What did the barons next do? What did they compel the king to do? What may we date from this? What authority did Leicester now exercise? Give an account of some insurrections? What famous battle was fought? When? The result?

prince then set the king, his father, at liberty, who proceeded at once to take vengeance on his enemies.

There were, after this, several insurrections, which need not be particularly mentioned, as they were soon quelled.

The tranquillity of the kingdom being restored, Prince Edward undertook a voyage to the Holy Land ; but being disappointed in the reinforcements he expected to receive, he could do but little.

Finding that he could make no great progress in Palestine, he concluded a truce with the sultan, and set sail for England in 1272.

His father did not live to see him return. King Henry died on the 16th of November, 1272, after a reign of fifty-six years.

His inconstant, fickle temper, his narrow genius, his arbitrary notions, his greediness of money, and lavishly squandering it upon his favorites, his being a constant slave and tool to the court of Rome, and his want of courage, appear during his long confused and distracted reign.

But it must be observed, that to the struggles in this reign the English in a great measure owe the liberties and privileges they enjoy at this day.

He had nine children, but only two sons, Edward and Edmund, and two daughters, Margaret and Beatrix, survived him.

Matthew Paris, one of the most celebrated historians of England, flourished in this reign.

Trial by *fire* and *water ordeal*, was by this king's command laid aside by the judges, and soon after grew quite out of use.

(1272)

EDWARD I.

(1307)

This prince, the eldest son of Henry III., was on his return

What did Prince Edward now do? The result? When did he set sail for England? When did Henry die? How long did he reign? What was his character? To what are the people of England indebted for their liberties and privileges? What is said of his family? What celebrated historian flourished in this reign? What is said of trial by *fire* and *water ordeal*? When did Edward I. ascend the throne? Where was he when his father died?

from the Holy Land when his father died. The nation in general had so good an opinion of him, that it would have been dangerous to have attempted anything to his prejudice. The barons unanimously swore fealty to him, and wrote him a very friendly letter, inviting him to come home and take possession of the throne. Edward arrived in England, and was crowned in August, 1274.

The first thing he did, after his coronation, was to send commissioners into all the counties to inquire into the *feifs* held of the crown, and to examine into and punish the misdemeanors of such magistrates as had abused their authority in oppressing the people.

The parliament, which sat in 1275, enacted some good laws for securing the liberties of the people, and the privileges of the clergy, which were called "The Statutes of Westminster."

The Welsh had made some struggles to throw off the English yoke, and Prince Lewellyn had much countenanced and encouraged the late malcontents in England. Edward therefore determined to disable him from doing any more mischief. War was soon declared by Edward, who marched a large army into Wales, and drove the Welsh to Mount Snowdon, their usual retreat when pursued by the English. His fleet, at the same time, attacked and took the island of Anglesea; upon which Lewellyn sued for peace, and obtained it, though upon very hard terms.

The coin having much suffered by clipping and adulterating, and the Jews being suspected of being concerned in it, the king caused all that were in the nation to be seized in one day; and 280 of them being convicted, received sentence of death, and were executed.

What did the nation think of him? What did the barons do? When did he arrive in England? When crowned? His first business? What did parliament do in 1275? What the conduct and condition of the Welsh? What did Edward do? The result? What is said of the coin? Of the Jews?

In 1279 the parliament passed a statute forbidding all persons to dispose of their estates to *societies which never die*, without the king's consent. This was called "*The Statute of Mortmain*," and was occasioned by the prevailing practice of persons alienating their lands to the church, inasmuch that if a stop had not been put to it, there was danger that all the lands in England would, in time, come to be in the hands of the *clergy* and *monasteries*.

In 1280, the *Statute of Quo Warranto* was passed, occasioned by many persons, during the late troubles, appropriating to themselves lands to which they had no right. It required all those who were possessed of such contested estates, to show how they came by them, and produce their titles before the judges. As many who held lands of the crown must have lost their titles, though their possession was of long standing, the king took advantage of this misfortune, and issued a proclamation for all who held lands of the crown, to lay their title before the judges. The earl of Warrenne appearing, and being required to show his title, whereby he held his lands, he drew an old rusty sword from its scabbard, and said: "*'Twas by this my ancestors gained their estate, and by this I will keep it as long as I live.*" This brave answer opened the king's eyes, and, thinking better of the matter, put a stop to the grievance.

Lewellyn having revolted, at the instigation of his brother David, committed great ravages on the borders, and surprised and defeated the king's generals that were sent against him.

But Edward marching with a numerous army into Wales, totally routed Lewellyn's forces in a great battle, in which Lewellyn himself was slain. David, his brother, the last of his race, soon after fell into the hands of the English, and was put to death as a traitor.

What statute was passed in 1279? What was the occasion of it? What statute in 1280? The occasion of it? The effect? What is said of the earl of Warrenne? The effect upon the king? Lewellyn's conduct? What did Edward do?

After the death of Lewellyn, Edward became master of the whole country, and Wales was united to the crown of England, in the year 1283.

The Welsh were uneasy without a prince of their own, and Edward told them that he would give them a prince born among them, who could not speak a word of English ; and then nominated to them his son, just born at Cærnarvon. From that time the king's eldest son has always been Prince of Wales.

In 1287, Edward, leaving the regency to the earl of Pembroke, went over to France, where he staid about three years. On his return to England, he set about reforming abuses in the administration of justice, and punished several judges who were found guilty of taking bribes. The next year the Jews were all banished the kingdom.

The chief affair of this reign was the conquest of Scotland. A dispute having arisen as to the succession between John Baliol and Robert Bruce, the two parties chose the king of England arbitrator of their differences. Edward having heard the pretensions of the claimants, decided in favor of Baliol, and declared him king of Scotland, upon which he swore fealty and did homage to King Edward, whose conduct, the Scots say, was a continued series of artifice, corruption and violence.

Edward carried his prerogative of the sovereignty of Scotland to a great height ; and Baliol, finding himself treated rather as a slave than as a dependent, began to concert measures for throwing off the English yoke. A favorable opportunity presented, as a war had broken out between France and England. He therefore formed an alliance with Philip, the French king, and sent a letter to King Edward, renouncing the homage he

What followed the death of Lewellyn? When? What did the Welsh wish? What did Edward tell them? The title of the king's eldest son? What did Edward in 1287? What on his return? What happened the next year? What the most important affair of this reign? What of the dispute, and how settled? The consequence? What favorable opportunity presented? What alliance did Baliol form?

had paid him, who at once marched an army into Scotland, resolving upon the entire conquest of the kingdom.

Having first gained Robert Bruce to his side, by promising him the crown, in case he would declare against Baliol, he advanced to meet Baliol, when a terrible battle was fought near Dunbar, in which the Scots were defeated with great loss. Thence pursuing his conquests, in a short time he took Roxborough, Edinburgh, Sterling, Perth, and many other important places, and in effect became master of all Scotland. This was in 1296. The public records were burnt, by Edward's orders, who now returned to England, carrying with him the crown and sceptre of Scotland, and the famous stone of *Scone*, on which the inauguration of their kings was performed.*

Whilst Edward was in Flanders, on account of the French war, he was alarmed with the news of the revolt of the Scots, under the conduct of the brave William Wallace. He immediately returned to England, and putting himself at the head of a numerous army, marched into Scotland and met the enemy at Falkirk, where in a bloody battle he gave them a total overthrow, and, following up his advantage, he soon retook all the strong holds, with as much ease as he had lost them. Having thus, as we may say, conquered Scotland a second time, he returned to England. This was in 1298.

In the meantime, the Scotch lords becoming jealous of Wallace, he laid down the regency, and Comyn was chosen in his room.

The next year another vigorous attempt was made to throw

What did Edward do? How did he proceed? What battle was fought? When? The consequence? What took place when Edward was in Flanders? What did Edward do? What is said of a battle and its consequences? When was this? What is said of William Wallace? What took place the next year?

*In Scone was a famous stone, on which the Scottish kings were seated during the ceremony of coronation. This stone was considered sacred, and the popular belief was, that, wherever it was placed, the Scottish nation would govern; and it is a remarkable coincidence that the Scottish family of Stuart, did afterward reign in England.

off the English yoke. Edward, enraged at this, entered Scotland a *third* time, in 1300, and entirely routed the Scotch army, which consisted of ill-armed and undisciplined militia. Desirous as Edward was to complete the conquest, he durst not refuse the king of France a truce, which he demanded in behalf of the Scots, whilst the treaty for the restitution of Guienne was depending. When the truce was near expiring, Edward sent Seagrave into Scotland to renew the war. He divided his army into three bodies, but the Scots falling upon them, routed them all in one day.

Peace being concluded between France and England, in 1303, by which Guienne was restored to Edward, he found himself at liberty to act as he pleased against the Scots. And he entered Scotland a *fourth time*, with so powerful an army that he met with no resistance. He penetrated to the utmost bounds of the island, laying waste the country on all sides.

Sterling castle held out all the winter, and did not capitulate till July following. The taking of this castle finished Edward's fourth expedition and third conquest of Scotland.

The brave Wallace was betrayed into his hands, and he caused him to be executed as a traitor, and ordered his four quarters to be hung up in four chief towns in the kingdom.

The Scots, though often subdued, could not sit easy under the yoke. Robert Bruce, to whom Edward had not performed his promise of making him king, entered into a confederacy with Comyn to restore the liberty of their country. Comyn proving false, Bruce stabbed him with his own hands, and then declared himself. Such numbers flocked to him that he went to Sconce and was there crowned. After which the people in general came over to his side. But Edward sending the earl of Pembroke with an army against him he was twice defeated,

What did Edward do? What of a truce with France? Whom did Edward send to Scotland? The result? Edward's next move? Give an account of Edward's fourth expedition into Scotland? What became of Wallace? What is said of Robert Bruce? Of Comyn? What was Edward's next course in regard to Scotland?

and forced to retire to one of the Hebrides, and there wait for a more favorable conjuncture. Edward afterwards arriving in Scotland with a numerous army, found the work already done to his hands, when cruelly punishing some of the friends and adherents of Bruce, he returned to England. Upon his return he banished Gaveston, as a corrupter of the young Prince Edward, and made the prince swear never to recall him.

Bruce now came out of his retirement, and having drawn together an army, attacked the earl of Pembroke, whom the king had left general in Scotland, and obtained a signal victory, taking the earl himself prisoner; after which he gained several other advantages, and took many strong places.

Edward now resolved to destroy the Scots without mercy, and made vast preparations to put his design into execution. When on his way with one of the finest armies England had ever seen, he was seized with a distemper which soon put an end to his life.

He died in Cumberland, on the 7th of July, 1307, aged sixty-eight years, after a reign of nearly thirty-five years. When he was near his end, he earnestly pressed his son to prosecute the war with Scotland, and advised him to carry his bones at the head of his army, assuring him "the rebels could never stand the sight of them."

He was a prince of solid judgment, and great penetration, was prudent, valiant, just, temperate and chaste, and had the love and esteem of his subjects. The constitution of parliament, such as it is at this day, was so well established in his reign, that an additional law was made to the Great Charter, "that no tax should be levied upon the people, without the consent of the commons."

Give an account of the conduct of Bruce. What did Edward now resolve upon? Give an account of the expedition. Of Edward's death. His age and length of his reign? What did he enjoin upon his son Edward? What advice? His character? What is said of the constitution of Parliament? What law was passed?

Though he acquired great military glory in the Scotch war, yet his whole behavior in relation to that kingdom is the great blemish upon his character.

Of four sons and nine daughters by Eleanor, Edward, his successor, was the only one of the sons who survived him.

(1307)

EDWARD II.

(1327)

Edward II. succeeded his father, Edward I., in 1307, at the age of twenty-two years.

No prince ever ascended the throne under more favorable circumstances; and no prince ever made a worse use of them. He had neither courage, judgment or foresight, and was wholly governed by his unreasonable passions; in short, he was destitute of all those qualities which are necessary to form a great man or a good prince.

No sooner was his father dead than he recalled Gaveston, a native of Gascony, and the debaucher of his youth, contrary to his oath made to his father; and was so unreasonably fond of heaping favors upon him, that he immediately became the richest and most powerful lord in the kingdom. And never did a minister make a more insolent use of his power.

Edward married Isabella, of France, daughter of *Philip the Fair*. He went over to Boulogne to solemnize the nuptials, leaving the odious Gaveston guardian of the realm, with unlimited authority. This so exasperated the barons that they entered into a league to prevent his coronation, on his return. He being in no condition to oppose them, promised in the next parliament to grant them all that they could reasonably desire, which gave present satisfaction, and the coronation was performed, Feb. 24th, 1308.

What is said of Edward's conduct in regard to Scotland? His family? When and at what age did Edward II. ascend the throne? Under what circumstances? What is said of Edward II. What was his first act? What is said of Gaveston? Give an account of Edward's marriage. Whom did he leave as guardian of the realm? What was the effect of this upon the barons? What did they do? What did the king promise? When crowned?

The coronation oath was no sooner taken than broken. Gaveston was continued in power, had the whole administration in his hands, and governed with an absolute sway. This increased the hatred of the lords against him, and they entered into a league with the parliament, who so peremptorily demanded Gaveston's banishment that the king dared not oppose it. He was soon recalled and behaved as insolently as ever. By the vigorous measures of the barons, the king was compelled to place the regulation of the government in the hands of one-and-twenty lords, who banished Gaveston a second time; but he was soon again recalled as before. And now the earl of Lancaster, grandson to Henry III., by his son Edmund, entered into a confederacy with the earls of Warwick, Pembroke, Arundel, Hereford, Warrenne, the archbishop of York, and many other bishops and barons, who unanimously resolved to take up arms, and chose the earl of Lancaster their general. They then dispersed themselves into several parts of the kingdom to raise forces, and with the utmost expedition drew together a large body of troops.

In the meantime, Edward, perfectly unconcerned, was taking his diversions at York with his favorite. The confederates marched directly for that place, but upon notice of their approach, the king, with Gaveston, retired to Newcastle, and not thinking himself safe there, left it in haste and shut himself up, with Gaveston, in Scarborough castle; from whence he went to Warwickshire, to raise troops, but it was now too late. The barons laid siege to Scarborough castle, and seized Gaveston, who was after a hasty trial beheaded. The king was pursued to London, but thinking himself not safe, went thence to Canterbury.

How did he regard his oaths? What is said of the conduct of Gaveston? The effect upon the lords? What did they do? What was the king compelled to do? Who now joined the confederacy? What did they resolve? Whom chose for general? How did Edward employ himself at this time? Give an account of the seizure and death of Gaveston. Of the conduct of the king.

Shortly after, an accommodation was effected by means of the pope's nuncio, the earl of Evreux, and the earl of Gloucester; and peace was restored in 1313. In this year the queen was delivered of a son, who was named Edward.

It is necessary to take here a brief review of the affairs of Scotland.

King Robert Bruce had brought all his subjects to unite in throwing off the English yoke, and happily succeeded in his designs. Immediately after the death of Edward I., Edward II. marched as far as Dumfries, and struck terror into the whole nation. But their hopes were revived, when leaving his army under the command of John Cummin, a Scotch lord, he returned suddenly to England to meet Gaveston, and marry the princess Isabella. The English under Cummin were twice defeated by King Robert and his brother Edward, in the county of Galaway. Upon this, Edward marched a large army into Scotland, in 1308, but was forced to return for want of subsistence. Bruce now twice entered England, and returned with great booty. He recovered several strong places from the English, and the Isle of Man submitted to him.

In the mean time King Edward, at the head of 100,000 men, entered Scotland and advanced within view of Stirling, where Robert waited his coming, at the head of 30,000 men. On 25th June, 1314, was fought the ever-memorable battle of *Bannockburn*, in which, notwithstanding the great inequality of numbers, the English army was totally routed, with a most dreadful slaughter. Edward hastily retreated to England, with the remains of his shattered army, and Scotland enjoyed a peace for several years. This peace, however, was only on the side of the Scots, who, after the victory of Bannockburn, had no enemy to oppose them. Bruce continued to make incursions into

How were matters accommodated? What was the condition of affairs in Scotland? And of Edward's conduct? Give an account of Edward's expedition into Scotland. Of the movements of Bruce. Of the battle of Bannockburn. The consequence. Movements of the Scots

England, and ravaged the borders in a terrible manner. Edward now entreated the pope to interpose his authority to procure him a peace. The pope complied, and sent his legates to publish a truce for two years, till a plan of peace could be settled. Edward readily accepted it. Bruce paid no regard to it, but besieged and took Berwick. After this the two years' truce was agreed upon.

About four years after, in 1323, King Edward having got the better of his barons, marched his army into Scotland, but for want of provisions, was forced once more to retreat. Robert pursued and overtook Edward at Blackmore, captured his baggage, and he himself narrowly escaped being taken prisoner. The English army being dispersed, Robert marched on, ravaged the country to the very walls of York, and returned laden with spoils. Having thus humbled King Edward, he at last agreed to a truce for thirteen years.

After Gaveston's death, and the accommodation between the king and his barons, though the difference was outwardly made up, mutual hatred still remained, and increased every day. The barons now presented a petition, containing a long list of grievances, and demanded a speedy redress; which the king evading, they were resolved to take arms, and were just upon the point of coming to a rupture, when matters were again made up by means of the pope's nuncio, in 1318. But things did not long remain in this situation. The lords found means to introduce to court a young gentleman, named Hugh Spencer, that he might be a spy upon the king, and inform them of what passed at court. But Spencer soon so insinuated himself into the king's affections, that from a spy, he became his confidant, and possessed the place of Gaveston in his heart.

What did Edward now do? The pope? How did Bruce regard this? Give an account of Edward's next expedition into Scotland. What of a truce? What was the feeling of the barons towards the king after Gaveston's death? What did they present? What demand? How were matters again settled?

Spencer made as bad a use of his power as ever Gaveston had done. And having got his father made earl of Winchester, these two ministers had now the whole management of affairs in their hands, and did every thing that their pride, avarice, ambition or revenge could suggest. This caused great murmuring and discontent in the nation, and the earl of Lancaster, with ease found a strong party against the favorites.

The barons levied troops with great expedition, and Roger Mortimer* was sent to plunder the lands of the Spencers. The barons being now in a condition to stand their ground, so vigorously petitioned for the removal of the Spencers, that the king durst not oppose their demands. And the parliament passed an act for their banishment, which was accordingly put in execution. But matters soon took another turn, by means of the queen, who, having received some affront from the governor of Leeds, which belonged to one of the associated barons, she so spurred on the king to revenge against their whole body, that he raised an army, besieged and took the castle of Leeds, and hanged the governor; and then turned his arms against the whole body of the confederates. He took Warwick Castle, and some others, then thinking himself strong enough to stand against all his opposers, he recalled the two Spencers, who ceased not to stir him up to further revenge. Some of the confederate barons were put to death, some fled the kingdom, and others were imprisoned; among whom was Mortimer, whom the Spencers confined in the tower. The earl of Lancaster, with what troops he could raise, retired into the north, in order

Give an account of Spencer's introduction to the king, and the consequence. What was the character and conduct of Spencer? The effect? What did the barons do? On what errand was Mortimer sent? What did the barons next do? What act was passed? What soon gave a turn to matters? What was the conduct of the queen? The consequence? What did the king do? What was done with the confederates? What became of the earl of Lancaster?

* This Roger Mortimer was the father of Edmund Mortimer, who married Philippa, the daughter of Lionel, duke of Clarence, and grand-daughter of Edward III.

to join the Scots; but being pursued, was taken and beheaded. Nine lords of his party were executed at York, and others in other parts of the kingdom; and never had so much English blood been spilt on the scaffold since the Norman conquest.

But the revenge of the Spencers was not fully satisfied, whilst the bishops of Lincoln and Hereford and Roger Mortimer were still alive. They endeavored to get the two former condemned in the king's court; but the clergy opposing it, as a violation of their rights, the judges were afraid to pronounce the sentence. Mortimer was twice condemned to die, and twice pardoned, by means of a powerful intercession with the king. The Spencers knew it was the queen who hindered them from taking a full revenge upon Mortimer. All agree that she was in love with him, and her scandalous familiarity with him afterwards made it too plainly appear. The Spencers, therefore, took all opportunities to mortify her, insomuch that she complained to her brother Charles, king of France, and was fully bent upon seeking revenge in her turn, though to the ruin of the king, her husband.

An opportunity soon offered, by some disputes between Charles, of France, and Edward, about Guienne. Ambassadors were first dispatched to France to bring matters to an accommodation. But it being signified to Edward, that if the queen went over, she would soon bring his brother to hearken to reasonable terms, she was accordingly desired to go over to France, from which she never returned till she went with an armed force.

Queen Isabella's designs were not discovered for some time. Her first desiré was to have the young prince, her son, over with her. To effect this, and to cover her real intentions, she negotiated a treaty with the king, her brother, one article of

How did the Spencers wish to satisfy their revenge? The result of their efforts? Who protected Mortimer? The queen's conduct in regard to him? What did the Spencers do? The queen? What opportunity offered? How was the affair managed? How did Isabella succeed?

which was, that King Edward should do homage in person, for Guienne, and he was actually making preparations to go over. The Spencers did not like this, fearing some commotions might be raised in his absence. However, an expedient was found out which freed them from this uneasiness, as they could not see the design of it. It was hinted to the king, that if he would give up to Edward, his son, Guienne and Ponthieu, Charles would accept of the homage of the young prince, and restore to him the places he was to deliver up by the late treaty. This was all that Isabella wanted, and the king saw his error when it was too late. He then sent letter after letter, commanding the queen to return with her son; but she always made some excuse, and was all the time carrying on a plot to dethrone the king, her husband. After the arrival of the prince, all the English who had taken refuge in France, or had been banished, came in to her; among whom was Roger Mortimer, who became her chief counsellor. To engage the earl of Hainault in her cause, she concluded a treaty of marriage between his daughter Philippa and Prince Edward, without the consent of the king, and having raised a body of troops, she embarked and landed in England on the 22d September, 1326, trusting more to her friends in the kingdom, than to the forces she took with her. Immediately upon her landing, she was joined by Henry of Lancaster, brother to the late earl, the Bishops of Hereford and Lincoln, and several other lords; and the enemies of the Spencers were so diligent in raising troops, that her army soon became very numerous, and gave terror to those who had a mind to serve the king. Being therefore deserted by all, he endeavored to retire into Ireland, but was driven back upon the coast of Wales, and concealed himself in the Abbey of Neath. The elder Spencer was taken in Bristol, and without any for-

What did the king do? The queen? Mortimer? What treaty of marriage did Isabella conclude? What did the queen next do? By whom was she joined? What was the condition and conduct of the king? What was the fate of the elder Spencer?

mality, was immediately hung up in his armor. The city of London declared for the queen; and the bishop of Exeter, who endeavored to keep it for the king, was beheaded.

Prince Edward was soon declared guardian of the realm. And search being made for the king, he was soon found, where he lay concealed, having with him only young Spencer, Chancellor Baldock, Simon de Reading, and a few domestics.

The king was conducted to Monmouth Castle, and the bishop of Hereford was sent to demand the Great Seal of him; which he delivered up for the queen and prince to make use of as they saw fit. This was his last act of authority. He was shortly afterwards conducted to Kenelworth.

The queen having got the Great Seal, called a parliament in the imprisoned king's name. But before it met, she caused Spencer to be hanged on a gibbet fifty feet high, and Simon de Reading on one ten feet lower. The parliament met in January, 1327, and unanimously resolved, "that the king should be deposed, and Edward, his son, should be made king." The substance of the charge exhibited against him was, that he had not governed according to the laws of the land; that he had made use of evil counsellors; and had rejected the advice of his faithful subjects; in short, that he was incapable of governing; and that he was found incorrigible, and without hopes of amendment.

Prince Edward was immediately proclaimed in Westminster Hall, by the name of Edward III. But the generous young prince vowing he would not accept the crown without his father's consent, it was thought necessary to send commissioners to oblige the king to resign it to his son. The commissioners

For whom did London declare? The fate of the bishop of Exeter? Who was declared guardian? How and under what circumstances was the king found? Where was he conducted? What was his last act of authority? Where afterwards conducted? What did the queen do? When did the parliament meet? What did they resolve? What was the charge against the king? Who was proclaimed? What was Prince Edward's reply? What was thought necessary? Give an account of the manner of it.

representing to him the ill consequences that might attend his refusing to comply; this unfortunate prince, with a melancholy air submitted to all that was required of him. He expressed his grief at the aversion his people had against him, and then delivered into their hands the crown, the sceptre, and other ensigns of royalty.

Thus ended the reign of Edward II. on January 20th, 1327, in its twentieth year, and in the forty-third year of his age.

The ruin of Edward was more owing to his weakness than his wickedness. He was a prince of so little capacity that he could not distinguish what was for his advantage, and what was prejudicial to his interests. In a word, he was exceedingly like his grandfather, Henry III., and had not capacity enough to follow the good example of his father.

Besides Edward, who succeeded him, he had another son called John, and two daughters, Joanna, married to David, King of Scots, and Eleanor, wife of the duke of Guelder.

In this reign, there was the most terrible earthquake that had ever been felt in England, and a dreadful famine, lasting three years, and destroying a vast number of lives. Not only the most loathsome animals were devoured for food, but men, particularly the prisoners, devoured one another. During this time, the brewing of any kind of beer was prohibited on pain of death, that the corn might be applied to the making of bread.

(1327)

EDWARD III.

(1377)

Upon the forced resignation of the old king, the prince, his son, was again proclaimed, on January 20th, 1327, by the name of Edward III., and was crowned on the 26th, in the fourteenth year of his age.

The unhappy beginning of his reign was mainly attributable

Of the king's conduct. When did Edward's reign end? To what was Edward's ruin owing? Whom did he resemble? His family? Give an account of an earthquake and famine that took place in this reign. When was Edward III. proclaimed? When crowned? At what age? What is said of the beginning of this reign?

to the queen mother, a woman of strong passions, and her favorite Mortimer, a man of more presumption and less ability than the Spencers. For although the parliament had appointed twelve regents during the king's minority, yet Isabella, having the power in her hands, seized the government, and managed the affairs as she and Mortimer thought fit.

He was her prime minister, and acted more like a sovereign than a subject, disposing of all offices, and of the public revenue, according to his pleasure; and by his pride, arrogance, and cruelty, soon became as odious to the nation as ever Gaveston or the Spencers had been.

King Robert Bruce, taking advantage of Edward's minority, broke the truce with the English, and sent an army of 20,000 men to ravage the counties bordering on Scotland.

An army of 60,000 men was soon raised to march against them, which was led by King Edward, which was forced to return for want of subsistence.

The late king was at this time a prisoner in Kenelworth Castle; and the queen and Mortimer, being suspicious that Henry of Lancaster, who had the custody of him, entertained thoughts of freeing him, resolved to discharge Lancaster, and appoint such keepers over the old king as they could best confide in. Sir John Maltrevers and Sir Thomas Guesney, two men of a cruel disposition, were appointed to execute their wicked designs. The king was removed to Berkley-Castle, where he was soon after most inhumanly murdered.

In 1328, the young king was married to Philippa of Hainault. The same year a treaty of peace was made with Scotland; King Edward renouncing all his pretensions to that kingdom, and the princess Joanna, his sister, being given in mar-

What of the queen and Mortimer? What office did Mortimer hold? How did he act? The consequence? What did Robert Bruce do? What did Edward do? The result? Where was the late king at this time? Relate the conduct of the queen and Mortimer in reference to him. When and whom did Edward III. marry? What treaty was made with Scotland? The terms of it?

riage to Prince David, son of the king of Scotland. Soon after, Mortimer was created earl of Marche.

The brave Robert Bruce died about this time, and left his crown to his son David, then about eight years old.

The conduct of Isabella and Mortimer rendered them so odious that measures were entered upon to pull them down. The earl of Lancaster, the earl of Kent, and some other lords, entered into an association, and published a manifesto explaining the motives of their taking arms. Isabella and Mortimer made vigorous preparations against them, and serious consequences might have ensued if the archbishop of Canterbury had not interfered and artfully brought about an accommodation.

In the mean time an affair happened in France which gave rise to the chief business of this reign, and brought France to the very brink of destruction. This was the death of Charles the Fair, Queen Isabella's brother, without issue.

King Edward laid claim to the crown of France, as nephew and nearest relation to Charles. But Philip de Valois, cousin to the deceased king, maintained that, as the Salic law excluded the females, and *their descendants*, as he thought, from the succession to the crown, they consequently had no right to the regency. The matter was decided by the peers of France in favor of Philip.

Edward sent ambassadors to demand for him the crown of France. Philip paid no regard to this, and caused himself to be crowned. Edward not having it in his power at this time to maintain his pretensions, allowed the matter to lie dormant for some time, and even found himself obliged to do homage to Philip of Guienne and Ponthieu.

Who died about this time? Who succeeded him? What is said of the conduct of Isabella and Mortimer? What was done? How was an accommodation effected? What affair happened about this time in France? The consequence? What was Edward's claim? The claim of Philip? How was the matter decided and by whom? What did Edward do? Philip? Why did Edward drop the subject for the present?

As Edward began to be suspicious of the queen, his mother's conduct, there were enemies enough to lay hold of the disposition the king was then in, to hasten her ruin and that of her favorite. They so wrought upon him, that he had them both seized at Nottingham, where the court then was. Then calling a parliament, he told them, that with the consent of his subjects he intended to take upon himself the government, though he was not yet at the age prescribed by law; to which the parliament readily assented. He first seized on the extravagant dowry, which the queen, his mother, had caused to be settled upon her, and then confined her in the castle of Rising, where she continued the remainder of her life, which was twenty-eight years. Her favorite, Mortimer, was treated with the utmost severity. He was charged with having assumed the government without authority, with having placed spies about the king to keep him always in subjection, with procuring the death of the king's father, with having lived too familiarly with the queen mother, &c. For all which crimes he was hanged as a traitor, at Tyburn.

The same year a son was born to the king, named Edward.

The art of weaving woolen cloth was about this time brought from Flanders to England, by John Kempe, to whom Edward granted his protection, and invited over *fullers* and *dyers*, and other artificers belonging to that manufacture, which has since proved so advantageous to England.

After Edward was at liberty to act for himself, his first attempt was upon Scotland, and he employed Edward Baliol, son of John Baliol, to bring about his designs. Baliol readily listened to Edward's proposals, and raised an army, with which, in a few days, he routed four Scotch armies, each superior in

What steps were taken in regard to the queen and Mortimer? What did Edward next do? What intentions did he declare to this parliament? What did the parliament do? What did Edward do in reference to the queen, his mother? How was Mortimer treated? How charged? His fate? Who was born the same year? What is said of the manufacture of woolen cloth? What did Edward now attempt? How did he manage the affair? The consequence?

number to his own. King David was obliged to flee into France, and Baliol was crowned at Scone, and did the same homage to King Edward for Scotland as his father had done to Edward I.

Things thus succeeding according to Edward's desire, he raised an army on pretense of appeasing some troubles in Ireland; but presently throwing off the mask, marched it towards Scotland, and laid siege to Berwick. The regent whom King David had left in Scotland, advanced with a great army to its relief; but Edward met him at Halydon Hill, and in a bloody battle, A. D. 1333, entirely routed him. After which Berwick surrendered, which Edward annexed to the crown of England.

Edward, on his return from Scotland, left Baliol with a body of troops to complete its reduction. But the next year the Scots rose against him, and coming upon him unawares, totally routed him and drove him out of the kingdom. Hereupon Edward marched again into Scotland with a numerous army, but the Scots were so encamped that he could not attack them. He passed the winter at Roxburgh, and in the spring, 1335, attacked Scotland by sea and land, and advanced as far as the Northern Ocean. Before the close of the year, the Scots finding that Edward was fully resolved to continue the war, most of them submitted. Edward then returned to England, leaving the earl of Athol to command in his absence, who, as he was besieging Kildrummy, was attacked, defeated and slain by Dunbar and Douglas, who marched to the relief of the place.

This occasioned Edward to march once more into Scotland, where he ravaged the counties that had revolted, and on his return burnt Aberdeen to ashes, then leaving a small army under Baliol, he returned to England to put his project against

What is said of King David? Of Baliol? What did Edward next do? On what pretense? What battle was fought? When? The consequence? What did Edward do on leaving Scotland? What happened next year? Give an account of Edward's next invasion of Scotland? What the consequence? What occasioned Edward to again march into Scotland? Give an account of it? What did Edward do when he returned to England?

France into execution. Edward maintained that the *Salic Law*,* in excluding females, did not exclude their male issue ; and inferring from thence that the nearest male relative ought to succeed, he resolved to wrest the crown from Philip de Valois.

Whilst he was preparing for this important war, in 1337, he called a parliament, chiefly to settle the business of the *woolen manufacture*. In this parliament he created his eldest son, Prince Edward, duke of Cornwall ; and ever since, the eldest son of the king of England is, by birth, duke of Cornwall.

Edward, having made great preparations for war, set sail, in 1338, from England with a considerable fleet, and arrived at Antwerp, where he made a long stay to settle some matters of importance to his grand design.

The first campaign was opened in September, 1339, when Edward, at the head of 40,000 men, marched toward the enemy, who were advancing with a numerous army to give him battle. However, matters were so ordered that nothing was done, and the first campaign ended without bloodshed.

The next year, Edward took the title of king of France, using it in all public acts, and quartered the arms of France with his own, adding this motto, *Dieu et mon Droit*,—God and my Right. He soon after obtained a great victory over the French at sea ; then landing his forces, he went and laid siege to Tournay ; but the French army advancing to its relief, so harassed the besiegers that Edward made little progress. At length a truce was agreed upon between the two parties, which was from September 20th to June 25th, and was succeeded by another for three years.

What did he maintain? What resolve? For what purpose did Edward call a parliament? When was this? What title did he give his son? What title has the eldest son of the king of England by birth? Give an account of Edward's preparations for war? Of his movements? When was his first campaign entered upon? Give a history of it. What title did Edward take the next year? What motto did he adopt? What victory did Edward gain? What is said of the siege of Tournay? What is said of a truce?

* It is a notable fact that France is the only country in Europe in which females are excluded from the throne.

Whilst Edward was in France, Robert Stuart gained great advantages over Baliol. He took Perth, and forced Baliol to retire to the borders, and some time after became master of Sterling.

Edward having returned to England, resolved to invade Scotland once more by sea and land; but his fleet suffering by a violent storm, he was prevented.

Soon after, King David Bruce, being furnished with men and money by the king of France, returned to Scotland, and having assembled a considerable army, marched towards the frontiers and proceeded as far as Durham, which he besieged and took. He was proceeding with his successes, but the news of Edward's approach caused him to desist. Soon after, Edward, being intent upon continuing the French war, offered David a truce for two years, which was accepted.

Edward had made great preparations to renew the French war as soon as the truce should have expired. But Philip hastened it on, by seizing and beheading several lords of Bretagne, by which action Edward maintained the truce was broken.

He now prosecuted the war against France with great vigor and success. He first sent over Henry of Lancaster, earl of Derby, who made great progress in Guienne, but the vigorous efforts of the duke of Normandy put a stop to it. Edward landed in Normandy, in 1346, with his son, the Prince of Wales, who was now to make his first campaign, being about sixteen years old. He ravaged the country in a terrible manner, and having bravely forced a pass at Somme, which was guarded by 12,000 French, he went and encamped at Cressy. Being

What was the condition of affairs in Scotland at this time? What did Edward resolve upon, on his return to England? The result? What did King David do? What is said of a truce with David? How was the French war renewed? How was the war against France now prosecuted? When did Edward land in Normandy? Who was with him? How old was the Prince of Wales at this time?

closely pursued by Philip, he found he could not avoid a battle, and drew up his army in battle array, expecting the enemy.

The battle began at four in the afternoon, August 26, 1346, which was very obstinate and bloody, and proved fatal to the French. The Prince of Wales performed wonders. To him the victory was chiefly owing. Philip fought with undaunted valor, was twice dismounted, and wounded in the neck and thigh; when, being forced to retire, the victory was completed, and followed with a dreadful slaughter of the troops. There were slain in this battle, the king of Bohemia, who was blind; the earl of Alenson, King Philip's brother; the duke of Lorraine; the earls of Flanders and Blois; fifteen other eminent noblemen, and twelve hundred knights, and above eighty French standards were taken. It is said that in this famous battle the English, for the first time, made use of cannon, then unknown to the French; and that the victory was in part owing to the surprise this novelty occasioned.

After this Edward besieged Calais, which held out a year, when he at last reduced it by famine. After taking this important place, he consented to a year's truce, and returned in triumph to England.

During the siege of Calais, the king of Scots made a diversion in England, and advanced as far as Durham, at the head of a numerous army; but Queen Philippa marched against him, defeated him, and took him prisoner.

King David remained a prisoner twelve years, and was then released upon giving twenty hostages to pay 100,000 marks, at 1,000 a year, till all was paid. A two years' truce was at the same time concluded between the two kingdoms. David died in 1368, leaving his crown to Robert Stuart, his nephew.

When was the battle of Cressy fought? Give an account of it? What is said of the Prince of Wales? What distinguished persons were slain in the battle of Cressy? When were cannon first used by the English? When was Calais besieged? Give an account of the siege? What was next done? During this siege, what did the Scots do? Consequence? Give an account of King David's imprisonment and release? What truce was concluded? When did King David die? Who succeeded him?

Not long after the taking of Calais, Edward instituted the most famous order of knighthood in the world, that of the *Garter*. It is said it owed its rise to the countess of Salisbury's dropping her garter as she was dancing. When the king stooped to take it up, the countess showing some surprise, as thinking he had some other design, he said to her, "*Honi soit qui mal y pense*," that is, *Evil be to him that thinks evil of it*. In memory of this it is pretended he instituted the order, and gave for its motto the words he had spoken to the lady.

Philip de Valois dying in 1350, left his son John his successor, who prolonged the truce to 1354, and then to the year following; but it was little observed on either side. When it was near expiring, Edward invested the Prince of Wales with the duchy of Guienne, and sent him thither to prosecute the war. From hence the prince made an incursion and ravaged Languedoc. He afterwards made a second incursion with twelve thousand men, passing through Perigord and Limosin, entering Berry, and advancing to the gates of Bourges. As he was endeavoring to avoid the king of France, who was advancing with 60,000 men, the latter came up with him near Poitiers, and here a memorable battle was fought, September 19th, 1356, in which the Prince of Wales, notwithstanding the vast superiority of the French, obtained a complete victory, and took king John prisoner, with Philip, his son. The duke of Bourbon, the constable of France, the Marshal de Nelse, and above fifty other great lords and eight hundred gentlemen, were slain. The prince's modest and generous behavior towards his royal prisoner was no less conspicuous than his courage and conduct during the action. A truce for two years was soon after agreed upon, and the prince went over to England,

What order of knighthood was instituted about this time? To what circumstance does it owe its rise? When did Philip de Valois die? Who succeeded him? What did he do? How was this truce observed? Give an account of the movements of the Prince of Wales. What battle was fought? When? Give an account of it. What notable person was taken prisoner? What was Prince Edward's conduct towards his royal prisoner? Give an account of Prince Edward's return to England.

taking with him the captive king, who was conducted to London, and treated with all honor and respect by King Edward and all the royal family, as well as by the generous and heroic Prince of Wales.

King John agreed upon a treaty with Edward in order to recover his liberty, but the states of France thought it so disadvantageous that they would not ratify it. Upon which Edward prepared to renew the war, and in 1360 went over to Calais with an army of 100,000 men, with the intention of subduing that kingdom.

A treaty was finally concluded in May, 1360, whereby the king of France was to pay *three millions crowns* of gold for his ransom, and the king of England was to hold Guienne, Poictou, Guisnes, Ponthieu, Calais town, castle and territory, &c. All things being concluded, King John was set at liberty and returned to France.

Not long after, the Prince of Wales marched with an army of 30,000 men, from Bordeaux, in order to restore Peter the Cruel, king of Castile, who had been driven from his dominions by his bastard brother, Henry, earl of Translamare. He succeeded in his enterprise, totally routing the Spanish army.

The expedition, however, was fatal to him, for he contracted a disease in Spain which finally caused his death.

Hitherto Edward's reign had been happy and glorious, but the latter part of it was full of misfortunes. In 1368 he lost his second son, Lionel, duke of Clarence, who left a daughter named Philippa.

The year following, Charles V., who succeeded king John, his father, broke the treaty and declared war upon King Edward. This war was as unfortunate to the English as the former had been glorious. For Charles so well directed the motions, that

What is said of a treaty between King John and King Edward? What followed? When was a treaty finally concluded? The terms of it? What were the next movements of the Prince of Wales? His success? What caused his death? What is said of the latter part of Edward's reign? Who succeeded John, in France? What did he do? The result of the war?

the English were every where worsted, and in the end found themselves deprived of all their late acquisitions in France, except Calais. However, a truce was concluded between the two crowns in 1374. Queen Philippa died at the beginning of this war.

On 10th June, 1376, Edward, Prince of Wales, died, in the forty-sixth year of his age. He was called the *Black Prince*, from his wearing black armor. He left a son, Richard, whom the king, his grandfather, created Prince of Wales and Earl of Chester, designing him for his successor.

King Edward died June 21st, 1377, in the sixty-fifth year of his age, and fifty-first of his reign.

He had besides his two sons already mentioned, William, who died an infant; John of Gaunt, duke of Lancaster; Edmund, surnamed of Langley, earl of Cambridge and duke of York; William of Windsor, who died young; and Thomas, duke of Gloucester. He had also five daughters.

Toward the end of this reign, Dr. John Wickliff, a man of preat piety and learning, began in his sermons and writings to oppose transubstantiation, persecutions for religion's sake, and other corrupt doctrines and practices of the church of Rome. He was the first celebrated English reformer.

It was during the reign of Edward III. that gold was first coined in England.

(1377)

RICHARD II.

(1399)

Upon the death of Edward III., his grandson Richard, son of the Black Prince, succeeded to the crown. Richard had three uncles, who might, upon specious pretenses, have disputed the succession with him; but they were the first to do him homage. Richard II. was crowned July 16th, 1377.

What did the English lose in France? . When did the Prince of Wales die? At what age? Why was he called the *Black Prince*? What son did he leave? When did Edward die? In what year of his age and reign? What is said of his family? What is said of Wickliff? When was gold first coined in England? Who succeeded Edward III.? When?

The truce with France had expired before Edward's death, and the king of France was making vast preparations to expel the English from all places they held in France. And while five armies were employed in different places to complete the work in France, the French made several descents upon England, burnt Hastings, Portsmouth, Dartmouth and Plymouth, and plundered the Isle of Wight.

The parliament met in October, and gave the regency of the kingdom to the three uncles of the king, joining with them some bishops and lay lords. This mortified the duke of Lancaster, the eldest of the uncles, a prince of haughty temper, who had flattered himself with the hopes of being sole regent. Cherbourg and Brest were put in possession of the English, which together with Calais and Bordeaux, might have been of great advantage to them. But they made not a proper use of this advantage; and Richard, toward the end of his reign, gave up Brest and Cherbourg for a very inconsiderable sum.

The French court, in order to divert the English from France, (according to their usual artifice,) encouraged the king of Scotland to make a diversion on his side. He accordingly broke the truce and took Berwick; which was re-taken by the earl of Northumberland by storm. In this siege, his son Henry Percy signalized himself with such bravery and resolution, that he gained the surname of *Hotspur*.

Whilst the nation was involved abroad, an insurrection broke out, which threatened the whole kingdom with destruction.

The parliament had imposed a poll tax,* whereby all persons above fifteen years old were obliged to pay twelve pence a

What was the condition of affairs in France at this time? What did the French do? When did Parliament meet? To whom did they give the regency? How did this please the duke of Lancaster? Who was the duke of Lancaster? What places were the English put in possession of? What did Richard do toward the end of his reign? What did the French court do? What did the king of Scotland do? What is said of the earl of Northumberland and his son, Henry Percy? What was the cause of an insurrection?

* This was the first *poll tax* ever laid in England.

head, the monks and nuns not excepted. These taxes were levied with great rigor by the collectors. One of the collectors offering a gross insult to the daughter of one Tyler, whose name was Walter, from thence called Wat. Tyler, the latter seized a hammer and knocked out his brains.

The populace immediately rose in Kent and chose Wat. Tyler for their leader; and these being joined by those from Essex, under Jack Straw, Tyler soon found himself at the head of 100,000 men. With these he marched directly for London. This formidable mob proceeded to the utmost extravagances. They entered London and committed the most horrid ravages, burning and plundering the houses of the judges, lords and principal citizens. They then seized the Tower and beheaded the archbishop of Canterbury and the high treasurer. The king and council were exceedingly alarmed at these proceedings, and in great perplexity what course to take. It was at last resolved to offer the rebels a charter, confirming the people's liberties, and a general pardon, which those of Essex accepting, returned home.

Wat. Tyler still continued at the head of thirty or forty thousand men, when the king sent to desire him to come and confer with him. Tyler set forward at the head of his troops, and meeting the king at Smithfield, they had a conference on horseback. Tyler's demands, however, were so extravagant, that Richard knew not how to answer him. Walworth, mayor of London, who was by the king, was so enraged at Tyler's insolence, that he struck the rebel so furious a blow as instantly killed him. The rebels seeing their leader fall, were upon the point of revenging his death, when the young king, with a surprising presence of mind, cried aloud to them, "*My friends, will you kill your king? What though you have lost your leader, I will be your captain, follow me.*" With that, turning his horse, he put himself at their head, and marched to

St. George's Fields. The rebels readily followed him. When they were come thither they presently saw a great number of citizens, well armed, marching towards them, and thinking the whole city was coming out against them, they immediately threw down their arms and dispersed, without the loss of one life, but that of Wat. Tyler, their leader.

There were similar insurrections in Norfolk and Suffolk, which were soon suppressed. Those in Essex also began to stir again; many were slain, others taken and executed, and among them, Jack Straw, their leader. This formidable insurrection was in the year 1381, and did not last over a month.

About this time king Richard married Anne, sister of the emperor of Luxembourgh. The same year the king granted power to the bishops to imprison *heretics*, but the house of commons soon caused it to be revoked.

In 1385, the Scots, by the assistance of the French, as well as the French themselves, were preparing again to invade England. This alarmed the court, and made them so exert themselves, that in a short time Richard was at the head of a very numerous army, some writers say 300,000 men. With this army he might have subdued Scotland, but he managed the affair so badly that he was compelled to return ingloriously to England.

In the year 1384, the famous reformer Wickliff died.

Richard's chief favorites at this time were, Nevil, Archbishop of York; Robert de Vere, earl of Oxford; and Michael de la Pole, whom he made earl of Suffolk and high chancellor. These, by humoring his passions, gained an absolute ascendant over him. They inspired the king with jealousy of his three

What is said of other insurrections? Who was the leader of a mob in Essex? In what year did this formidable insurrection occur? How long did it last? When and whom did King Richard marry? What power did Richard grant the bishops about this time? Did the commons approve of this? What did the Scots do in 1385? The effect of this upon the court? What is said of Richard and his army? In what year did the reformer Wickliff die? Who were Richard's chief favorites? What is said of their influence over the king?

uncles, and especially the duke of Lancaster, persuading him that he aspired to the crown.

These jealousies and animosities proved fatal to the king himself, who always loved those best who flattered him most. These favorites soon became so odious, that when the king demanded a subsidy from the parliament, instead of granting it, they presented an address for the removal of his favorites. Richard was exceedingly enraged at this proceeding, and sent the chancellor in an imperious manner to renew his demand of the supply. But the two houses uniting on this occasion, peremptorily refused it, unless he would first remove the favorites. Things were upon the point of coming to a rupture, when the king, thinking better of the matter, complied.

But so fickle and imprudent was Richard, that as soon as the parliament broke up, he recalled his old ministers and caressed them more than ever.

The remaining part of this reign was nothing but confusion, and a series of arbitrary measures. The ministers formed a design to make the king absolute. It was agreed that he should raise an army to terrify the duke of Gloucester and the other lords, his associates. Then a parliament was to be called, which was to be wholly at the king's devotion, and none to be returned but such as were set down on his list. The king then issued commissions for levying an army.

The duke of Gloucester and other lords, alarmed at these proceedings, resolved to take arms, and soon raised an army of 40,000 men, and marched to London.

They then demanded a conference with the king, which was granted; wherein it was agreed that he should meet them the next day at Westminster, in order to settle with him the gov-

How did this effect the parliament? How did parliament answer the king's demand for a subsidy? Richard's conduct? What did Richard do upon the breaking up of parliament? What is said of the remaining part of this reign? What was the design of the ministers? Their plan? What did the king do? What did the duke of Gloucester and other lords do? What followed?

ernment. He accordingly, with much reluctance, met them, and consented to the banishment of his favorites. The judges were taken from the bench and sent to the tower.

The parliament meeting in February, 1389, several persons were impeached of high treason. The chief justice and some others were hanged at Tyburn. After this, a general pardon was passed for both parties, the king renewed his coronation oath, and all the lords repeated their oath of allegiance.

Though matters had thus been made up, the unhappy temper of the king soon threw all in confusion again. Being now of age, he resolved to take the government into his own hands; when it soon appeared that he was not at all disposed to rule with moderation, according to the laws; but that he was fully resolved to follow the opinions and maxims of his late favorites.

The queen having died, he married Isabella, daughter of Charles VI., of France, and made a dishonorable truce with that crown, for twenty-eight years.

The dukes of Lancaster and York now quitted the court, and the duke of Gloucester was treacherously seized, hurried over to Calais and murdered. The earls of Warwick and Arundel were apprehended and sent to the Tower. The king now took measures to have a parliament to his liking. He changed all the sheriffs and magistrates of cities and boroughs, and suffered none to continue in place but such as would be subservient to his will.

This parliament, so agreeable to Richard's mind, established such maxims as were destructive to liberty and the constitution; and decided, "*That when the king proposed any affair in parliament, it was high treason to go upon any other business before the king's was dispatched.*"

When did parliament next meet? What was done? How were matters again thrown into confusion? Whom did Richard marry for his second wife? What truce was made with France? What is said of the dukes of Lancaster and York? Of the duke of Gloucester? Of the earls of Warwick and Arundel? What did the king now do? What did this parliament do?

In 1398, John of Gaunt, duke of Lancaster, died. His son, the earl of Derby, whom Richard had created duke of Hereford, was banished a short time before. But this same person was afterwards made an instrument to pull down Richard, as we shall presently see.

So many great men being either dead or banished, and the parliament having given their sanction to his arbitrary power, Richard now thought himself above all restraint, and minded nothing but his ease and pleasure; whilst his ministers, wholly intent upon their own private advantage, let the affairs of the nation go to wreck.

Such tyrannical proceedings could not fail of making the nation very uneasy. And in the midst of the general discontent, a rebellion happening in Ireland, the infatuated king went over in person, with his troops, to quell it. He had no sooner gone than a conspiracy began to be formed in England, to deprive him of his crown. The malcontents, after several consultations, resolved to call in the duke of Hereford, or Lancaster, who was now in France, and to that end wrote to the archbishop of Canterbury, who was also there, to communicate their design to him, promising to assist him to the utmost of their power.

The duke seizing this opportunity to try his fortune, embarked with a small body of men and landed in England, in July, 1399. He was presently joined by the earl of Northumberland, and Henry Percy, his son, with some troops, and the people so flocked to him from all parts, that in a few days he found himself at the head of 60,000 men. The duke of York, whom the king had left regent, and the rest of the council, left London, when the city declared for the duke.

Who was John of Gaunt? When did he die? How was his son Henry, earl of Derby, treated? What did Richard now think? Why? What was his conduct? The effect of those proceedings? What is said of a rebellion in Ireland? Of a conspiracy in England? What did the malcontents do? What did the duke of Hereford do? Who was the duke of Hereford? By whom was he joined? The size of his army? What other persons declared for the duke?

The duke of Lancaster first marched to London, where the citizens received him with the greatest demonstrations of joy, as their deliverer. He then proceeded to Bristol and became master of the castle. Soon after, the duke of York, his uncle, came in to him.

When the king was informed of his cousin's descent, instead of going over himself with his forces, he sent the earl of Salisbury before him to levy troops, which he did to the number of 40,000. But having continued in arms for some time, and the king not appearing, they dispersed and returned home. Soon after, the king arrived, and when he found how matters stood, and that all the nobility and the people had declared against him, he was in the utmost consternation, and knew not what to do. At last he privately withdrew from his army and shut himself up in Conway castle, in Wales. The duke of Lancaster having marched to Chester, Richard threw himself upon his enemy's generosity, and even proffered to resign his crown, provided he would spare his life, and allow him an honorable pension.

Richard was conducted to the Tower, and the duke having caused him to call a parliament, the day before it met, Richard delivered up the crown and sceptre, and signed an instrument, confessing himself unworthy to govern the kingdom any longer.

Parliament then drew up several articles of accusation against him, upon which he was solemnly deposed, much in the same manner as Edward II. had been.

The throne being vacant, the duke of Lancaster, as has been said, rose up and claimed the crown, and it was unanimously resolved, September 30th, 1399, that he should be proclaimed king of England and France, and lord of Ireland. Which was accordingly done the same day.

Give an account of the duke's movements. What did the king do? What is said of the movements of the earl of Salisbury? What was the situation of the king? What did he do? Where was he conducted? Who caused a parliament to be called? What did Richard next do? What did parliament then do? What did the duke of Lancaster do? When was he proclaimed king?

Thus ended the unhappy reign of Richard II., in its twenty-third year.

He seemed to be a prince of generous inclinations in his younger years, but afterwards, being corrupted by flattery, grew excessively self-conceited, most profusely expensive in pomp and show and diversions; assuming, arbitrary, cruel and inflexible. He had no issue by either of his two marriages.

How long did Richard II. reign? What was his character? What is said of his family?

THE HOUSE OF LANCASTER.

(1399)

HENRY IV.

(1413)

Henry, duke of Lancaster and Hereford, surnamed Bolingbroke, from his being born there, was the eldest son of John of Gaunt, duke of Lancaster. He ascended the throne A. D. 1399, and was the first of the Lancaster family of kings.

The rightful heir to the throne, upon the death or deposition of Richard II., was Edward Mortimer, earl of Marche, who was descended from Philippa, daughter of Lionel, duke of Clarence, Henry's father's elder brother.

Henry IV. was crowned October 13th, and on the same day he published a proclamation, declaring that he had ascended the throne *by right of conquest, by virtue of Richard's resignation to him*, and as the next male heir of that king; when in fact the only lawful title he had was from the *general consent* of the people.

Parliament meeting the next day after the coronation, passed an act of indemnity in favor of those who had taken arms for the king while only duke of Lancaster. They next passed an act securing the crown to the issue of Henry, thus settling the succession in the house of Lancaster. No ill consequences would have resulted from this, (all the male heirs of the house of Mortimer being dead,) had not the son of the duke of York

What titles had Henry IV.? How was he descended? When did he ascend the throne? Who was the rightful heir? How was Mortimer descended from Edward III.? When was Henry crowned? What claims did he set forth in his proclamation? How was Blanche, Henry's mother, descended from Henry III.? What was Henry's only lawful title to the throne? What act did parliament pass? What was the next act of Parliament? To what did this give rise? How?

married Anne, their sister, which at length proved the source of that long and bloody contest between the houses of Lancaster and York.

Henry had possessed the throne only three months when a dangerous conspiracy was entered into against him, by some nobles attached to Richard. This was easily subdued and the leaders were beheaded.

To secure himself from other attempts of this kind, Henry was anxious to have Richard disposed of; and laying the subject before his parliament, they resolved that he should be confined during life, and maintained in a princely manner, but if his deliverance should in any way be attempted he should suffer death.

To make himself popular with the clergy, Henry assured them that he would maintain them in all their privileges and immunities, and that he would punish heretics. To preserve the esteem of the rest of his subjects, he professed a great regard for their liberties, and an aversion to the tyrannical government of Richard.

Notwithstanding all this, another conspiracy broke out in the beginning of the year 1400. The chief conspirators were the dukes of Surrey and Exeter; Thomas Spencer, earl of Gloucester, and the earl of Salisbury. These had been Richard's chief favorites, to whom he had given the estates of the earls of Arundel and Warwick, and the duke of Gloucester. This formidable conspiracy was quelled, and the death of the late king soon followed. Some writers say that he was starved to death by order of King Henry; some that he was assassinated. Be this as it may, his death was a great relief to King Henry.

What conspiracy was soon discovered? The consequence? What was Henry's wish as to Richard? What did parliament resolve? What course did Henry pursue to gain the clergy? To preserve the esteem of the rest of his subjects? What is said of another conspiracy in 1400? Who were the leaders of this conspiracy? How was this quelled? What soon followed? What is thought as to Richard's death? The consequence of his death to the king?

About this time a conspiracy, headed by Owen Glendower, broke out in Wales. He persuaded the Welch to renounce their subjection to England, styled himself Prince of Wales, in right of his ancestors, and for seven years maintained himself against all the efforts of Henry to subdue him.

The parliament of 1401 confirmed and enlarged the statute of *Præmunire*, against those who solicited bulls from Rome, for benefices actually vacant, or that should become so; and also against those who carried into the ecclesiastical courts causes that belonged to the civil. The penalty was forfeiture of lands and goods, with imprisonment during the king's pleasure. This was a severe blow to the power of the pope in England.

To appease the clergy, Henry connived at the frequent breach of this statute, and by their intrigues an act was obtained, at the same session, for the burning of heretics, occasioned by the great increase of the Wickliffites, or Lollards.

In the year 1402, the Scots twice invaded England, but were both times defeated by the earl of Northumberland and Henry Hotspur, his son. Two battles were fought, and besides the earl of Douglass, many persons of distinction were taken prisoners.

A quarrel now arose between King Henry and the earl of Northumberland as to the disposal of these prisoners. The king insisted that they belonged to him, and ordered the earl to deliver them into his hands. The earl thought that after such signal services, he had a right to the benefit of their ransom. This affair occasioned at first a coldness between the king and the earl, which growing at last to a thorough animosity, the earl entered into a conspiracy with his brother, the earl of

What is said of a conspiracy headed by Glendower? What did the parliament of 1401 do? The penalty? Effect upon the power of the pope? How were the clergy appeased? What did the Scots do in 1402? By whom were they defeated? How many battles were fought and the result? What quarrel now arose? What did the king insist upon? What did the earl think? The effect of this quarrel? What did the earl attempt?

Worcester; his son Hotspur, and other lords, to dethrone Henry. This was in 1403.

For this purpose they settled a correspondence with several Scotch lords, and sent agents to Owen Glendower and Edmund Mortimer, who was still a prisoner in Wales, to persuade them into the plot. It was agreed to place Mortimer upon the throne, that the earl of Northumberland should hold all north of the Trent, and do homage to the crown for it, and that Glendower should have all west of the Severn.

Matters being thus settled, the earl of Worcester and Henry Hotspur marched with an army and joined Glendower, who had advanced as far as Shropshire. Henry marched against them and found them encamped at Shrewsbury. Both armies soon engaged. The advantage at first seemed to be against the king, who had one horse killed under him, but in the end gained a complete victory. Young Percy, (Hotspur,) was slain, the earl of Worcester was taken prisoner and beheaded.

The earl of Northumberland, who had been detained by sickness in the north, having recovered, was marching to reinforce the malcontents, but hearing of their defeat, threw himself on the king's mercy, who remembering that he had been the chief instrument in procuring him the crown, pardoned him.

In 1405, Prince Henry, the king's oldest son, led an army against the Welsh, and defeated them in two battles. Other combinations were formed against the king, who was always successful in crushing them.

The French, taking advantage of Henry's embarrassment, improved every opportunity to harass him, until at length the intestine divisions in France, between the houses of Orleans and Burgundy, so occupied their time, that the French had no time to devote to their neighbors.

His plans? How was it acted upon? The result? What is said of the earl of Northumberland? What did Prince Henry do in 1405? What advantage did the French take of Henry's embarrassments? How were they prevented?

By this means, and by the death of the earl of Northumberland, Glendower's cause failed at once; he withdrew from public life and spent the rest of his days in an unknown place.

Notwithstanding Henry's severity in the former part of his reign, when he had no more to fear from France, Scotland, Wales, or the malcontents in England, he governed in so mild and popular a manner that he gained the good opinion of his subjects, and removed, in a great measure, the ill impressions that his former conduct had made upon them.

Henry died A. D. 1413, in the forty-sixth year of his age and fourteenth of his reign.

The greatest stain upon his memory is the fact that in his reign religious persecution in England was established by law.

Henry was a sedate, serious man, very devout in his habits, and during his latter years his mind was much impressed with a desire to go on a crusade to the holy land.

Henry had by his first wife, Mary de Bohun, four sons; Henry, who succeeded him; Thomas, duke of Clarence; John, duke of Bedford; and Humphrey, duke of Gloucester; and two daughters, Blanche and Philippa.

(1413)

HENRY V.

(1422)

Henry IV. was succeeded by his eldest son, Prince Henry, A. D. 1413:

His dissolute behavior in his father's life-time, raised apprehensions in the minds of the people as to what he might prove when he came to the throne. Among other pranks, he and his companions would lay in wait for, and rob his father's and his own receivers on the high way. But the fears of the nation were soon relieved; for Henry, of a loose and vicious prince, became a wise, virtuous; just and great king.

What is said of Glendower? What is said of Henry's popularity? When and at what age did Henry die? When was religious persecution established by law? What was his character? What is said of his family? By whom was Henry IV. succeeded? When? What is said of his early life? What would he and his companions do? How were the fears of the nation relieved?

Immediately after he was crowned, he sent for his old companions, exhorted them to forsake their evil courses, and making them handsome presents, charged them on pain of his displeasure, never to come to court.

He chose wise and just counsellors, and from the first he secured the esteem and affection of his subjects, which he retained through the whole course of his reign.

The only blot upon the character of Henry was his persecution of the Wickliffites or Lollards.

A favorable opportunity offered in the beginning of this reign for the English to recover what they had lost in France. A civil war had been revived between the Orleans and Burgundy factions, of which Henry took advantage. The Orleans faction prevailing, the duke of Burgundy sought to make an alliance with king Henry. This gave him an opportunity to interfere in the affairs of France; when he set up his claim to that kingdom as heir to king Edward III. The consequence was, a truce between the two crowns was renewed from time to time, until, at length, the French ambassadors proposed a marriage between king Henry and Catharine, daughter to Charles VI., which Henry consented to, provided it was to be the consequence of the peace, and not the foundation of it, in prejudice of his claims. But all these negotiations failing, both nations prepared for war.

In the meantime, the House of Commons had addressed the king to seize upon the exorbitant estates of the clergy, which exceedingly alarmed that body; when, to avert the blow, the Archbishop of Canterbury ingeniously diverted the mind of the king from affairs at home to his wars abroad, and the people's

What did he do immediately after his coronation? General character of his reign? Principal blot upon his character? What opportunity offered to recover their losses in France? What did the Orleans faction seek? What did Henry do? The consequence? What was proposed? How did Henry consider this? The result? What did the Commons wish the king to do? How did the Archbishop of Canterbury manage?

minds being wholly engrossed with foreign affairs, the project against the clergy was dropped.

All hopes of accommodation between France and England having failed, Henry embarked with his troops in August, A. D. 1415, and landed in Normandy. He first laid siege to Harfleur, which he took, and then commenced his march towards Calais. Having crossed the Somme October 19th, he encountered the French army under Constable d'Albert, four times (some writers say six times,) as numerous as the English, who were waiting to give him battle, in full confidence of victory. A Welsh captain being sent to review their situation, on his return said, "there were enough to kill, enough to take prisoners, and enough to run away;" with this brave remark the king was much pleased, and exhorting his men to put their trust in God, he commenced the attack, being resolved to conquer or die. The battle began at ten in the morning, and lasted till almost five in the afternoon, Oct. 25th, 1415, when the French army of 100,000 men was entirely defeated. The slaughter of the French troops was immense, and many persons of distinction were slain or taken prisoners; the loss of the English was comparatively light.

King Henry returned thanks to God for this great victory, and it was styled the battle of *Agincourt*, from its having been fought near a castle bearing that name.

Henry continued his march to Calais, and in November returned in triumph to England.

The civil wars in France continued unabated, which gave Henry an opportunity the further to gratify his ambitious ends in reference to that kingdom: When finally in May, A. D. 1420, a treaty was concluded, whereby it was agreed that Henry should marry the princess Catharine, that he should be regent of the

When did Henry embark for France? Give an account of his march. Give an account of the battle of *Agincourt*. Henry's next course. What of the civil wars in France? How did Henry take advantage of them? What were the terms of a treaty between Henry and king Charles?

kingdom during king Charles' life, and that after his death the crown of France should descend to the king of England and his heirs forever. This treaty being sworn to by the queen and duke of Burgundy in the name of king Charles, and confirmed by the States of France, Henry hereupon espoused the princess Catharine, and the marriage was solemnized May 30th; and soon after Henry with his queen arrived in England.

The English and Burgundians now joined their forces against the dauphin. The parliament which met in May, A. D. 1421, granted the king a subsidy for carrying on the war against the dauphin.

Whilst Henry was pleasing himself with the prospect of entirely subduing the dauphin and his party, and was actually marching against him, he was taken sick, and died at Vincennes in August, 1422, in the thirty-fourth year of his age and the tenth of his reign.

Henry had all the qualifications requisite to a great man: He was a good soldier, an able politician, capable of forming great projects, and skillful and indefatigable in putting them into execution. Though his courage was unquestionable, yet his success in France was owing more to the intestine divisions of that kingdom, and his policy in turning them to his advantage, than to his arms.

He had by his queen, Catharine, only one son, Henry, born 1421 at Windsor, from whence called Henry of Windsor; whose fortune proved the reverse of his father, as we shall soon see.

(1422)

HENRY VI.

1461

Henry VI. was scarce nine months old when he succeeded his father, Henry V.

How was this treaty executed? What is said of the English and Burgundians? What did the parliament of 1421 grant? Give an account of Henry's sickness and death. What was his character? To what was his success in France, in a measure, indebted? What is said of his family? Who succeeded Henry V.? When? At what age?

He was at once proclaimed, not only king of England, but heir of France, pursuant to the treaty of Troye; and upon the death of Charles VI. who died in less than two months after, the Duke of Bedford, uncle to the infant king, ordered him to be proclaimed king of France, according to the same treaty.

On the other hand, the dauphin, as soon as he had heard of his father's death, caused himself to be proclaimed king of France, and was crowned at Poitiers, in November, 1422. Thus France had two kings at the same time, who for many years contended for the sovereignty of the whole kingdom, with doubtful fortune, until in the end Henry VI. lost all that Henry V. by his valor and conduct, and a conjuncture of lucky incidents, had acquired.

The council in England, at the head of which was the duke of Gloucester, the younger of the king's uncles, ordered everything that was necessary for the good of the government of the kingdom, till the parliament should meet, which was summoned for November, the main business of which was to settle the government during the king's minority. John, duke of Bedford, elder brother of Henry V. was appointed protector of the kingdom; but as he was regent of France, the duke of Gloucester was empowered to act as protector in his absence. They then appointed Thomas Beaufort, duke of Exeter, and Henry, bishop of Winchester, both sons of John of Gaunt, and great uncles to the king, to be his governors, and to have charge of his person and education.

While England and Ireland enjoyed peace, France was the seat of war. Charles, endeavoring to recover the throne of his ancestors, and the duke of Bedford to secure for Henry what the late king had obtained by the treaty of Troye, a quarrel com-

How was he proclaimed? What did the dauphin do? What is said of the two kings? What did the council in England order? When did parliament meet? What was the main business? How was the government settled? What was going on in France at this time?

menced which lasted upwards of thirty years, and which was attended by the loss of many lives. During the early part of this quarrel, the English were generally successful, and the duke of Bedford was in a fair way to complete the conquest of France. By the loss of many towns and strong holds, king Charles' condition became almost desperate, insomuch that the English styled him, in derision, *the little king of Bourges*.

But a quarrel arising between the duke of Gloucester and the duke of Brabant, laid the first foundation of the ruin of the English in France. Jacquelina, of Hainault, wife of the duke of Brabant, being at variance with her husband, procured from the pope, Benedict XIII., a divorce, when the duke of Gloucester married her, with a view of getting possession of the rich provinces which she possessed in right of her father. This he attempted by force of arms, and employed those troops against the duke of Brabant, which had been sent to enable the regent to carry on the war in France.

This occasioned the war in France to be at a stand for some time, and gave Charles an opportunity to devise measures for retrieving his affairs.

Though the affair of Hainault was a great hindrance to the pushing of the conquest of France, yet the English were much superior to king Charles, who was exceedingly troubled and began to think he should lose Orleans, which would in all probability be quickly followed by the entire loss of his kingdom; when a surprising incident gave a sudden turn to his affairs.

As the French writers relate the story, a country girl of twenty-one years of age, born in Lorraine, called Joan of Arc, and afterwards known by the name of Maid of Orleans, came to king Charles' court and told him that she had a call from

The consequence? What is said of the early part of this quarrel? What did the English style king Charles? What laid the foundation of the ruin of the English in France? Give an account of the affair. How did this affect the war in France? What was still the condition of the English in France? Relate the story of Joan of Arc?

God, to go and raise the siege of Orleans, and cause him to be crowned at Rheims. She was, after some examination, entertained as one who had a divine commission to bring about these great results. Accordingly, when Charles was about to send a convoy to Orleans, Joan accompanied it. When arriving near the city, the Bastard of Orleans sallied out to secure their passage: A bloody battle was fought until the English were forced to let the convoy in; and Joan entered Orleans in triumph, to whom was ascribed the success of the day.

After this, putting herself at the head of a detachment of the garrison, she attacked, sword in hand, four of the chief forts which the English had raised, and took them one after another, with a great slaughter of the English, who were forced to raise the siege.

The consternation of the English on this occasion was great; they retreated in the utmost disorder, and fled everywhere before the French, though still superior to them in numbers. The places which had been taken by the English near the Loire, were soon retaken by the French. At Gergeau, the earl of Suffolk was made prisoner, and in the battle of Patay the English were defeated with great loss, and the valliant Talbot was taken.

Charles now resolved to go to Rheims, the Maid still accompanying him, and animating the French wherever she came. Troye and Chalons, and the other places in the way, surrendered, and the inhabitants of Rheims drove the English garrison out of the city; when Charles with the Maid entered in triumph, and was soon after crowned.

What raised the courage of the French was, the belief that this heroine was sent from God to deliver France; and the consternation and panic of the English was owing to the opinion they had, that she was a witch, and acted by the help of the

What was the effect on the English? What followed? What did Charles now resolve on? Give an account of his successes. What raised the courage of the French? To what was the consternation of the English owing?

devil. The probability is, that she was trained to act the part she did for the purpose of reviving the courage of the dismayed French.

Fortune after this seemed entirely to have changed. The English, instead of being victorious, were now everywhere vanquished; Charles continued his conquest with great rapidity, and town after town submitted to him without a stroke.

He made an attempt upon Paris, but here indeed he failed; the regent, who was marching to the relief of Normandy, against the constable, Richmond, having managed matters so well there, that the Parisians continued firm to the English. However, Charles attacked the suburbs of St. Honorous, but was repulsed and the Maid wounded.

The duke of Bedford thinking it might be of service to him to have Henry crowned in France, the young king having been first crowned in England, went over to Paris in 1429, was crowned, and returned to England in January, 1432, being then ten years old.

The duke of Burgundy in 1430 laid siege to Compeigne. Here Joan was taken prisoner by the Burgundians, and at the earnest solicitations of the duke of Bedford, was delivered up to the English, who carried her to Roan, and after a long examination had her condemned and burnt for a witch, in May, 1431.

The duke of Burgundy, who had for some time manifested a coldness towards the English, now concluded a separate peace with king Charles. After this, the affairs of the English in France went rapidly to ruin; and to add to their misfortunes, the wise and valiant duke of Bedford died about the same time,

What is the probability? How did the war progress? What is said of Charles' attempt on Paris? What did the duke of Bedford now do? Where and when was the young king crowned? By whom was Joan taken prisoner? Where? When? What was done with her? What did the duke of Burgundy now do? What is said of the affairs of the English in France from this time? What added to these misfortunes?

who was in all respects one of the most accomplished princes in Europe. Paris fell into the hands of the French in 1436; and the same year the duke of Burgundy besieged Calais, but the duke of Gloucester forced him to raise the siege. Some time after, the duke of Burgundy made another attempt upon Calais, but to no purpose.

In 1437, Catharine of France, widow of Henry V., died. After the death of that prince she had married Sir Owen Tudor, a Welsh gentleman, by whom she had three sons, Edmund, Jasper and Owen. The eldest was created earl of Richmond, and married Margaret, only daughter of John Beaufort, duke of Somerset, grandson of John of Gaunt. From this marriage sprang Henry, earl of Richmond, afterwards king of England, under the name of Henry VII. From this time the war was carried on with much vigor on both sides, the French under the duke of Burgundy, and the English under the valiant Talbot, (afterwards earl of Shrewsbury) and the duke of York; sometimes one party prevailing and sometimes the other, until 1444, when a truce was concluded between the two nations, which was prolonged from time to time till 1449.

In 1445, king Henry married Margaret of Anjou, who was a woman of high spirit and a bold and enterprising genius, and who in a short time got the whole administration into her hands, so that she and her favorites managed the king, who was of a weak and easy nature and incapacitated to govern, as they pleased. This caused great uneasiness among the people, and contentions among the great men; and all things in England were running into confusion, by the ambitious and destructive measures of the queen and her ministers.

Whilst England was engaged in these intestine broils, Charles

What is said of the duke of Bedford? What is said of Paris? Of Calais? Who died in 1437? What is said of her? Of her sons? What was the consequence of this marriage? How was the war carried on? The result? What is said of a truce? When and whom did king Henry marry? What is said of the queen? The consequence?

was anxious to renew the war; and an accident gave him a handle to commence sooner than he had intended. This was the surprising of Fougères by the English, in 1448, whilst the truce subsisted; and the duke of Somerset, then regent, and the English ministry, refusing to give the satisfaction that Charles thought fit to demand, he took several places by way of reprisals, and then fell upon Normandy with four armies at once, the English having made no preparation for its defense. Roan opened its gates to the conquerors. Harfleur was besieged and taken, a body of English were defeated in the battle of Fourmigny, the duke of Somerset surrendered Caen; Cherburgh submitted; and, in short, all Normandy was reduced under the power of the French, before September, 1450. Guienne, the next year, followed the fate of Normandy, after having been three hundred years in the possession of the English.

Some time after, the inhabitants were disposed to throw off the yoke of the French and return to their old masters, and Talbot was sent over with some troops to support them in their design. But being overpowered by the French, he was defeated and slain, and all Guienne again submitted to the French in 1453; and nothing remained to the English of all their vast acquisitions in France, save Calais and Guisnes.

Thus, Henry lost France. We will now turn our thoughts to what was doing in England, which ended in the loss of his crown and life.

There were two parties in his court, one the duke of Gloucester's, the other the cardinal of Winchester's, with whom were joined Kemp, archbishop of York, and William-de-la-Pole, afterwards Marquis and duke of Suffolk. The duke of Gloucester

For what was king Charles anxious? What circumstance furnished him with a pretext for renewing the war? What did Charles do? Give an account of his expedition and success. When was this? What is said of Guienne? What were the inhabitants afterwards disposed to do? Who was sent to assist them? The result? What is said of the two parties in king Henry's court?

was exceedingly beloved by the people ; but the Cardinal got the better of him in the council and in the king's confidence, in which the duke of Gloucester lost ground every day.

Henry had so narrow a genius and so little judgment and penetration, that he was easily deceived by appearances ; and having no capacity himself to govern, was blindly led and governed by others. And the enemies of the duke of Gloucester, having artfully gained the ascendant over him, managed in such a manner as to make themselves odious to the nation, particularly in their shameful neglect of the French war. To secure themselves, therefore, against the people's resentment, they contrived the king's marriage as before mentioned, with a princess allied to the enemy of England. She had no sooner gone over to England than she joined her interest to that of the Cardinal, Suffolk, and the other sworn enemies of the duke of Gloucester, who had expressed his dislike of the match.

They now resolved to get rid of the duke ; and after first removing him from the council board, they summoned a parliament at St. Edmundsbury, which met in 1447. The duke coming to take his place, was arrested and closely confined upon the false charge of designing to kill the king and seize the crown. The next morning he was found dead in his bed, people having no doubt of his being murdered. The Cardinal survived him but about a month.

The queen and Suffolk now governed all in the king's name, and none but their creatures were employed in the administration. The universal hatred of the people against them, for their violent and arbitrary proceedings, and particularly for the murder of the duke of Gloucester, encouraged the duke of York to

What is said of the duke of Gloucester and the cardinal of Winchester? What is said of Henry? What did the enemies of Gloucester do? What did they do to secure themselves against the resentment of the people? What did the queen do? What did they resolve? What did they do? What is said of the duke's arrest and confinement? Of his death? What is said of the Cardinal? What is said of the queen and Suffolk? How were they regarded by the people?

think of asserting his claim to the crown ; which in all probability he would never have done, whilst he had a prince of that character to contend with.

In 1450, the Commons so vigorously pursued the duke of Suffolk, that the queen, in order to save him, found it necessary to have him banished. On his passage to France, being met by an English man-of-war, the captain, without any ceremony, ordered his head to be cut off. And so fell another principal author of the duke of Gloucester's murder. He was succeeded in the queen's confidence by Edmund Beaufort, duke of Somerset, almost as odious to the people as Suffolk had been.

The duke of York at first proceeded with great caution, by his emissaries and agents, privately sounding the inclinations of the people, and causing his right to the crown to become the subject of conversation, as heir, by his mother, of the house of Mortimer, descended from the duke of Clarence, third son of Edward III. and elder brother of the duke of Lancaster, as has been before mentioned.

To test the feelings of the people, he instigated one Jack Cade, under the name of John Mortimer, to raise a rebellion in Kent, where he drew together great numbers of malcontents, under pretense of reforming the government ; and became so strong that he encamped on Blackheath, cut in pieces a detachment of the king's army, and entered London, as it were in triumph, the city opening her gates to him. But the insurrection, which might have proved fatal under a more experienced leader, was soon at an end ; Cade was deserted by his followers, and at last taken and slain.

The court were very uneasy at the proceedings of the duke of

What encouraged the duke of York to assert his claims to the throne? What did the Commons do in 1450? The consequence? What is said of the death of Suffolk? Who succeeded him in the queen's confidence? What is said of him? How did the duke of York proceed? How was he descended? Who instigated a rebellion? Why? Who was the leader? Give an account of it. The result? How did these proceedings affect the court?

York, and used several precautions against them. All the arts that policy could suggest were made use of to entrap him, and it was with great difficulty he escaped the snare. At length, having concerted measures with his friends, especially Richard Nevil, earl of Salisbury, and his son of the same name, earl of Warwick, the war broke out between the two houses of Lancaster and York, the former having for their device the Red Rose, and the latter the White Rose; and torrents of blood were shed in this contest, which lasted for thirty years.

The first battle was fought near St. Albans*, in May, A. D. 1455, when the royal army was entirely routed, with the loss of five thousand men. The duke of Somerset and several other nobles and great men were slain, and the king himself taken prisoner. York affected to treat him with great respect, and was appointed protector of the realm, as he had been once before. But to gain the affection of the people and to show how disinterested he was, he left the king and queen at full liberty, the consequences of which was, he was again dismissed from the protectorship, and he and his friends

What did they do? Who were some of the friends of the duke of York? What war now broke out? What was the device of the house of Lancaster? Of York? What is this war called? How long did it last? Where was the first battle fought? When? The result? How did the duke of York treat the king? The consequence?

* This was the first of twelve pitched battles between the houses of Lancaster and York, which contest lasted thirty years, and cost the lives of eighty princes of the blood, and almost annihilated the ancient nobility of England. The places where the battles were fought were as follows:

Battle of St. Albans, 1455, won by the Yorkists; battle of Bloreheath, in Shropshire, 1459, won by the Yorkists; battle of Northampton, 1460, won by the Yorkists; battle of Wakefield, Dec. 31st, 1460, won by the Lancastrians; battle of Mortimer's Cross, 1461, won by the Yorkists; second battle of St. Albans, 1461, won by the Lancastrians; battle of Towton, 1461, won by the Yorkists; battle of Hexham, 1464, won by the Yorkists; battle of Banbury, 1469, won by the Lancastrians; battle of Barnet, 1471, won by the Yorkists; battle of Tewkesbury, 1471, won by the Yorkists; battle of Bosworth, 1485, won by the Lancastrians. In this battle Richard III. was slain and Henry VII. of the second branch, of the house of Lancaster, gained the crown.

retired from court. After this there was an apparent reconciliation between the parties, but as it was not sincere the quarrel soon broke out again.

In 1459, the earl of Salisbury defeated the king's troops commanded by Lord Audley, and killed 2,400, together with Lord Audley himself and all his principal officers. This battle was fought on Blore-Heath, in Shropshire, and was the second in this quarrel. The third was the battle of Northampton, fought in July, 1460, in which the earl of Marche, eldest son of the duke of York; the earl of Warwick, and the Lord Cobham, gained a complete victory, killing 10,000 of the royalists. The king was again taken prisoner, and the queen with the Prince of Wales fled to Durham, thence retired into Wales and afterwards into Scotland.

A parliament was then called, which the duke of York expected would offer him the crown. Being disappointed, he sent them a memorial justifying his claim. But all that the parliament did was to resolve that Henry should enjoy the crown during his life, after which it should devolve upon the duke of York and his heirs.

In the meantime the duke was absolute master of the government, and of the king's person, who giving himself up to his devotions appeared unconcerned at this turn of affairs. But the queen did not rest contented. She had drawn together in the north an army of 18,000 men. The duke of York marched against her with but 5,000, expecting his son, the earl of Marche, to join him. But before he could come up the duke was attacked by the queen's forces near *Wakefield*, in Yorkshire, in Dec., 1460, his army put to flight, he himself slain and his head fixed upon the walls of York, where the earl of Salisbury's soon accompanied it, he having been taken and beheaded

What is said of a reconciliation? Give an account of the second battle. The third. Give an account of the doings of parliament. What is said of the duke of York and the king? What did the queen do? Give an account of the next battle. The result?

at Pontefract. The young earl of Rutland, the duke's second son, about twelve years old, was taken in the flight and cruelly slain by lord Clifford.

Notwithstanding these discouragements, the earl of March resolved to maintain the quarrel, and did it with success. He first defeated Jasper Tudor, earl of Pembroke, at *Mortimer's Cross*, in Herefordshire, in 1461. And though the queen had gained an advantage over the earl of Warwick, at Bernard's Heath, near *St. Albans*, and freed the king, her husband, yet the earl of March coming up with an army, and being joined by the remains of the earl of Warwick's troops, she retired into the North, and the earl entered London, as it were, in triumph, in March, A. D. 1451, and was, by the management of the earl of Warwick, proclaimed king, by the name of Edward IV.

Here ends the reign of Henry VI., who, for a period of over thirty-eight years, was little more than the shadow of a king. He had no vices, but his natural weakness of mind rendered him unfit to govern.

Henry founded King's college, in Cambridge, and Eton college near Windsor.

It was about this time that the art of printing, being discovered by John Guttenburghen, in Germany, was brought into England by Caxton.

What is said of the young duke of Rutland? What did the earl of Marche resolve to do? Give an account of the next battle. What victory did the queen gain? Give an account of the battle. When did the earl of Marche enter London? How was he proclaimed? What is said of the reign of Henry VI.? Of his character? What institution did he found? What is said of the introduction of the art of printing?

THE HOUSE OF YORK.

(1461)

EDWARD IV.

(1483)

EDWARD, earl of Marche, son of Richard, duke of York, who was slain in the battle of Wakefield, was about nineteen years old when he was proclaimed king, on March 5th, 1461, in the following manner.

The earl of Warwick having drawn up his troops in St. John's Fields, and caused the people who came out to see them to form a ring, stood in the middle and asked them whether they would have Henry of Lancaster for king? They all cried *no! no!* He then demanded of them whether they would have Edward, son of the late duke of York, for their king? To which the whole multitude gave their assent by acclamation. This done he assembled a great council of the nobles and magistrates in and about London, who declared that the crown was devolved upon Edward, and accordingly made him an offer of it, which, with a great show of modesty, he accepted.

He was the first king of the house of York.

A few days after he was proclaimed king he marched with an army of 40,000 men against Margaret, whose army at the North was increased to 60,000. In a great battle in Yorkshire he gained a complete victory over the queen's army. Henry and Margaret, who staid at York to wait the issue of the battle, retired to Berwick and from thence to Edinburgh. Edward coming to York, took down the heads of his father and the

When and at what age did Edward IV. ascend the throne? What was the manner of it? What did the earl of Warwick next do? Of what family of kings was he the first. What did Edward do shortly after he was proclaimed king? Where was a battle fought and what the result? What did Henry and Margaret do? What did Edward next do?

earl of Salisbury, and caused those of the earl of Devonshire and some others he had taken in battle and beheaded, to be placed there. He then returned to London and was crowned.

Edward then called a parliament, which confirmed his title, and repealed all the acts that had been passed against the house of York. In this parliament the king created George, his oldest brother, duke of Clarence, and Richard, his younger brother, duke of Gloucester.

Queen Margaret having obtained assistance from Louis XI, of France, entered Northumberland, with Henry and the prince, her son, in 1463. The English in the northern parts and some Scots joining her, her army soon became very considerable. Lord Montague was sent by Edward to oppose Margaret, and meeting a detachment of the enemy, he attacked and routed them; and then marching on to Hexham, he surprised Henry in his intrenchments and obtained a complete victory. The dukes of Somerset, Ross and Hungerford were taken prisoners and beheaded, but Henry, Margaret and their son escaped and fled into Scotland.

Soon after this Edward concluded a truce with France, with the duke of Burgundy and with Scotland. Henry and Margaret, being deserted by those who were alone able to assist them, were in the utmost perplexity. Henry, fearing to remain in Scotland, went privately to England, hoping to conceal himself there until he should have an opportunity of escaping by sea, but being discovered he was seized, conducted to London and confined in the Tower. It is thought Queen Margaret with her son intended also to conceal herself in England, from a story related by Monstrelet, who says, that as they were traveling they fell into the hands of robbers, who would have killed them if their quarrel about sharing the booty had

What did Edward's first parliament do? What titles were given to George and Richard, the king's brothers? What did Margaret do? Whom did Edward send to oppose her? The result? What became of Henry and Margaret? What truces did Edward now conclude? What became of Henry? Relate the story of Margaret and the robbers.

not given them an opportunity to escape into the woods. Whether the story of this adventure be true or not, Margaret, after leaving Scotland, went over with the young prince to France.

Edward now having no enemies to oppose him, confiscated the estates of the Lascastrians who refused to make their submission by a time prefixed, and bestowed them on his friends.

In 1464, the king sent the earl of Warwick to demand for him in marriage, Bona, of Savoy, sister to the queen of France, who actually concluded a treaty with the king of France for that purpose. While this affair was negotiating, Edward fell in love with Elizabeth, daughter of Sir Richard Woodville, and widow of Sir John Grey, and privately married her. Immediately Sir Richard Woodville, the queen's father, was created earl of Rivers, and soon after made treasurer and high-constable of England; and Anthony Woodville, his son, was married to the richest heiress in England.

These things were attended with very ill consequences. The marriage itself, so much below the dignity of a king, was disagreeable to the nation; and the favors heaped on the queen's relations, raised the jealousy of the nobles, and particularly of the duke of Clarence, the king's brother. And what was still worse for Edward, the earl of Warwick, provoked at the affront put upon him by this marriage, when he had just concluded one in France, became Edward's enemy, and as he had set him on the throne, he was resolved to use his utmost efforts to pull him down. He began at once to form his projects for dethroning Edward, but was obliged to keep it a secret until he thought himself in a condition to attempt it. In the meantime he withdrew from court and was almost forgotten.

Where did Margaret go after leaving Scotland? What did Edward next do? Where and on what errand did Edward send the earl of Warwick? What was the result? Mention the circumstance of Edward's marriage. What of the promotion of the Woodvilles and the consequences? What did the earl of Warwick resolve to do?

It was not till the beginning of the year 1469, that the earl commenced the execution of his project. He first gained over his two brothers, the archbishop of York and the marquis of Montague, and not long after found means to engage the duke of Clarence, his son in law and brother of the king, in the plot. This confederacy being formed, before they declared themselves openly, they stirred up an insurrection in Yorkshire.

The king imagined that some of the friends of the house of Lancaster had set these commotions on foot, and did not in the least suspect the earl of Warwick and his brother. He ordered Herbert, earl of Pembroke, to draw together what forces he could and march against the malcontents. The two armies met in Oxfordshire, where a battle was fought, in which Pembroke was defeated, and being taken, was beheaded by the rebels together with Sir Richard Herbert, his brother.

There was another insurrection in Northamptonshire, where the malcontents went in a tumultuous manner to the house of the earl of Rivers, the queen's father, seized and beheaded him.

The king not suspecting Warwick and his brother, gave them a commission to levy troops in order to oppose the rebels. They made use of this commission to raise forces, but instead of acting against the rebels, they declared for them. The king hereupon marched against them in person, and when the two armies came near each other, while a negotiation was on foot, in order to an accommodation, Warwick attacked the king's camp unawares, took the king prisoner and placed him under the custody of the archbishop of York. This was in 1470. Warwick now considered his success certain. But he soon

When did the earl enter upon the execution of his project? How did he commence? What did the confederates first do? Did the king suspect Warwick and his brother of the plot? Whom did Edward order to march against the malcontents? What was the consequence? What of an insurrection in Northamptonshire? Whom did the king commission to raise forces? What did they do? How was Edward taken prisoner? How was Warwick soon surprised?

learned to his surprise that Edward had bribed his guard, escaped and had actually arrived in London, which the earl had taken no pains to secure, not apprehending such a turn to affairs.

Both parties now prepared for war. The king attacked Sir Robert Wells, near Stamford, routed his whole army and put them to flight, with the slaughter of 10,000 men; and Wells himself was taken and beheaded. This action was called the battle of Lose-Coat-Field, the Lincolnshire men throwing off their coats in order to run away the faster.

Warwick and Clarence, hearing of this defeat, retired to France to concert new measures. They waited on King Louis, who promised them aid. They thought it necessary, also, to enter into an alliance with queen Margaret, to restore Henry, as that would be the best pretense for dethroning Edward; and thus mutual interests made the queen and Warwick friends, between whom there had before existed the greatest enmity.

Edward, in the meantime, feeling himself secure, followed his pleasures, to which he was much addicted.

Louis having furnished the earl with troops and money, he set sail with Clarence and landed at Dartmouth. His army soon increased to 60,000. He forthwith proclaimed Henry VI. and marched in pursuit of Edward, who fled, embarked and took refuge in Holland. Warwick entered London in triumph, in Oct. 1470, and immediately repairing to the Tower, released King Henry, after a six years' imprisonment, who was proclaimed on the 14th as again ascending the throne. Thus the earl restored Henry, whom he had before deposed to set up Edward, and was on these accounts commonly called the *King maker*.

Give an account of a battle near Stamford. What was this action called? What effect did the news of this defeat have upon Warwick and Clarence? What was their next move? In the meantime how was Edward employed? Mention the circumstances of Warwick's landing at Dartmouth and the restoration of Henry VI. What is Warwick called, and why?

A parliament was now called, which, according to the salutary principle by which we have seen that those assemblies acted, of always siding with the strongest, voted Edward a traitor and usurper, confiscated all his estate and annulled all the acts made in his reign. They also declared all those to be rebels and traitors who had borne arms in defense of Edward's pretended right. Thus this parliament undid all that Edward's parliament had done.

The duke of Burgundy, to whom Edward had fled for protection, having furnished him with some ships, money and a small body of men, Edward set sail and landed at Ravenspur, in Yorkshire. He was received but coldly at first, and pretending he was only come to claim his own private estate, he took only the title of duke of York, and solemnly owned Henry for his sovereign. When he came to York, the magistrates refused to open their gates to him, but upon his promising not to hurt the city, and that he would continue faithful to King Henry, they admitted him. His army greatly increasing, he resolved to march towards London.

In the meantime Edward had privately won over his brother, the duke of Clarence, who had promised to desert Warwick whenever he could do it with advantage, and he was now as good as his word. The two brothers joining their forces, marched directly for London, leaving Warwick behind at Coventry, expecting Clarence to come and join him. Upon the news of Edward's approach, the inhabitants were determined to receive him, and he entered the city April 11th, amidst the loud acclamations of the people; and Henry, after a seven months' phantom of a reign, was sent again to the Tower.

Edward being again upon the throne, his next business was to subdue the earl of Warwick. He therefore put himself at

Give an account of the doings of a parliament now called. What did Edward next do? Mention the circumstance of his landing and his reception in York. What did Clarence do? What of Edward's entrance into London? What became of Henry? What did Edward next do?

the head of his army and advanced to meet the earl, who was marching towards London. They met at Barnet, near St. Albans, where a dreadful battle was fought, April 14th, which began in the morning and continued till noon, both sides fighting with the greatest obstinacy and resolution, till Warwick's army, overpowered by numbers, was put to rout, the earl himself and the marquis of Montague, his brother, being slain.

Queen Margaret, with Prince Edward, had just arrived from France. This princess, who had hitherto shown the utmost firmness of mind amidst all changes of fortune, was so surprised at the news of this fatal blow that she fell into a swoon, and abandoning herself to grief and despair, took sanctuary at the abbey of Beaulieu, in Hampshire. But the duke of Somerset and earl of Pembroke persuaded her to try her fortune once more, and putting her son, the Prince of Wales, at the head of the army, a considerable force was soon raised.

The king, acquainted with these proceedings, losing no time, attacked them before the earl of Pembroke, who had been raising forces in Wales, could join them; and coming up to them at Tewkesbury, he entered their camp and routed them with a terrible slaughter. The queen, the prince of Wales and the duke of Somerset were taken. The last was beheaded. Prince Edward, then eighteen years old, was murdered in cold blood by the dukes of Clarence and Gloucester, the earl of Dorset and the lord Hastings; at least, in their presence. Queen Margaret was imprisoned in the tower, where she remained till 1475, when she was ransomed by Louis XII. for fifty thousand crowns.

The battle of Tewkesbury, which was the twelfth in the quarrel between the *Two Roses*, was soon followed by the murder of the unfortunate king Henry VI., in the fiftieth year of his

Give an account of the battle between Edward and the earl of Warwick. What was the effect of the news upon queen Margaret? What was queen Margaret at last persuaded to do? Give an account of the battle of Tewkesbury? What became of prince Edward? Queen Margaret? By what was the battle of Tewkesbury soon followed?

age. Edward thinking he should never be at peace while that prince was alive, resolved at last to sacrifice him to his own security. The duke of Gloucester, it is said, stabbed him with his own hand in the tower.

Jasper Tudor, earl of Pembroke, hearing of the defeat at Tewkesbury, and thinking it in vain any longer to oppose Edward, embarked with the earl of Richmond, his nephew, for France; but being driven upon the coast of Bretagne, were detained there by the duke. Edward was very anxious to have the earl of Richmond delivered into his hands, as he was the only prince left of the house of Lancaster who could lay claim to the crown. The duke delivered the earl into the hands of the English ambassadors, when learning that Edward's design was to sacrifice him, he got him away from them just as they were about to embark. Thus the earl was preserved, who was one day to ascend the throne of England.

Edward being now firmly seated upon the throne, negotiated truces and alliances with foreign princes and states, in which he was very successful.

Edward wished to punish Louis XI. for assisting queen Margaret; and entering into an alliance with the duke of Burgundy, he made great preparations, raised an army and marched into France, where a peace was settled between the two monarchs, and Edward returned to England.

The king, not content with his severity on the Lancastrian party, completed the tragedy in the year 1478, by the death of his brother, the duke of Clarence. The king was never reconciled to him for joining with the earl of Warwick to dethrone him, though he was afterwards mainly instrumental in restoring him to the throne.

The duke was haughty, ambitious and self-willed, and had

Give an account of Henry's murder. Give an account of the escape of the earl of Richmond. How was Edward now employed? What alliance did Edward next form? Why did Edward wish to punish Louis XI.?

made the queen his enemy, and the duke of Gloucester, brother of Clarence and the king, joining with the queen and others of Clarence's enemies, spared no pains in making the king believe that Clarence was a person dangerous to his crown and life. His death was at last resolved on, the manner of which was somewhat extraordinary; for it is said he was drowned in a butt of Malmsey wine.

Edward now gave himself wholly up to pleasures, which were so profuse that they were more expensive than war itself, and caused him to extort money from his subjects by very cruel methods.

The Scots, at the instigation of Louis, broke the truce with England in 1481, and made an irruption into the borders, when they were driven back by the duke of Gloucester, who obliged king James to keep the truce and restore Berwick, which queen Margaret had given up. This treachery of Louis opened Edward's eyes, who now resolved upon a war with France, but in the midst of his preparations he was seized with a violent fever and died April 9th, 1483, in the forty-second year of his age, and twenty-third of his reign.

If we consider under what circumstances Edward ascended the throne, how he recovered it after he had lost it, and that he was victorious in every battle where he fought in person, we must admire his good fortune. But he is blamed by all for his cruelty and for his breach of faith of which he was many times guilty. The murder of king Henry, and the Prince of Wales, his son, as well as of his own brother, the duke of Clarence, can never be remembered without horror, however it may be apologized for by reasons of state, in which honor and conscience are seldom regarded.

Give an account of the death of Clarence, the king's brother. How did Edward now occupy himself? At whose instigation did the Scots break the truce with England? What did Edward resolve on? When did he die? At what age? What was the character of Edward IV.?

He was one of the handsomest men in Europe. He had a noble mien, a free and affable deportment, and an undaunted courage.

By his queen, Elizabeth, he had three sons and eight daughters, of whom one son and two daughters died in infancy. His sons who survived him were, Edward, Prince of Wales, who succeeded him, and Richard, duke of York.

King Edward was a great encourager of trade, particularly of the woolen manufacture.

Several men, famous in their professions, flourished in his reign, particularly Thomas Littleton, judge of the Common Pleas, and John Fortescue, judge and chancellor of England. In the last year of king Edward, Thomas Parr was born in Shropshire, whom we shall hereafter find remarkable for his great age, in the reign of Charles I.

(1483)

EDWARD V.

(1483)

This prince was twelve years old when his father died; upon which he was immediately proclaimed king, though he was never crowned. He bore the royal title but two months and twelve days; which can hardly be called a reign, as it was wholly taken up with the artifices of his uncle, the duke of Gloucester, to deprive him of the crown, and place it upon his own head; in which he but too well succeeded, through such a series of artful wiles and cunning dissimulation, and such horrid violence, cruelty and injustice, as can scarce be paralleled.

The state of the court before, and at young Edward's accession, tended very much to forward the project of the duke. The queen by her influence over the late king, had secured the pro-

What of his family? Mention some distinguished persons who lived during the reign of Edward IV. In what year and at what age did Edward V. ascend the throne? How long did he bear the royal title? How was this time taken up? How did he succeed? What tended much to favor the duke of Gloucester's project?

motion of all her relations and favorites to titles and honors, which occasioned the most invidious distinctions between the old and the new nobility. The latter bore all the sway at court, and the former were by degrees banished from thence; all, except Henry Stafford, duke of Buckingham and the lords Stanley and Hastings, who were hearty friends of Edward IV., though they had no respect for the queen.

The duke of Gloucester, to keep in favor with both parties in his brother's life time, publicly made his court to the queen, but in private joined with the old nobility, particularly Buckingham, Stanley and Hastings.

Immediately, upon Edward's death, a contention arose between the two parties, which should be masters of the young king's person and consequently of the government. The queen, in order to secure her power, wished to keep him in the hands of her relations. The ancient nobility were for rescuing him from them, that they might by that means remove the queen and her relatives, from the government.

The young king was at Ludlow with his uncle, Anthony Woodville, earl of Rivers. The queen, jealous of the designs of her enemies, wrote to him to raise a body of forces for conducting the new king to London, in order to be crowned. The duke of Gloucester being then at York, Buckingham and Hastings sent to him immediately, to acquaint him with the queen's proceedings, earnestly pressing him to take measures for getting the young king into his hands, as the government of the realm rightly belonged to him during the minority. He wrote back, desiring the two lords, with others of their friends, to meet him at Northampton, in order to confer together as to what was proper to be done.

The effect of the queen's influence? Which party bore sway at court? What course did Gloucester pursue? How did the first contention arise? What did the queen wish? The ancient nobility? Where was the young king? What did the queen do? Buckingham and Hastings? What answer from Gloucester?

Here it was agreed that he should try to persuade the queen to order the earl of Rivers, her brother, to disband his forces. Accordingly he found means to represent to her in such a manner the inexpediency and dangerous consequences of the measure she was taking, how it would excite the jealousy of the nation, that she was prevailed upon to write to her brother to dismiss his troops, which he did, and set out with the king for London, attended only by his domestics.

When they came near Northampton, the dukes of Gloucester and Buckingham, who had brought a number of armed men into the town, went out to meet the king, and paid him all the respect due to his dignity.

They also caressed the earl of Rivers, till the scheme they had formed for that purpose succeeding, they caused him to be arrested, together with the lord Gray, the queen's son by her former husband, and sent them prisoners to Pontefract, under the custody of Sir Richard Ratcliff, the governor, who shortly after, by the order of the duke of Gloucester, caused them to be beheaded.

Having now the king in their hands, they conducted him to London, paying him all due respect as they went along. He entered the city amid the loud acclamations of the people, the duke of Gloucester riding before him bareheaded; after which he was lodged in the bishop's palace.

The duke then summoned a great council to settle the government during the king's minority, which, consisting of the old nobility and the dukes friends, soon declared him protector, both of the king and kingdom.

The queen with the duke of York, her other son, and the rest of her family, had taken sanctuary in Westminster Abbey. The protector could not proceed to his grand design without

What was agreed upon? How did he succeed? What did Gloucester and Buckingham do when they arrived at Northampton? State how they treated Rivers and Gray. What did they do with the king? What did the duke next do? What did the council do? What became of the queen and her family? The next object of the protector?

getting the young duke also into his hands, which he effected by means of the archbishop of Canterbury, who was sent to persuade the queen to deliver him up.

She at first refused, being justly apprehensive of the protector's designs; but at last, being told that force would be made use of if she did not comply, she parted with him after the tenderest caresses, never to see him more. When the protector saw him he ran to, and embraced him, feigning the utmost affection, and brought him to the king, who was overjoyed to see his brother. Soon after, he lodged them both in the Tower, from whence the kings used formerly to proceed to their coronation.

The duke of Gloucester now thought himself in a condition to pursue the main object of his ambition, and of protector, to make himself king. To this end he communicated his thoughts first to Buckingham, who readily entered into the design. Some other trusty friends were then let into the secret, who held frequent consultations with the duke.

The lords Hastings and Stanley were not of this number, though they had hitherto joined with the duke, not thinking that he designed to proceed any further. Hastings had hitherto been very serviceable to him, but as he was known to have a great affection for the late king's children, though he hated the queen, it was resolved either to win him over or dispatch him in the usual way.

One Catesby, a confidant of his, was employed to sound him at a distance, by occasionally introducing a discourse about state affairs, and then telling him how people talked of the duke of Gloucester's right to the crown, upon a report that Edward IV. himself and all his children were illegitimate; for the protector had taken care to spread such a report.

How did he accomplish this? What did the protector do when he saw him? Where were they soon after lodged? What did Gloucester now think? To whom communicate his thoughts? Why were not Hastings and Stanley of this number? What was determined on in regard to Hastings? What course was pursued?

Hastings, not suspecting Catesby, discovered to him his mind, and expressed himself with the utmost warmth in favor of Edward's children. Catesby betrayed him, and his death was resolved on.

The time fixed for the coronation was June 22d, but the protector put it off to Nov. 2d. His main object in this was to gain time to give some plausible color to his pretensions among the people. To this end, as has been said, the children of Edward IV. were to be deemed illegitimate, on pretense of his being engaged to another lady before he espoused Elizabeth Woodville.

The Lord Hastings in the meantime knew nothing of Catesby's treachery, and came without any fear to the council, which the protector had assembled in the tower on purpose to have him dispatched. The protector came in at nine in the morning, very cheerful and complaisant to all the lords. He then withdrew, and in about an hour afterwards returned, biting his lips and knitting his brows, as if some great matter disturbed him. He was silent for a few minutes, but at last broke out on a sudden, and asked them "What they deserved who had plotted against his life?" Lord Hastings made answer that "they ought to be punished as traitors." "Well, then," replied the protector, "it is that sorceress, my sister-in-law, (meaning the queen,) and her accomplices." Then stripping his left arm and showing it to the council, almost withered and dried up, (though every one knew it had been long in that condition,) he said, "see what that sorceress and Shore's wife have done by their witchcraft, and they would have done the same to the rest of my body if God's mercy had not prevented them." Hastings, whose mistress Jane Shore had been, since the death of Edward, said, "if they are guilty of such a crime they ought to be punished." "What," says the protector, "dost thou answer me

What result? What time was fixed for the coronation? Why was it deferred? What report was circulated? Why? Was Hastings aware of the treachery? What did he do? What was the conduct of Richard in council?

with *ifs* and *ands*? I tell thee they have plotted against my life, and thou thyself art accessory to their crime." As he spoke, he struck the table with his hand and presently a number of armed men rushed in and arrested Hastings for high treason.

In the confusion one of the soldiers struck at Lord Stanley with a battle-ax, but he escaped by getting under the table. However, he was arrested, together with the archbishop of York and the bishop of Ely, they all being firmly attached to the young king.

The protector was so impatient to have Hastings executed that he swore he would not dine till he had seen it done. Accordingly he was beheaded on a log of wood before the Tower-chapel, there not being time to erect a scaffold.

Jane Shore was brought before the council as an accomplice with Lord Hastings, where she pleaded her cause so well that they did not think fit to condemn her. She was however condemned in the bishop's court to do open penance in St. Paul's church, in a white sheet, with a wax taper in her hand.

The king's friends now being all dead, or in prison, or effectually terrified by the late severe proceedings, the protector and Buckingham deemed this to be the crisis for putting their design into execution. Accordingly they caused to be spread more than ever the illegitimacy of Edward's children. And the protector having before gained Sir Edward Shaw, mayor of London, he got his brother, Dr. John Shaw, a popular preacher to preach a sermon from the Apocryphal text, "Bastard slips shall take no deep root." But the principal point was to gain the citizens, and to lose no time, the duke of Buckingham, in an eloquent speech, harangued the mayor, aldermen, common council and principal citizens. He enlarged on the

Give an account of the death of Lord Hastings. What of Jane Shore? What was the condition of the king's friends at this time? What did the protector and Buckingham next do? What was the main point to be gained? How was this managed?

objections against Edward's children, and the noble qualities of the duke of Gloucester, as the only legitimate son of the duke of York, whom he recommended for their king, and in the end desired them to declare their minds. Every one stood amazed, and there was a profound silence. The duke repeated the substance of his speech in other words, but to no better effect. Finally the recorder was ordered to speak to the people, who merely repeated the substance of the duke's speech.

The duke then demanded their positive answer, whether they would have the duke of Gloucester for their king or no? when some of the duke's servants, pressing in, cried out "Long live King Richard;" who being joined by some citizens that were bribed, and the rabble without doors, the cry became pretty strong, "King Richard," "King Richard."

The duke of Buckingham, affecting to take it for granted that this was the sense of all the people, went the next day with the mayor, aldermen, and others of the cabal, to the protector to offer him the crown. He appeared exceedingly surprised, as if he had known nothing of what had passed, and feigned a great reluctance to complying with their request, but at last suffered himself to be prevailed upon, and on June 19th accepted the crown, as though it were the desire of all the people of England.

And thus ended the farce.

(1483) RICHARD III. (Surnamed Crook-back.) (1485)

The duke of Gloucester having thus accomplished the end he had in view, was proclaimed king, June 20th, 1483, by the name of Richard III., and was crowned, together with his queen, on the 6th of the following month.

What was the effect of Buckingham's speech? What was the Recorder ordered to do? What did Buckingham then demand? What the result? What was done the next day? How did Richard appear when the crown was offered him? When and how did he accept the crown? When did Richard III. ascend the throne?

In the meantime, he appointed lord John Howard Earl-Marshal, and created him duke of Norfolk; his son, Thomas Howard, earl of Surrey; William Berkley, earl of Nottingham; and the lord Lovel, one of his chief confidants, viscount Lovel, on whom he likewise conferred the office of Chamberlain. He also released from confinement the Archbishop of York and lord Stanley.

Richard enjoyed the crown which he had obtained by such unjust and cruel methods but two years and two months; which whole time was spent by him in contriving methods to support himself on the throne; and by his enemies in plots and conspiracies to pull him down; in which they at last succeeded, and at the same time deprived him of both life and crown.

He first resolved to dispatch his two nephews, the young king and his brother the duke of York. This was done soon after his coronation. The two innocent children were still in the tower, the government of which had been given to Sir Robert Brackenbury. Richard chose to be absent from London when the horrid design was executed, that he might be less suspected; so he set out with the duke of Buckingham to visit several counties. Having arrived at Gloucester, he sent orders to Brackenbury, to put the two young princes to death.

Brackenbury, more conscientious than Richard imagined, humbly asked to be excused. Upon which he sent him a written order, by Sir James Tyrrel, requiring him to deliver up to him, the said Tyrrel, the keys and government of the tower for one night only. Brackenbury obeyed, and Tyrrel brought in two ruffians whom he had hired to perpetrate the horrid act. In the night, when the princes were asleep, they entered the

What appointments did he make? Whom release from confinement? How long did Richard enjoy the crown? How was this time spent? How did his enemies succeed? What did Richard first resolve to do? Where was Richard when the plot was executed? What orders did he send to Brackenbury? What did Brackenbury do? Next order?

chamber, and rushing upon them, smothered them both in their bed, and then buried them under the stair-case.

From Gloucester, king Richard set out for the north, to quell some disturbances there, and arriving at York, was crowned a second time. At the same time he created Edward, his son, prince of Wales, who was then ten years old.

Having rid himself of his nephews, and taken measures for renewing foreign alliances, Richard now thought himself secure. But at this very time, a conspiracy was forming which though unsuccessful at first, in the end completed his ruin.

The duke of Buckingham, who had been the chief instrument in placing Richard on the throne, was at the head of this conspiracy. He thought himself neglected by Richard, or, at least, not rewarded according to the service he had done.

Buckingham retired from court exceedingly disgusted, and meditating nothing but revenge, and soon began to concert measures with Morton, bishop of Ely, his prisoner in Wales, how to dethrone the usurper, whom he had so lately set up.

The scheme they settled upon was to place Henry, earl of Richmond, upon the throne. In this project they were sure of having all the friends of the house of Lancaster on their side, Henry being the only relic of that family. And in order to engage the Yorkists, it was thought necessary that Henry should promise to marry the princess Elizabeth, eldest daughter of Edward IV.

The next business was to send a messenger to acquaint the countess of Richmond with their design; who heartily engaged in it, and found means privately to impart it to the queen dowager, who readily gave her consent that Henry should marry

Mention the circumstances of the murder. From Gloucester where did Richard go? What was done at York? What did Richard now think? What was forming at this time? Who was at the head of it? Why did Buckingham engage in the conspiracy? What did Buckingham first do? What scheme was settled upon? What expect from the Lancastrians? How manage to engage the Yorkists? How did the countess of Richmond act? How did the queen dowager do?

her daughter. They then engaged their most trusty friends in the plot, and these drew in others ; which indeed was no difficult matter, as the usurper was universally hated by the nation.

The countess then informed the earl, her son, who was then in Bretagne, of what was being done in his favor, and invited him to England. The duke of Bretagne promising to assist him, he sent word to his mother that he would be in England in October.

Though the conspirators took all imaginable care to conceal their plans, Richard had some intimation of a plot, and suspecting Buckingham, ordered him to court, but he peremptorily refused to go, declared against the king, and took up arms, and drawing together the forces he and his adherents had privately enlisted in Wales, he marched towards the western counties, where the earl of Richmond designed to land. But a dreadful inundation of the Severn stopped his passage, and his whole army dispersed, and he being left with but a single servant, went and concealed himself in the house of one Barrister, to whom both he and his father had been great benefactors. But upon Richard's publishing a proclamation offering a reward for apprehending him, he was betrayed by Barrister, and soon after beheaded.

About this time the earl of Richmond appeared on the coast of England, and came near falling into the hands of his enemies ; but he luckily escaped and sailed back to Normandy, and from thence returned to Bretagne to wait a more favorable opportunity.

In the meantime, Richard proceeded with great severity against the conspirators, putting many to death ; among others,

What was the next step of the conspirators? What did the countess next? What his reply? Had Richard any intimation of the plot? Whom did he suspect? What order did he give to Buckingham? What did Buckingham do? What misfortune befel Buckingham? How was Buckingham betrayed? Relate the adventure of the earl of Richmond. How were the conspirators treated?

Sir William Collingburn, a Wiltshire gentleman, was hanged, drawn and quartered, for writing the following satirical rhyme on Richard and three of his favorites :

“ The *Cat*, the *Rat*, and *Lovel* the dog,
Rule all England under a *hog*.”

Alluding to Catesby, Ratcliff, and Lovel, who bore a *dog* for his arms, as one of Richard's supporters was a wild *boar*.

The storm having thus in appearance blown over, Richard thought fit to call a parliament ; which being wholly devoted to the king's interests, scrupled not to declare the issue of Edward IV. illegitimate, to confirm Richard's irregular election, and recognize his pretended right to the crown. They next passed an act of attainder against the earl of Richmond and his adherents. Some good statutes were passed by this parliament for the better administration of justice, and for abolishing a late imposition which had been practised in Edward IV.'s reign, and had been very grievous to the subject, under the name of benevolence.

The king now, for his greater security, confirmed an alliance with Portugal, and concluded a truce with Scotland.

But notwithstanding all his precautions, he was still apprehensive of fresh troubles from the earl of Richmond. That prince had many English lords with him who had escaped after the late disappointment, and who assured him that the nation were in general his friends ; and the duke of Bretagne promised to continue his assistance. But here he was soon in danger. For the duke being old and infirm, his prime minister, Landais, now governed all in his name, and made himself so odious to the nobility and people, that to support himself against them he sought foreign assistance, and thought he might receive it from Richard on condition of delivering the earl of Richmond into

Relate the circumstance of Sir William Collingburn? What did Richard next do? Give an account of the doings of this parliament? What did Richard next? What apprehensions did he still have? Why? How was the earl of Richmond like to have been betrayed?

his hands. Nothing could be more agreeable to Richard, and a negotiation was carried on between this hated king and equally hated minister, for this purpose.

In the meantime, the earl knew nothing of this, but the bishop of Ely, who had made his escape, had spies about Richard, and advised the earl of his danger. Upon which he escaped and repaired to the court of Charles VIII., king of France.

Not long after this, Landais, for his insolent proceedings, met with his deserved reward on a gibbet.

The earl was kindly received by Charles, who promised him assistance, not so much out of regard to him as to cause new troubles in England.

Richard had intelligence that some plot against him was on foot in England but could not discover by whom. After a time he learned that the movement in favor of the earl was chiefly grounded on his having promised to marry the princess Elizabeth. To prevent this, therefore, he resolved to marry her himself. In order to do this, by various plausible pretenses, particularly by promising to secure the crown to the princess after his death, as the Prince of Wales was now dead and he had no other child, he so wrought on the queen-dowager that she delivered her five daughters into his hands.

Richard next contrived to get rid of his queen, Anne, daughter of the great earl of Warwick, and widow of Edward, son of Henry VI. It is not known whether she died of grief from his ill treatment or was poisoned.

Richard now made his addresses to the princess, his niece, but found her absolutely inflexible. In the meantime, growing every day more odious, many lords and gentlemen went over to the earl of Richmond and tendered him their services; and

How was he apprised of his danger? How escape? What was the fate of Landais? How was the earl received by Charles VIII.? What intelligence did Richard now receive? What did he discover? How strive to prevent it? What means try to accomplish this? Who was Anne, Richard's queen? What of her death? What did Richard now do? What success? Who went over to the earl?

those who staid at home only waited for an opportunity to declare against him. Richard had also impolitically laid up his fleet in the spring, 1485, at which time he thought himself secure from danger.

All circumstances thus concurring, the earl set sail from Harfleur on the 31st of July with 2,000 men, obtained in France. On the 6th of August he landed at Milford Haven, and marching towards North Wales, was joined by a considerable body of Welsh troops. In a short time he arrived at Shrewsbury, where Sir George Talbot brought him an aid of 2,000 men. Lord Stanley and his brother, Sir William, raised forces apparently for the king, but had given private assurance to the earl that they would join him at a proper opportunity, which they did, after the two parties were engaged, and were by that means the chief cause of the earl's success.

Richard, having heard of the earl's landing, ordered all his forces to be drawn together at Nottingham, resolving to go in person and fight him. And the earl being no less desirous of deciding the quarrel at once, resolved to go and meet Richard.

The two armies met near Bosworth, in Leicestershire, and the battle was fought August 22d. The earl of Richmond was at first in danger of being worsted, when lord Stanley joining him with 5,000 men, and his brother 2,000, the king's army was entirely routed, after a fight of two hours, in which he gave signal proofs of his valor and courage. In the heat of the battle, seeing the earl, he rode furiously to attack him, and killed Sir William Brandon, the earl's standard bearer, who stood in his way, and threw Sir John Cheney to the ground, who had taken his place. When he saw the day was lost he

What of those who staid at home? What about Richard's fleet? When did the earl of Richmond sail? With how many men? Where did he land? By whom was he joined? What aid did the earl receive at Shrewsbury? From whom had the earl assurances of assistance? Upon news of the earl's landing what did Richard? What did the earl resolve on? Where did the armies meet? Give an account of the battle. What of Richard's conduct in the battle? Of his death?

rushed into the midst of his enemies and was slain. Sir Richard Ratcliff was also slain; and the perfidious Catesby, being taken prisoner, was executed at Leicester.

Thus fell King Richard, aged about thirty-four years, who, excepting his unjustifiable methods to get and keep the crown, was a good king. He took good care to suppress vice and promote sobriety and virtue, and had a great regard to the due administration of justice, where his crown was not concerned.

He was a man of splendid abilities, which would have made him a truly great man if they had been rightly applied. His boundless ambition made him aspire to the crown, and it was for that, that he was guilty of all that treachery, dissimulation and cruelty which justly renders his memory detested.

He was really crook-backed, from whence he had his *surname*.

His crown being discovered by a soldier, was brought to lord Stanley, who set it on the earl of Richmond's head and saluted him king.

Richard was the last king of the Plantagenet race, who had swayed the sceptre ever since Henry II.

What became of Ratcliff? Of Catesby? What was the age of Richard? His character? Whence his surname? What was done with Richard's crown? By whom? Of what race of kings was Richard the last? From what time had they reigned?

THE TUDOR FAMILY.

(1485)

HENRY VII.

(1509)

HENRY, earl of Richmond, was the son of Edmund Tudor, earl of Richmond, and Margaret Beaufort, daughter of John Beaufort, duke of Somerset, son of John Beaufort, earl of Somerset, an illegitimate son of John of Gaunt, duke of Lancaster, fourth son of Edward III., by Catharine Swineford, his mistress, afterwards his wife.

The children of John of Gaunt, by Catharine, were legitimated by act of Parliament, by the name of Beaufort, in the reign of Richard II., but with the express exception that "neither they nor their issue should succeed to the crown."

Though Henry's title to the crown, as being heir of the house of Lancaster, was liable to many exceptions, yet he chose to make that alone the foundation of his claim. He therefore delayed his marriage with Elizabeth of the house of York, whose title was deemed better than his, till the parliament should have adjudged him the succession, that he might not seem to be beholden to her for his right; and he resolved to be crowned before parliament met, to prevent their entering into any debates about his title. Nevertheless, to please the nation, whose intent was that the two houses should be united by that marriage, to prevent the shedding of more blood, he renewed his oath to marry that princess, who was the eldest daughter of Edward IV., and sent for her to London, where Richard had confined her.

When did Henry VII. ascend the throne? Trace his descent from Edward III. How were John of Gaunt's children by Catharine legitimated? What excepted? On what title did Henry rely? Why? Till what time did he delay his marriage? What did he resolve on? What did he do to please the nation? Who was his wife?

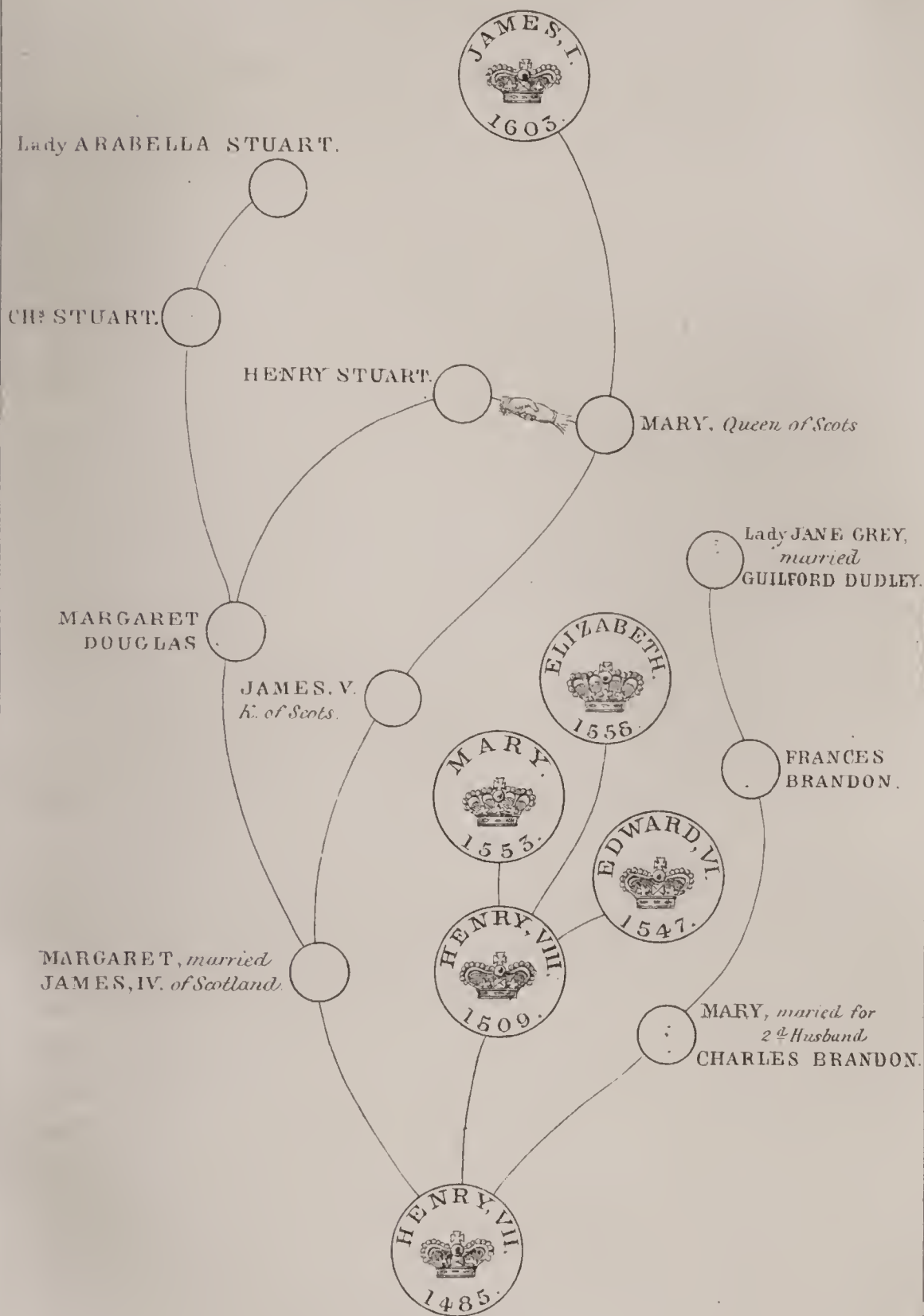


Plate illustrating the Tudor Family and the descent of the Stuarts from Henry, VII.

Henry hated the house of York, of which there was one male branch still living, who was Edward Plantagenet, son of the unfortunate duke of Clarence, brother of Edward IV. He therefore ordered him to be conducted to the tower.

To reward some of his chief friends he made his uncle, Jasper Tudor, earl of Pembroke, duke of Bedford; the lord Stanley, his father-in-law, earl of Derby; and Sir Edward Courtney, earl of Devonshire.

An extraordinary kind of distemper raged at this time in England, called the sweating sickness, because it threw persons into a profuse sweat, and carried them off in twenty-four hours. It continued for six weeks and swept away great numbers of people. Two mayors and six aldermen of London died of it in eight days.

Henry was crowned Oct. 30th, 1485, in about two months after the battle of Bosworth. At this time he appointed a band of fifty men to attend him, called *yeomen of the guard*. No king of England ever had them before, and all kings and queens have had them since.

Parliament met in November and passed an act, "That the inheritance of the crown should rest, remain and abide in the king and the heirs of his body." Thus they did not question his title. However, he procured a bull from the pope confirming this act of succession, wherein he took care to have all his titles mentioned, viz.: his descent from the house of Lancaster, his marriage with the princess Elizabeth, his victory at Bosworth, and the act of Parliament.

Parliament next reversed the attainders of those who had taken part with the king when only earl of Richmond. But the king himself had been attainted in the late reign, which

How did Henry feel toward the house of York? Was any male of that house alive? Who? What order did he give in relation to him? What appointments did he make? Give an account of an extraordinary sickness. When was Henry crowned? What did he appoint? When did parliament meet? What did they pass? What other precaution did Henry take? What titles were enumerated? Next act of parliament?

was a more difficult affair. The judges however unanimously resolved, "That the crown takes away all defects and stops in blood, and that from the time the king assumed it the fountain was cleared."

An act of attainder was then passed against the late king and his adherents. The forfeited estates brought the king immense sums. Henry next published a general pardon to all who should come in and take oaths to them by a prescribed time.

Though Henry had a mortal hatred to the house of York, yet for his oath's sake and to please the nation, his marriage was consummated, to the great joy of the people, who expressed more satisfaction on that occasion than at the king's entry or coronation. This exceedingly mortified Henry, and he treated his queen with great coldness and indifference as long as she lived.

In the spring of 1486, Henry, being on a journey north, was informed when he came to York that lord Lovel had raised a rebellion in those parts. This alarmed the king, who was unprepared for such an event. He however sent the duke of Bedford with such forces as could be raised in haste, first offering the rebels a pardon, provided they would lay down their arms. Lovel, fearing they would accept this offer, retired and concealed himself, when all his troops submitted to the king's mercy.

On Sept. 20th the queen was delivered of a prince, who was named Arthur, in memory of the famous British monarch, from whom Henry boasted that he was descended.

The Yorkists who assisted in raising Henry to the throne, did it purely out of hatred to the person and government of Richard, and with a view to unite the two houses by Henry's

How was the king's attainder removed? What act of attainder was then passed? What did Henry publish? What about Henry's marriage? What mortified Henry? How did he treat his queen? What rebellion did Henry discover? How was it quelled? Why did the Yorkists assist Henry to the throne?

marriage with the princess Elizabeth. Upon this they expected to be treated with the same favor as the Lancastrians; and those that desired the good of the nation hoped that henceforward all distinctions would cease between the two parties. Henry, however, was unhappily in another way of thinking, and he therefore not only behaved with great coldness toward the queen, but on all occasions showed his aversion to the whole York party, looking upon that house as his rivals. This was the source of most of the troubles of his reign.

A rumor being raised that the duke of York, one of Edward's sons, was yet alive, having escaped his uncle's cruel design, the people readily showed their disposition by eagerly swallowing this false report. This gave occasion to Richard Simon, a priest, to set up one Lambert Simnel, a baker's son, and student under him, and impose him upon the world for the said duke. Simnel was a good-looking young man, of quick wit and forward genius, and easily learned his part. However, a report being soon spread that the earl of Warwick had escaped from the tower, which, though false, caused great joy among the people, Simon now judged it best to instruct his pupil to personate that earl.

The first scene was laid in Ireland, where the people were generally zealous in favor of the house of York. The people were transported with joy at the earl of Warwick's arrival, and at once acknowledged him for their sovereign. He was accordingly proclaimed, at Dublin, king of England and lord of Ireland, by the name of Edward VI.

The course pursued by Henry on this occasion caused the Yorkists to dislike him the more. Whether he suspected the queen, his mother-in-law, widow of Edward IV., to have a

How were they disappointed? What did the people hope? How did Henry treat the queen and the Yorkists? What rumor was now raised? Give an account of Simon and Simnel. What other report was soon raised? What did Simon now do? Where was the first scene laid? How did the people receive Simnel? How was he proclaimed? What was Henry's course and the effect of it?

hand in the plot or no, he caused her to be confined, and seized all her estate. He pretended he did this because she had delivered her daughter into Richard's hands. However, she remained in confinement as long as she lived.

Another method the king took to disabuse the people was to show the true earl of Warwick publicly to them. Accordingly he was conducted through the streets of London, carried to St. Paul's church, and then carried back again to the tower.

The plot having thus succeeded in Ireland, those who favored it in England were not idle. Among the rest the earl of Lincoln, son of a sister of Edward IV., went over to Flanders to concert measures with the duchess of Burgundy, another of Edward's sisters, and a mortal enemy to Henry and the house of Lancaster. She readily agreed to furnish the pretended king with 2,000 German veterans, who, in May, 1487, arrived in Ireland, under the command of Martin Swart, with the earl of Lincoln and the lord Lovel.

They then with their new king and the German and Irish forces went over into England, expecting the people to rise in their favor, but they were disappointed, the English not liking to receive a king from the Irish and Germans.

In the meantime Henry had prepared to receive them; and having drawn his forces together he fell upon them, and after a sharp engagement of three hours totally routed them. The new Irish king, now plain Lambert Simnel again, was taken prisoner with the priest, his master. Henry gave Simnel his life, employed him first about his kitchen and then made him one of his falconers, in which post he remained till his death. The priest was imprisoned and never heard of again.

Henry was now furnished with a favorable opportunity to replenish his coffers, a thing he was ever immoderately fond of,

What other method did the king take? Who in England engaged in the plot? What was done? Why did the English refuse to join them? Give an account of a battle between Henry and the Dutch and Irish troops. What became of Simnel? Of the priest? What did this furnish Henry with?

by fining and confiscating the estates of divers persons, on pretense of their favoring the late conspiracy.

The state of the public mind was such that Henry thought it necessary to have the queen crowned, which ceremony was performed on the 25th of November, almost two years after the marriage.

Charles VIII., king of France, had invaded the duchy of Bretagne with a view of subduing it and annexing it to his crown. The duke of Bretagne demanded succors from England, but the king of France desired Henry to assist him or stand neutral. Henry, therefore, only offered his mediation between the parties, and while Charles was amusing him with embassies and negotiations, he was pursuing his conquests.

Henry did not care to engage in any foreign war while his affairs were unsettled at home. He was willing, however, to turn the affair to his own private advantage, covetousness being with him a ruling passion; and in this he succeeded. By representing the danger of the ruin of Bretagne and the necessity of engaging in its defense, he obtained a large subsidy from his parliament, which done, he kept the money and contented himself with treating with the king of France about an accommodation. Some time after, he concluded a truce with Charles and left him at full liberty to pursue his conquests.

The duke of Bretagne, seeing no prospects of assistance, sued for a peace, which Charles granted only till it should be for his interest to break it, lest Henry should at last open his eyes and send the duke some aid for the next campaign.

The duke of Bretagne dying, his sister Anne succeeded him, and Henry made a show of assisting her, and entered into a

What did the state of the public mind induce Henry to do? When was the queen crowned? How long after her marriage? What was the condition of affairs between Charles VIII., of France, and the duke of Bretagne? To whom did each apply for assistance? What course did Henry pursue? What was he unwilling to do? What was he willing to do? How did he raise money? What did he do with it? How was he engaged with Charles? What did he conclude with Charles? What did the duke of Bretagne do? The consequence? Who succeeded the duke of Bretagne?

treaty with her to send her 6,000 men. His design was only to get more money from France. He sent the duchess those succors for only eight months, and was to be repaid all his expenses on that account with interest.

Believing that Charles now wanted peace, as dreading the alliance of England with Bretagne, he demanded of him the arrears of the pension which Louis XI. had obliged himself to pay to Edward IV., and even talked of endeavoring to recover Guienne and Normandy, and the whole kingdom of France, which, he said, of right belonged to him. But by carrying matters so far, Charles perceived that he only intended to frighten him, and so continued his project in relation to Bretagne, in which he at last succeeded.

In 1491, Charles besieged the duchess Anne, in Rennes, who sent ambassadors to Henry to demand immediate help, otherwise Bretagne would infallibly be lost. Henry pretending to be in a great hurry to send her some effectual aid, borrowed money of his subjects under that color. But it soon appeared that he was much more intent on borrowing the money, than assisting the duchess.

In the mean time, the siege of Rennes going on but slowly, Charles thought of a speedier and a pleasanter way of accomplishing his design upon Bretagne. This was to demand the young duchess in marriage. The consent of the duchess was soon obtained, and the marriage concluded in December, 1491; the consequence of which was, Bretagne was united to the crown of France.

Henry feigned displeasure at this proceeding, and made preparations for invading France, and under this pretense obtained a benevolence from parliament, and actually passed over to Calais with a large army and besieged Bologne. All

What did Henry agree by treaty to do? His object? What claims and pretensions did he set up in regard to France, &c.? The consequence? What pretext did Henry next have for raising money? How were the affairs between Charles and the Duchess finally settled? The consequence? What did Henry next do?

this was done after Charles had sent ambassadors to propose a peace, and Henry had actually consented to treat about it. Charles desired by all means to avoid a rupture with England, being wholly intent on the conquest of Naples. But it was necessary to bring Henry off with honor, so the two kings went hand in hand in the business. Henry's expedition was a blind, and the siege of Bologne only a pretense.

While before that place, the articles of the peace agreed upon were brought to him; but to save appearances, he desired the opinions of his lords and general officers, who agreed that he ought to accept of them, and gave their reasons at large. And so the treaty was signed: the king of France, who wanted peace, agreeing to pay 620,000 crowns of gold for the debt his queen had contracted for the defense of Bretagne, and 125,000 crowns for the arrears of the pension above mentioned. Thus by the affair of Bretagne, which ended so unhappily for England, considering what the parliament had given him, and this profitable settling of accounts, Henry got a great deal of money, but very little honor.

In June this year, (1492) prince Henry was born, who in process of time succeeded the king his father. The same year is likewise memorable as being the year in which Christopher Columbus discovered America.

A new prétender now appeared upon the stage, who had been trained up under the duchess of Burgundy to play the second Simnel. This was Peter Peterkin, or Perkin Warbeck, son of a converted Jew, who had lived for some time in London.

Perkin was of noble mien and aspect, and of excellent wit and parts; and had lived long enough in England to be master of the language. He was instructed to personate the duke of

What had been done before this? Why did Charles wish to avoid a rupture with England? How was the matter arranged? What was Charles to pay Henry in settlement of the terms of peace? What did Henry get in the affair of Bretagne? Mention two remarkable events of the year 1492? Who now appeared upon the stage? Under whose instructions? Give an account of him.

York, (son of Edward IV.,) whom the duchess had industriously given out was still alive.

The young impostor acted his part so well, that many believed him to be the person he pretended to be; and others joined in the plot either from a dislike to king Henry or the desire of novelty. His first appearance was in Ireland. He landed at Cork and immediately gave out that he was the duke of York, and was readily received as such.

The king of France hearing of this, sent for him to his court, and when he had arrived he treated him as the duke of York, lodged him in his palace, and appointed him a guard. This was before Charles had concluded the peace with Henry; and when he began to be sure of a peace with the king of England he sent Perkin away, lest Henry should make the delivering of him up, one of the articles of the treaty.

Perkin immediately repaired to Flanders to the duchess' court, pretending he had never seen her before; and she feigned great surprise that he should have the assurance to call himself the duke of York. But they both acted their parts so well that when he was examined before the court, his answers were so pertinent, that she pretended that she was thoroughly convinced, owned him for her nephew, and gave him the title of the White Rose, the device of the house of York.

The news of this caused great excitement in England. Many favored the plot, who were friends of the house of York, or disgusted with Henry; particularly Sir William Stanley, to whom the king in a great measure owed his victory at Bosworth, the lord Fitz Walter, Sir Robert Clifford, Sir Simon Montfort, Sir Thomas Thwaites, and William Barley.

The king, to stifle these rumors, first examined witnesses concerning the duke's death; but their depositions were not much

How did Perkin act his part? What was the effect upon the people? When did he first appear? What do? What did king Charles do? Why did he send Perkin away? What did Perkin next do? Relate the circumstance of his examination at court and the effect? How was the news received in England?

regarded. Next, by means of good spies, Henry learned the whole story of Perkin's birth, life and actions, and published it to the world.

To take care of Ireland, where the duke had many friends, he sent Sir Edward Poynings thither as his deputy in 1494, who holding a parliament, a famous act was passed, called Poynings' law, whereby all the statutes of England relating to the public were to be in force in Ireland.

King Henry having won over Clifford, had perfect information from him of Perkin's friends in England, some of whom were apprehended and put to death. Notwithstanding these discouraging circumstances, the duchess of Burgundy was resolved that Perkin should do something, after all the pains she had taken to train him up. So in 1485, she ordered some forces to be drawn together, with which he embarked, and arrived on the coast of Kent and landed some of his men to see how the people stood affected. The Kentish men took up arms as if to assist Perkin, and then falling upon those who had landed, cut them in pieces, except about 150, who, being taken, were all hanged by order of the king. Perkin sailed back to Flanders.

Perkin soon after landed in Ireland, but not finding things favorable he retired into Scotland, to the court of James IV., who gave him an honorable reception, owned him publicly for the duke of York, and gave him in marriage Catharine Gordon, daughter of the earl of Huntley, his relative. He twice invaded England and published a proclamation, wherein Henry was called usurper, tyrant and murderer. But the English army advancing to give him battle, and the people not rising in his favor, he retired to Scotland.

How did the king stifle these rumors? Whom did he send to Ireland? What was a famous law which was passed, called? What was it? What did Henry learn from Clifford? What was done with some of Perkin's friends? What did the duchess resolve on? Relate the circumstance of his landing? The consequence? What did Perkin next do? How did James IV. receive him? Whom give in marriage? Circumstance of his invading England?

In March, 1496, the king granted to John Cabot and his sons a patent to go on the discovery of new lands in America.

In 1497, the king having obtained from parliament a subsidy to enable him to revenge the late insults of the Scots, it was levied with great rigor. This caused an insurrection in Cornwall, which was put down by the king's army, some 2,000 being killed.

Henry's subsidy for the Scotch war was as usual, so much money in his pocket, as peace was soon settled between him and king James.

King James would not deliver up Perkin, but at their own desire sent them into Ireland before the conclusion of the treaty. The Cornish rebels induced Perkin once more to try his luck, promising him assistance; and landing in Cornwall he soon found himself at the head of 3000 men. He published a proclamation assuming to be a king, by the name of Richard IV. He failed, was taken prisoner, was examined as to his life and actions, and his confessions published to the world. After an unsuccessful attempt to escape, he was lodged in the tower.

He had not been there long before he plotted an escape, together with the unfortunate earl of Warwick, who was now but twenty-four years old, and had been a prisoner ever since the beginning of this reign, for no other cause but Henry's jealousy. The king was pleased that the earl was in the plot, as it furnished him a pretense to take him off, as he was the only male left of the house of York. It was generally thought that Henry himself had so laid matters, as to draw the poor earl into the snare. However, he now resolved to get rid of them both; Perkin Warbeck was hanged, and the earl of Warwick beheaded on Tower Hill in November, 1499.

What patent did Henry grant in 1497? For what purpose did parliament grant the king a subsidy? How was it levied? The consequence? How was this quelled? What of the subsidy for the Scotch war? Did James deliver up Perkin? Where did he go? What do? How taken? Where confined? How were Perkin and the earl of Warwick detected? Why was the king glad to find the earl in the plot? What was generally thought? What was done with them?

The death of this unhappy prince brought a great odium upon the king; but his excuse was, that Ferdinand of Arragon had declared he would never consent to marry his daughter Catharine to prince Arthur while the earl of Warwick was alive. A poor excuse indeed for such a crime!

In 1500, the plague raged terribly in England, particularly in London, where 30,000 died of it. King Henry went over to Calais with his family, to stay till the fury of it should abate.

In 1501, Catharine of Spain, daughter of Ferdinand and Isabella, arrived in England; and her marriage with Arthur prince of Wales, was solemnized soon after. We shall hear much of this lady in the following reign. The prince died about five months after his marriage, in the seventeenth year of his age. And shortly after the king created Henry, his second son, prince of Wales, who, upon his father's death, succeeded to the crown.

Elizabeth, Henry's queen, died in 1503. At this time the king grievously oppressed his subjects, by means of two infamous ministers, Empsom and Dudley, two lawyers, who to humor the king and fill his coffers, were guilty of such violent extortions and arbitrary measures to obtain money from the people as were never before known, and spread universal terror over the nation.

The avarice of Henry prompted him to project a marriage between Catharine, his son Arthur's widow, with his other son, Henry, rather than part with that princess' dowry, which was 200,000 crowns of gold. Ferdinand agreed to it; a dispensation was obtained from the pope, and Prince Henry espoused his

What was the effect of the earl's murder upon the people? What was Henry's excuse? What of the plague in 1500? When did Catharine of Spain arrive in England? Whom did she marry? When did the prince die? What title was given Henry's second son? How did Henry oppress his subjects? Tell about Empsom and Dudley. What did the avarice of Henry prompt him to do?

brother's widow, but the marriage was not consummated till he came to the crown.

The king's eldest daughter, Margaret, was about the same time married to James IV., of Scotland; from this marriage descended James I.

King Henry died of consumption, April 22d, 1509, in the fifty-second year of his age and twenty-fourth of his reign.

Henry VII. was feared by his subjects, but not beloved, and this is not to be wondered at, since all his views centered in himself, and he cared for nothing but to keep his crown and heap up money. With regard to the former he was always successful, by his good fortune or policy, ever getting the better of his enemies. And as to the latter he had a wonderful sagacity in making everything turn to his advantage. Ambition, glory, love, pleasures, all gave place to this governing passion, the love of money.

His avarice and caution lost him a favorable opportunity of heightening the glory of his country. Christopher Columbus made him the first offer of whatever advantages might accrue from his discoveries, on condition of obtaining vessels and equipments for the undertaking.

His love of peace was not owing to his want of courage, but the fear of emptying his coffers. He had great abilities, but they had only himself for their object; and towards the end of his reign he affected to govern with almost absolute sway.

He had four sons and four daughters, of whom one son, viz., Henry, his successor, and Margaret and Mary alone survived him.

It was during this reign that the passage to the East Indies, round the Cape of Good Hope, was discovered.

Was this marriage consummated? When? Whom did Margaret, the king's eldest daughter, marry? From whom was James I. descended? When did Henry die? At what age? His character? What were his two ruling passions? What with regard to the former? What as to the latter? What did he lose by his avarice and caution? Farther as to his character? His family? What other important discovery during this reign?

(1509)

HENRY VIII.

(1553)

Henry VIII. ascended the throne April 22d, 1509, at the age of nineteen years, and in his person united the two houses of Lancaster and York.

The king's first act made him very popular, which was to make an example of the two hated ministers, Empsom and Dudley, who had been the instruments of the late king's unbounded avarice. For this purpose they were summoned before the council, and, after examination, were committed to the tower till the meeting of Parliament, when an act of attainder was passed against them, and they were soon after beheaded on Tower-Hill, to the satisfaction of all the people.

In the meantime, the business of the king's marriage with Catharine of Arragon, widow of his brother Arthur, was debated in council. Some were opposed to the consummation of the marriage, as contrary to the law of God; others were of another opinion, and their reasons prevailing, the marriage was solemnized in June, and the coronation of both king and queen took place on the 24th of the same month. A few days afterward, Margaret, mother of Henry VII., died.

About this time, Fox, archbishop of Winchester, introduced to court, Thomas Wolsey, a clergyman, as a fit person to serve the king. He was a butcher's son at Ipswich, was educated at Oxford, and had been chaplain to the late king. The king first gave him the office of almoner. How he afterwards rose to be prime minister, and to a greater degree of power than ever any subject had before, will be seen in its proper place.

The parliament met in January, 1510, whose chief business,

When and at what age did Henry VIII. ascend the throne? In whom were the houses of Lancaster and York united? What was the king's first act? How was this accomplished? How did this please the people? What was debated in council? What were the different views as to this marriage? When did the marriage take place? The coronation of the king and queen? When did Margaret, mother of Henry VII., die? Who was introduced to court about this time? What is said of Wolsey? When did parliament meet? What was their chief business?

besides the attainder of Empsom and Dudley, was to alter some statutes, and so explain them as to prevent, for the future, any such abuses as those ministers had been guilty of.

Though Henry had just concluded a new treaty of alliance with Louis, of France, yet Pope Julius II., and Ferdinand, the Catholic king of Arragon, the queen's father, to serve the views of their own private ambition, used all their arts to engage him to take part in the Italian war, and join with them and the Venetians in their league against Louis. The inducement held out was the recovery of Guienne, formerly taken from the English, in which they promised to assist him. But their design was to use him as a tool, by causing him to make a diversion in France, while they should drive the French out of Italy and accomplish their own separate views.

The king being young and not much versed in politics, and having a great ardor for glory, was easily drawn in. In the meantime he minded little else than his pleasures and diversions, which Wolsey was very subservient to him in, and which were so extravagant that he soon squandered away the immense amount of money which his father had with so much anxiety hoarded up.

Ferdinand's view was to become master of the kingdom of Navarre, and to use his son-in-law, the king of England, to bring it about; for which the conquest of Guienne was only a blind. This and this only could induce Henry and his council to concern themselves in the pope's and Ferdinand's quarrel with France.

By a treaty which was concluded in 1511, Henry was to send over 6,000 troops for the attempt on Guienne; and Ferdinand, for the same purpose, obliged himself to furnish 6,000. Accordingly, in the spring following, the English forces were transported

How was Henry induced to join a league against Louis, of France? What was the design of Julius II. and Ferdinand? What plan was proposed? What is said of the king? Of Wolsey? What was Ferdinand's object? What treaty was concluded 1511? The terms of it? What did the English forces do?

under the command of the marquis of Dorset, in order to join those in Spain. But Ferdinand contrived by every artifice to put off the attack on Guienne till he had first made himself master of Navarre, which he soon effected, while the English troops served to favor his design.

Ferdinand afterwards offered to join the English and march into Guienne, when he knew that the French had so posted themselves as to render the attempt impracticable.

Thus Henry helped to promote the pope's and Ferdinand's projects, the former, by keeping Louis at home and hindering him from maintaining his conquest in Italy, and the latter by giving Ferdinand an opportunity of conquering Navarre.

Though Henry saw plainly enough how he had been imposed upon, yet he suffered himself to be drawn into another league against France, by the pope, the emperor Maximalian and king Ferdinand, who all had their separate views and made use of Henry to bring them about. Pope Leo X., who succeeded Julius II., was only concerned to keep the French out of Italy. The emperor's view was to hinder Louis from assisting the Venetians against him; and Ferdinand's sole aim was to prevent his disturbing him in his new acquisitions in Navarre.

To answer all these purposes, by raising troubles in France, there was none so proper as the king of England, who had an eager thirst for glory and conquest. More than this, their design was to draw money from Henry, under color of supporting the league, which they knew he was able and would be willing enough to bestow.

By the treaty the emperor was to receive from the king of England 100,000 crowns of gold to defray the charges of the war, which he never intended to engage in. Having drawn Henry into making such preparations that he could not go back,

What did Ferdinand do? What did Ferdinand offer to do? How did Henry promote the pope's and Ferdinand's projects? What other league was Henry drawn into? Who succeeded Julius II.? What was the object of Leo X.? What was the emperor's views? What was Ferdinand's aim? What other design had they? What were the terms of the treaty?

and having their own ends answered by busying Louis in affairs at home, they left the king of England to carry on the war by himself, which he was forward to do, to let the world see that he could do without them.

The war between England and France began at sea, where the French gained some advantages. But Henry's affairs went much better by land, where, if we regard the success only, he made a glorious campaign. Having sent most of his troops before him to Calais, he himself arrived there in June, 1513. In August, he laid siege to Terouenne; here the emperor came to the camp and served under him, receiving 100 crowns a day for his pay, designing, by this show of honor he did king Henry, to make some amends for his breach of faith. The duke of Longueville approaching with the French army to relieve Terouenne, Henry went out to meet him, and an action had no sooner commenced, than the French, falling into confusion, fled with the utmost precipitation. The principal officers, disdain- ing to follow so shameful an example, were taken prisoners, among whom was Longueville himself.

This rout was merrily called the *battle of Spurs*, because the French made more use of their *spurs* than their swords. Terouenne surrendered, and Henry laid siege to Tournay, which also surrendered in about a week.

Wolsey attended the king in this expedition. Soon after his introduction to court by bishop Fox, he was made privy counselor. In this situation, his whole study was to gain the ascendant over the young king. This he effected by joining to the utmost diligence and application in all business affairs, an unlimited compliance with all the king's humors and passions;

How did they leave Henry? How did the war between England and France begin? What is said of Henry's first campaign? When did he arrive in Calais? What did Henry do in August? What did the emperor now do? Give an account of a battle? What is this battle called? Why? Consequence of this battle? What is now said of Wolsey? How did he gain such ascendancy over Henry?

Wolsey would laugh, sing and dance, and do many other things not very becoming and suitable to his character as clergyman. These servile compliances, and at the same time his extraordinary talents, had such an influence over the king, that he made him his prime minister, and gave himself up absolutely to his direction. Wolsey had the address to make Henry believe that he was consulting his interests, when in fact he was only studying his own.

By such means Wolsey became a most powerful subject, and was courted and flattered not only at home but by foreign princes, who all knew what an influence he exerted with the king. The absolute sway of this minister lasted many years; during which time he controlled all the king's affairs, both foreign and domestic, and did not fail to discover on all occasions, his intolerable haughtiness, ambition, revenge and ingratitude, even to his best friends.

The king returned to England in October; in the meantime his army under the earl of Surrey had been no less successful against the Scots, than that commanded by himself in person had against the French.

It was a principle with the Scots, whenever the English invaded France, to make a diversion in England in favor of their old and constant allies, the French. It was both their interest and their disposition to do so, and the French never wanted pensioners in the Scotch council to set the matter forward. Accordingly, when Henry was in France, James IV. broke through all his alliances and invaded Northumberland with an army of 60,000 men and took several places. Henry, expecting something of this kind, had made preparations to meet it before he departed for France.

To what office was he promoted? What did Wolsey become? How did he exercise his power? When did Henry return to England? What was the success of the English against the Scots? What policy did the Scots frequently pursue? What did king James IV. do when Henry was in France? Was Henry prepared for this?

Accordingly, the earl of Surrey engaged this Scots army at Flodden, and after a most obstinate and bloody battle, in which several thousands were killed on both sides, gained a complete victory. The Scotch king was never seen after this battle, and it is supposed that he fell in it. Many persons of note fell upon both sides.

After the death of James IV., Margaret, his queen, sister of Henry VIII., married Archibald Douglas, earl of Angus. She had been declared regent during the minority of her son, James V., then scarce two years old; but lost the regency upon this marriage, which proved the source of much trouble and confusion in Scotland.

In 1514, Wolsey, the prime minister, was made bishop of Lincoln, and administrator of the See of Tournay; and a little after was promoted to the archbishoprick of York.

The war with France lasted but one single campaign. Louis XII. treated privately with Henry about a peace, by means of the duke of Longueville, who was taken prisoner in the *battle of spurs*; and in order to facilitate the business, demanded in marriage the princess Mary, the king's sister, who had been contracted to Charles of Austria.

Henry was not averse to a peace upon reasonable terms; and seeing plainly that the pope, the emperor and the king of Spain, had only made a tool of him, and drawn him into the war purely to serve their own ends, under the specious pretense of glory to God and the good of the church, and then left the whole burden of it upon him, was disposed to drop them in his turn, and make a separate peace with Louis. A peace was therefore concluded between the two monarchs, by three several treaties, signed August 7th, 1514; one of which regarded

What is said of the battle of Flodden? Was the Scotch king afterward heard of? What is supposed? Whom did James' queen, Margaret, afterwards marry? What is said of Wolsey in 1514? How long did the war with France last? What is said of a treaty? Was Henry disposed to peace?

the marriage between Louis XII. and the princess Mary, who was accordingly conducted with a splendid retinue to Abbeville, and the nuptials solemnized in October.

Louis dying in less than three months after the marriage, the duke of Valois succeeded him, by the name of Francis I. About two months after Louis' death, the queen dowager took for her second husband Charles Brandon, duke of Suffolk.

Henry was soon involved in new troubles by means of his favorite Wolsey, by whom he was wholly governed. Francis was very desirous of having Tournay restored to him, and the affair might perhaps have been adjusted between the two kings if the consequence of the restitution of Tournay had not been the restoring of its bishop, and Wolsey's losing the administration of that see, and the rich Abbey of St. Arnaud. Francis perceiving what stood in the way, in order to gain Wolsey, promised to procure him a cardinal's hat, and actually obtained one from pope Leo X. who had made up with Francis.

This extremely gratified the *pride* of the ambitious primate; but then his *revenge* must be also satisfied. Francis had taken his steps to have the bishop of Tournay restored. Wolsey did not forgive him, notwithstanding the late favors he had received. He prevailed upon his master privately to assist the emperor against Francis, not doubting but that it would end at last in an open rupture, the consequence of which he hoped would be, his keeping of the see of Tournay.

However, being afterwards of another mind, upon the affairs of Europe taking a different turn, and being gained by presents and a promise from Francis of an annual pension in lieu of the bishopric, he had the address to induce king Henry to do what he had before artfully prevailed on him to oppose; so that Tour-

What were the conditions of the treaty? Who succeeded Louis in France? Whom did Louis' widow marry for her second husband? Who was Louis' queen? What new troubles was Henry involved in? What was Francis desirous of? How did he proceed? How did this affect Wolsey? Did Wolsey forgive Francis? What did Wolsey do? What hope? How and why did he change his mind?

may was in 1518 restored to the French king for 600,000 crowns, which he obliged himself to pay to the king of England.

After Wolsey was made cardinal, he became more vain, haughty and imperious than ever. His pride was increased by being promoted by the king to the chancellorship.

In 1516, queen Catharine was delivered of a princess named Mary, who was afterwards queen of England.

About the same time died Ferdinand king of Arragon, and left to his successors the title of Catholic, which the king of Spain bears to this day.

At about this time, the Christian princes being disposed to peace, some of them contemplated forming a league against the Turks; and the pope, to encourage this crusade, or rather perhaps, to enrich himself, dispatched his indulgencies for a plenary remission of sins, into all Christian countries, and appointed collectors to receive the money to be paid for them. They were publicly set to sale, after a most scandalous manner, and even gamed for at taverns; and the benefit of them was to extend to the very dead, who were immediately to be released from purgatory upon the payment of so much money by their relatives.

Upon this, Martin Luther, a professor of divinity in the university of Wirtemberg, began to write against this sale of indulgencies; then against the indulgencies themselves; and afterwards against the pope's authority in general, and some of the corruptions of the church of Rome.

This gave rise to the reformation, which in a short time prevailed in many parts of Germany and several other states. Luther was powerfully supported against the pope and his other enemies by the elector of Saxony, his sovereign.

The consequence? What was Wolsey's conduct after being made cardinal? What princess was born in 1516? When did Ferdinand of Arragon die? What title did he leave? What league was now contemplated? How did the pope encourage this? What is said of the sale of indulgencies? What is said of Martin Luther? To what did this give rise?

After the death of Maximalian the flames of civil war were again kindled in Europe, occasioned by the contest between the emperor Charles V. and Francis, king of France. Wolsey was now courted by both Charles and Francis, because they knew that whoever gained him would of course gain his master. The emperor prevailed, and Henry joined with him against Francis.

What chiefly attached Wolsey to the cause of the emperor was his promise to help him to the popedom, to which he earnestly aspired. Francis indeed had promised to assist him in obtaining it, but Wolsey thought Charles, now that he was emperor, most capable of doing it.

About this time King Henry wrote a book against Luther, entitled "of the Seven Sacraments," in which he defended indulgencies, papal authority, &c. This was presented to Pope Leo X., who, for this service done the church, bestowed on Henry and his successors, the title of *defender of the faith*. This title being afterwards confirmed by parliament, the kings of England have borne it ever since.

The same year was remarkable for the invention of muskets, first used in the war between the emperor Charles and the king of France.

Luther wrote an answer to the king's book, in which he used no more ceremony than he had done towards the pope. Leo X. dying soon after the king's book was presented, Wolsey left no stone unturned to get himself chosen pope. But here his ambition met with a disappointment. The emperor did not keep his word with Wolsey, but managed matters so dexterously with the cardinals, that he got cardinal Adrian, who had been

How was Luther supported? What civil war broke out in Europe? How was Henry drawn into it? Why did Wolsey support the cause of the emperor? What book did Henry write? What is said of it? What did he receive for this service? What is said of this title? When were muskets invented? When first used in war? What book did Luther write? What is said of it? How was Wolsey disappointed?

his tutor, elected, believing that he would be entirely devoted to his interests.

Though this affair was managed with the utmost secrecy, yet Wolsey could not but see that the emperor was concerned in Adrian's election. He however concealed his resentment, as he was not without hopes he would remain his friend at the next vacancy, which by reason of Adrian's age and infirmities was likely soon to happen, as it actually did in less than two years. But he had the mortification to be again disappointed. The emperor had no more regard to his interests than before, and the cardinals chose Julio de Medicis for pope, who took the name of Clement VII.

The war between the emperor and Charles broke out in 1521. Most of the powers of Europe were concerned in it; but it is not my purpose to relate the particulars of this war further than may be necessary to show the part that England took in it. Henry joined with Francis. Wolsey was full of resentment against the emperor for having twice deceived him in the affair of the popedom, and in all probability helped by degrees to turn Henry against him.

The cardinal, as may well be supposed, was no great friend to parliaments; he therefore took several bold steps towards accustoming the king to govern without them. He had imposed a general tax on the nation, by the king's sole authority, for supporting the league against France. And now, to make good the engagements the king had entered into, in favor of France, he issued orders in the king's name, for levying a sixth part upon the goods and estates of the laity, and a fourth upon those of the clergy.

This threw the whole nation into a ferment, and had like to have caused a rebellion. The king, to pacify the people, by

What did Wolsey hope? Was he again disappointed? How? When did the war break out between the emperor and Charles? What is said of it? With whom did Henry join? Why? What did Cardinal Wolsey undertake? What tax did he impose? What was the consequence? What course did Henry adopt to pacify the people?

proclamation disavowed these orders, and proceeded to raise the money under the specious name of a *benevolence*, which was in effect doing the same thing in a more artful manner: for all who did not voluntarily comply were to be forced into these *free gifts*.

The king, finding how the people stood affected in the matter, thought fit to declare that he had no hand in these proceedings to raise money, and so left the whole blame to fall upon the cardinal.

This disposition of the king encouraged several other complaints against his minister, at which the king was so highly incensed that Wolsey was in danger of being quite out of favor. But he found means to pacify the king, and still kept his ground in his affections, though the affair served a little to clip the wings of this haughty overbearing minister.

By one of the articles of the treaty between Henry and Francis, Henry renounced for himself and successors all right and title to the crown of France; and in consideration whereof, Francis obliged himself and successors to pay a pension to Henry's successors, of 50,000 crowns yearly forever.

The war, which had proved unfortunate to Francis, ended in 1529. In 1527, an affair was set on foot which engaged the attention of all Europe, and was very remarkable in itself as well as in its consequences, chiefly, as it accidentally opened a way for the reformation in England. This was the divorce of King Henry from his queen, Catharine. She was the widow of his brother Arthur. Henry had been married to her eighteen years, and had had three children by her, one of whom, the Princess Mary, was living.

But he at length affirmed he had some scruples of conscience

What did Henry find it necessary to do? What encouragement did Wolsey's enemies receive from this? The effect? What is said of the treaty between Henry and France? When did the war end? What affair was set on foot in 1527? What is said of it? How long had Henry been married? Had he any children by Queen Catharine? What is said of Henry's scruples about the legality of his marriage?

about the lawfulness of his marriage, as being contrary to the law of God. These scruples are said to have been very much cherished by Cardinal Wolsey's management, out of resentment to the emperor, who was nephew to Catharine.

And though it seems that Henry was resolved upon his divorce before he had seen Anne Boleyn, yet his falling in love with her soon after, when she had become maid of honor to the queen, caused him to prosecute the affair with greater earnestness.

Whatever were the king's secret motives, whether scruples of conscience, reasons of state, aversion to the queen, or his love of Anne Boleyn, or all, or some of these together, it was resolved to apply to the pope to get the marriage annulled, and Cardinal Wolsey undertook that the business should be accomplished. Clement VII. seemed inclined to grant the king's request, and even promised to do it, but his fear of offending the emperor caused him to use all artifices to amuse Henry, and gain time.

Gardiner and Fox were sent the next year, (1528,) to press the pope to dispatch the affair, according to the king's mind. The pope, instead of granting a bull for directly annulling the marriage, commissioned Wolsey, and joined with him Campegio, to try the cause in England, but privately gave orders to Campegio to delay matters as much as possible, and not to give sentence till he had his express commands in writing.

In 1529, the king and queen appeared before the legates, Wolsey allowing Campegio to preside, and making no opposition to his affected delays. But after all their slow proceedings, when the process was ended, the king was just where he was before. Campegio put off the sentence to a distant day, before which, the pope having concluded his treaty with the emperor

What did Henry resolve upon? What is probably the reason he was so earnest in the matter? To whom did Henry apply? What did pope Clement VII. promise? How did he amuse Henry? Whom did Henry next send to the pope? What did the pope do? What private orders did he give? What is said of the examination before the legates? What did Campegio do? What was the pope's conduct?

to his entire satisfaction, thought he might safely pull off the mask and act openly against the divorce. The cause was finally avocated to Rome and the king cited to appear there by a certain day. This threw him into great perplexity, but Dr. Thomas Cranmer found an expedient to rid him of his trouble, after having in vain once more applied to the pope.

But, before we proceed to this, let us see what became of Cardinal Wolsey. This haughty favorite had met with several rebuffs, besides that already mentioned, but soon after the process his fall was rapid. He was certainly at first anxious for the divorce, but whether he found it more difficult than he imagined, or had altered his mind, his behavior in that affair was the chief occasion of his disgrace, and Anne Boleyn is thought to have been the chief instrument, who, becoming his enemy, others were encouraged to join with her in hastening his ruin.

Be this as it may, on the 9th day of October, 1529, a bill of indictment was preferred against him by the Attorney-General, upon the statute of *Præmunire*. A few days after, the king took from him the great seal, and gave it to Sir Thomas More. Other indictments were preferred against him upon the same statute. He was found guilty, and declared out of the protection of the laws; upon which all his goods and effects, of an immense value, were seized for the king's use.

Nevertheless, so wavering was the king, and so unable to forget the affection towards his old favorite, that upon his humble petition he granted him a protection, and moreover sent him a ring as a token of his favor; which being brought to him as he was upon the road to one of his country-houses, whither he

What followed? How did this affect Henry? What is said of Wolsey? Course in regard to the divorce? What is said of his fall? Who was the chief instrument of his disgrace? What bill was preferred against him? The consequence? To whom was the great seal given? What followed? What is said of the king's conduct? What is said of a ring?

was ordered to retire, he was so transported that he alighted from his horse and fell upon his knees in the dirt to receive it.

He was, however, impeached by the house of lords in forty-four articles, which ran chiefly upon the ill use he had made of his power, as Legate, Chancellor and Prime Minister. Yet after all this the king granted him a full pardon, and suffered him to enjoy his archbishoprick of York, whither he was ordered to retire.

He was again soon arrested by the earl of Northumberland for high treason. This so affected him, that, as they were conducting him to London, he died of grief or poison, at Leicester Abbey, in November, 1530. His last words to the king's officer, who stood near his bed, were, "If I had served God as diligently as I have served the king, he would not have cast me off in my grey hairs." But by all his actions it is pretty manifest that he served himself more than the king.

We will now return to the business of the divorce.

The king, despairing of ever accomplishing his ends at the court of Rome, which was wholly devoted to the emperor, became accidentally acquainted with Dr. Thomas Cranmer, an able divine, who had traveled in Germany, where he had read Luther's writings, and embraced his doctrines; which many others at this time in England had done. Cranmer being consulted about the divorce, proposed as the best expedient, the sending to the foreign universities, and getting their opinions in writing upon the matter.

The king approved of this method, put it in practice, and was successful; most of the universities giving it as their opinion, that the dispensation of the pope for the king's marriage with Catharine, was repugnant to the divine law, and therefore invalid. This point being gained, Henry resolved to bring the

What is said of other impeachments? What did the king now do? What is said of his last arrest and death? What were his last words? Whom did Henry consult as to the divorce? Who was Cranmer? What did he advise? What was the result?

matter before his parliament, which he might do with the greater prospect of success, as there was a general inclination among his subjects to throw off the papal yoke. The remains of Wickliff's doctrines, Luther's books and the late scandalous conduct of the popes, had so opened their eyes that the thunders of the Vatican were but little regarded by them.

The interest of the sovereign being now the same with that of the subject, there was little danger from the court of Rome. The clergy were the only body from whence Henry might apprehend any opposition, but there was little danger from them, as the people had begun to have a contemptible opinion of them. However, to humble and terrify them into compliance, in 1531, he had them all condemned for breaking the statutes of præmunire. As it was not in their power to inflame the people as formerly, and the papal authority (which was in effect at an end in England,) could do them no good, they were sensible that they must depend upon the king alone for protection. They therefore bought their pardon, and acknowledged Henry "*sole protector and supreme head of the church of England.*"

Towards the end of the following year, (1532) the king privately married Anne Boleyn. The same year, Sir Thomas More, the lord chancellor, resigned the great seal, which was given to Sir Thomas Audley.

In 1533, an act was passed forbidding all appeals to Rome. The king's marriage with Anne Boleyn was made public; and the sentence of divorce between king Henry and Catharine was pronounced in May. Henry's second marriage was confirmed, and the new queen was crowned June 1st, 1533.

Henry sent to acquaint queen Catharine with the sentence; but as she had formerly appealed to the pope, she still remained firm, declaring that she would be the king's wife till the marriage

Were the parliament favorable to the king? Why? What is said of the clergy? How did Henry humble and terrify them? The effect? When was the king again married? To whom? What is said of the great seal? What act was passed in 1533? What else was done?

had been annulled by the pope. Hereupon, Henry ordered that she should be only styled princess-dowager of Wales. But she absolutely refused to be served by any who would not treat her as a queen. She died January 18th, 1536. She was a devout and pious princess, and led a strict and severe life, but had high notions of papal authority.

The pope was so much displeased with the sentence that he annulled Cranmer's sentence, and published a sentence declaring Henry's marriage with Catharine good and lawful, requiring him to take her again, and denouncing censures in case of refusal.

An accommodation might yet have been effected between Henry and the pope, but it was certainly best for England and the world that it was not. When parliament met in 1534, an act was passed for abolishing the pope's power in England, with Peter-pence, procurations, delegations, expedition of bulls, and dispensations, coming from the court of Rome. The same act declared the king's marriage with Catharine null and void, and his marriage with Ann Boleyn valid, settling the succession of the crown upon their issue. An oath was enjoined, whereby all persons should swear that they would be faithful to the king and queen, their heirs and successors; and acknowledge the king as supreme *head of the church of England*; that the bishop of Rome has no more jurisdiction than any other bishop, and that they renounce obedience to him.

In the next session, the parliament confirmed the king's title of supreme head of the church, and passed several other acts against the pope. And shortly after, a proclamation was issued against giving the bishop of Rome the name of pope, and for erasing it out of all books, that, if possible, no remembrance of it might remain. And thus the papal power in England was abolished.

What is said of Henry and queen Catharine? When did Catharine die? What is said of her? What did the pope now do? What important act was passed in 1534? What did this act also declare? What oath was enjoined? What did the next session confirm? What proclamation was issued? The consequence?

Although this was in itself a happy thing for the nation, yet the good effects of it were little felt in this reign; for from this time the king assumed such an arbitrary power as had never been known in England, and exercised it in such a manner as was terrible to his subjects.

What helped to secure him this power was the views of the two different parties at court. Those who adhered to the old religion, and had complied with him in the matter of the divorce, and the supremacy, though the latter was contrary to their consciences, humored him for fear that he would go to still greater lengths. Those who sought a farther reformation in the church, endeavored by complying with his humor, to make him their friend, in hopes that he would in time favor their new opinions.

Both parties felt the effect of his arbitrary power, and many of both religions were put to death. Papists and Protestants were hanged or burnt together at the same time and place; the former for denying the king's supremacy, and the latter for what was called heresy; the king ever making his own belief the standard for that of his subjects.

Among the rest, bishop Fisher and Sir Thomas More were beheaded for refusing to take the oath of supremacy; and Barnes, Lambert, and several others, were burned for professing the protestant doctrine.

All this was the effect of that absolute power, which the heads of both parties, by their compliances, had for different views, given the king. Added to this, Gardiner and the rest of the temporizers of the popish party made use of all their credit with the king to turn him against the protestants.

Henry next resolved upon the suppression of the monasteries; and appointed commissioners to make strict inquiry into the lives and manners of the monks and nuns, who discovered the

What helped to secure this power to the king? Why did these parties so readily comply? How was this power exercised? Why were bishop Fisher and Sir Thomas More beheaded? Why were Barnes, Lambert and others burned? Of what was this the effect? What did Gardiner and his followers do? What did Henry next resolve on? What did he do?

most horrid scenes of lewdness, debauchery and impiety. Their reports being published, a great many abbots and priors, with their monks, being threatened with the rigor of the law, surrendered their houses to the king.

In 1536, an act of parliament was passed for the suppression of the lesser monasteries and giving their estates and effects to the king. Several rebellions were raised in the north by the monks and their devotees, which were soon suppressed and the leaders executed.

What set the people most against these monasteries, and made the work easier for the king, was the discovery that was made of the abominable frauds of the monks with regard to relics and images. As to the latter, the same machinery that is used in puppet shows was made use of by those holy fathers, to cause the images of our Savior, the virgin Mary, and other saints, to move, and nod and turn their heads, which the poor deluded people believed to be the effect of a divine power. Upon the suppression of these monasteries, the plate, furniture and other effects, which were of an immense value, fell into the king's hands.

The king had been married to Anne Boleyn but about three years when he began to grow jealous of her, which ended in her ruin. At the same time he was in love with Jane Seymour, which doubtless made him more willing to entertain disadvantageous thoughts of the queen, by whom he had one daughter, Elizabeth, who, as we shall see, was afterwards queen of England.

Queen Anne Boleyn was usually of a very cheerful and social turn of mind, which might possibly have led her into some indiscretions, without any criminal act or intention. But

What did they discover? What followed? What act was passed in 1536? What is said of several rebellions? What set the people most against the monasteries? What is said of these frauds? The consequence of the suppression of the monasteries? What is said of King Henry and the queen? With whom was he in love? What child had Henry by Queen Anne Boleyn? What of Anne's character?

the jealousy of the king being aroused, she must be disposed of. She was accordingly beheaded in May, 1536. The next day the king married Jane Seymour, who bore him Prince Edward, his successor, but the queen died in childbed.

Queen Anne's marriage was annulled on pretense of a pre-contract with lord Percy, and her daughter Elizabeth, as well as Mary, the daughter of Catharine, were illegitimated by act of Parliament.

A marriage having been concluded between King Henry and Anne, of Cleves, sister to the duke of Cleves, upon her arrival in England, the king went down to see her, and upon the first sight conceived a dislike of her person, and swore they had brought him over a Flanders mare. Nevertheless, for political reasons, he married her in January, 1540. But his aversion to her continuing, he was divorced from her in about six months after.

The king was married to his fifth wife, Catharine Howard,* niece to the duke of Norfolk, on the 8th day of August following his divorce with Anne. But he had soon cause to repent of the match, for she was accused of lewdness and adultery, condemned by act of parliament and beheaded in February, 1542.

The same year Ireland was erected into a kingdom, from which time the kings of England were styled kings of Ireland, whereas before they had only the title of lords of Ireland.

Of Henry's jealousy? When was Anne beheaded? When was Henry again married? To whom? What child did she bear him? Where did she die? What is said of Queen Anne's marriage? What marriage was next concluded? What is said of her? What did Henry declare? Why did he marry her? When was he divorced from her? Whom did the king next marry? Why did Henry soon repent of this? What was her fate? When was Ireland erected into a kingdom? From this time what were the kings of England styled?

* This lady was the first person in England who introduced that now indispensable article, the *pin*, which was brought from France. The pin, however, was at first very badly made, and an act of parliament was passed, enacting that no pins should be sold unless they were double headed, and had "the heddes souldered fast to the shanke of the pynne." Pins were acceptable presents to the ladies, and sometimes they received from their husbands and parents an allowance instead, whence the term *pin money*.

In July, 1543, the king took his sixth wife, the lady Catharine Parr. She was a great friend to the reformation, which induced the opposite party to plot her ruin; and an order was signed by the king for sending her to the tower for abetting heresy. But by her engaging address she so prevailed on him that the order was revoked.

King Henry having entered into a league with the emperor against France, passed over to Calais, and laid siege to Bologne, which surrendered September, 1544. This war continued without much success upon either side till 1546, when a treaty of peace was concluded.

The king did not long survive this peace. He died Jan. 29th, 1547, in the fifty-sixth year of his age, after a reign of thirty-seven years.

Henry left three children, viz., Mary, daughter of Catharine, his first wife; Elizabeth, daughter of Anne Boleyn, his second wife; and Edward, son of Jane Seymour, his third wife. They all in their turn, in accordance with the last will of Henry, filled the throne of England.

Never had any king of England such an absolute sway over his subjects as Henry VIII. His parliaments did just what he pleased, and his will was in effect the law, both of church and state. He was naturally stern and haughty, but he became more obstinate in his latter years.

(1547)

EDWARD VI.

(1553)

Edward, the only son of Henry VIII., by Jane Seymour, succeeded his father, A. D. 1547, at the age of nine years and three months.

Being at Hertford with his sister Elizabeth when his father

Whom and when did the king again marry? What is said of her? What did Henry now do? What was the consequence? When was a treaty of peace concluded? When did Henry die? In what year of his age and reign? What is said of his family? What is said of Henry's sway over his subjects? What was his character? When did Edward VI. ascend the throne? At what age? How was he descended? Where was he when his father died?

died, the council sent Edward Seymour, earl of Hertford, his uncle, to bring him to London. He arrived in London, January 31st, 1547, and was proclaimed the same day, by the name of Edward VI.

The first thing the council did was to open the will of the late king, who had been empowered by parliament, not only to settle the succession, but to appoint the form of government till his successor should be of age. Here it appeared that he had named sixteen persons, some protestants and some papists, his executors, regents of the kingdom and governors to his son. He also appointed twelve privy counselors, assistants to the regents, who likewise were a mixture of both parties. The regents chose the earl of Hertford, the king's uncle, their president, with the title of "*protector of the realm.*"

The king was crowned on the 20th of February; and shortly after, the earl of Southampton was deprived of the chancellorship and confined to his house, and the duke of Somerset was soon established protector by patent, under the great seal, in such manner that he had the sole government of the king and kingdom, and the rest of the regents became no more than his counselors. This step, however taken, was of great advantage to the reformation, for now the protector found himself at full liberty to follow the advice of Cranmer and the other reformers, he himself having imbibed the principles of the reformation.

During the last reign a treaty of marriage was concluded between Prince Edward, now king, and the young queen of Scots; but a contrary party now prevailing in Scotland, refused to make good this treaty. The protector, therefore, to compel them to it, entered Scotland with an army of 18,000 men. He

When did he arrive in London? When was he proclaimed? The first thing the council did? What is said of the will of Henry VIII.? What did he also appoint? What did the regents do? When was the king crowned? What happened shortly after? Who was now chosen protector? What powers had he? What is said of this step? Why was it advantageous to the reformation? What treaty of marriage had been concluded during the late reign? How was it interrupted? The consequence?

met the Scots near Musselburgh, who were 30,000 strong; a terrible battle was fought, in which the Scots were entirely routed. The emperor, having defeated and taken prisoner the elector of Saxony, the protestant cause in Germany was brought into very discouraging circumstances. Upon this many learned reformers took refuge in England.

In 1548, several superstitious practices were abolished by order of the council, as the carrying of *candles* on *Candlemas-day*, of *ashes* on *Ash-Wednesday*, of *palm* on *Palm-Sunday*, &c.

Soon after, the total removal of images from churches was ordered. As there were two parties in England, some approved of these changes, and others disliked them; but the council were resolved to go through with the work; the protector had it chiefly at heart, and it was agreeable to the young king. The parliament, which met towards the close of the year, passed an act allowing the priests to marry; and another, confirming the new liturgy, which commissioners had been appointed to examine and reform, and which was soon after established in all the churches.

While the men in power were throwing off the fopperies of the old religion, it is strange they could not see the absurdity of that which is the worst part of popery, viz., *persecution*. Joan Boucher, one of those called Annabaptists, being pronounced a heretic, was condemned to be burnt. The king could not be prevailed upon to sign the warrant for her execution, till Cranmer, being employed to use arguments to persuade him to it, the young king at last, with tears in his eyes, signed it, saying, if he did wrong, Cranmer should answer for it before God. And so she was delivered to the flames.

Others suffered in the same manner on the same account. This was a great blemish upon the reformers, and the papists

What was the state of the protestant cause in Germany? The consequence? What practices were abolished in 1548? What else was done? What is said of two parties in England? What acts were passed? What is said of the spirit of persecution? Who suffered martyrdom at this time? Give an account of it. What is said of the suffering of others?

with too much truth said, that they were only against burning when they were in fear of it themselves.

The protector had hitherto pursued his scheme of reformation with great success. But this year, (1549,) he found himself much embarrassed both at home and abroad. At home there were insurrections and commotions in divers parts of the kingdom. After the dissolution of the monasteries, many monks found themselves under the necessity of working for a living, which, occasioning more workmen than the work to be done demanded, many of the common people were thrown out of employment, or were compelled to work for very low wages. These and other causes conspiring, the common people thought they were going to be ruined, and as there were always persons ready to take advantage of their discontents for the purpose of restoring the old superstition, they rose in arms in several counties. The most formidable insurrection was in Devonshire and Norfolk. The rebels were finally, after much bloodshed, subdued.

In the midst of these distractions at home, the war with Scotland continued without success. The Scots, having received succours from France, had made an inroad into England, and carried off great booty.

At the same time, Henry II., of France, who had succeeded Francis I., invaded the territory of Boulogne, though no war had been declared. By the treaty between Henry VIII. and Francis, Boulogne was to be restored to France in eight years, for 2,000,000 crowns; but Henry II. had formed a design of getting it before, without paying the money. He accordingly laid siege to Boulogne, and after several fruitless attacks, turned it into a blockade.

Many of the regents appointed by Henry VIII. could not

What did the papists say? What embarrassments did the protector meet with in 1549? What was the consequence of the dissolution of the monasteries? What insurrections broke out? What of the war with Scotland? What did Henry II., of France, do? What is said of the treaty of Henry VIII. with Francis? How were the regents pleased with the conduct of the duke of Somerset?

forgive the duke of Somerset for assuming the whole government and reducing them to a state of bare counselors, and a strong faction was now formed against him in council who finally all deserted him except Cranmer and Paget.

The council now published a manifesto against the duke, and then went in a body to the king, at Windsor, who received them graciously; when articles of accusation being exhibited against the duke, he was immediately sent to the tower. Six lords were then appointed to be governors to the king, and the earl of Warwick became prime minister.

The popish party rejoiced at the disgrace of the duke of Somerset, and expected to receive great benefits from the change, but they were disappointed. For the earl of Warwick, who was wholly swayed by his ambition, and was in reality of no religion, wishing to establish himself in favor with the king, declared for the reformation.

In 1551, a confession of faith was drawn up, the new liturgy was corrected, the cross in consecrating the eucharist, prayers for the dead, &c., were laid aside.

The ambition of the duke of Northumberland had for some time prompted him to the project of bringing the crown into his own family, and the king's health failing in 1553, he began to take measures for putting it in execution. To this end he married his fourth son, the lord Dudley, with Jane Grey, eldest daughter of the marquis of Dorset, now duke of Suffolk, by Frances Brandon, who was, by the will of Henry VIII., the next in succession after the princess Elizabeth, as being the only daughter of Mary, queen-dowager of France, daughter to Henry VII., by her second husband, Charles Brandon, duke of Suffolk.

This step being taken, Northumberland, knowing the king's

What did they do? What did the council do? What followed? What did the papists expect from this change? Why were they disappointed? What was done in 1551? What is said of the duke of Northumberland? What was his plan? Trace the descent of Jane Grey from Henry VII. How did Northumberland further proceed?

great concern for the state of religion under his sister Mary, who was to succeed him, artfully persuaded him to settle the crown on his daughter-in-law, the lady Jane Grey. The judges were in a manner compelled by Northumberland to draw up and sign the settlement, after which it was signed by all the council.

The king's health failing, the council dismissed the physicians, and committed him to the care of a certain woman, who undertook to cure him; but failing the faster, suspicions were aroused of foul play on the part of the duke of Northumberland to hasten the king's death.

Edward died July 6th, 1553, in the sixteenth year of his age and seventh of his reign.

King Edward VI. was a prince of rare accomplishments. He was a most accomplished scholar, of a sweet and amiable temper, and withal very religious.

(1453)

MARY.

(1558)

Mary, daughter of Henry VIII. by Catharine of Arragon, was placed the second in succession in the said king's will, which he was empowered by act of parliament to make, for settling the succession, though the act declaring her illegitimate had never been repealed. She ascended the throne A. D. 1553.

When the late king, her brother, was near his end, the duke of Northumberland got the council to write to her and her sister Elizabeth to come and keep him company in his illness. But his desire in reality was to get the two princesses in his hands. They were coming up, and when near London, Mary was informed of the king's death, of the crown being assigned to the lady Jane Grey, and of the design to secure her person. Upon which she turned back to Norfolk, and wrote a letter to

What was done? What is said of the king's health? What suspicions were aroused? When did Edward die? In what year of his age and reign? His character? What is said of Mary's succession? Who was the duke of Northumberland? What did he do? What was his design? What information did Mary receive? What did she do?

the council, asserting her right to the crown, and promising to pardon such as would return to their duty. She then repaired to the castle of Framlingham, in Suffolk, where she took the title of queen, and being proclaimed at Norwich, she sent circular letters to all the nobles, demanding their assistance in asserting her rights.

In the meantime, the duke of Northumberland, who bore an absolute sway in the council, caused himself to be sent to Jane, with the duke of Suffolk, her father, to notify her of her accession to the crown, by virtue of King Edward's assignment. This most excellent and accomplished young lady, then in her sixteenth year, had no ambition for the crown, and was with difficulty prevailed upon to accept it, after the most pressing arguments of her father and father-in-law, and the earnest solicitations of lord Guilford, her husband.

Having thus yielded with reluctance, the council withdrew with her to the tower, and the next day, July 10th, she was proclaimed in London by the name of Queen Jane. But the people were so astonished to see a queen proclaimed they had never once thought of, that there were none of those acclamations that were usual on such occasions. This was a bad omen to the duke of Northumberland, whom the people never liked, and who knew that this was all his contrivance.

The counties of Norfolk and Suffolk first declared for Mary. As the Suffolk men were great friends to the reformation, they insisted on her leaving religion as she found it; this she promised to do. Many lords also came to her and tendered her their services, and raised forces for her. Though the majority of the council were no friends of the duke, and had only through fear joined him, they had not yet an opportunity of acting

What next? In the meantime what did Northumberland do? What is said of lady Jane's accepting the crown? Where was she proclaimed? The consequence? How did the people regard Northumberland? What counties first declared for Mary? On what did they insist? What did Mary promise? What other persons joined her?

against him. And therefore, upon the news of Mary's proceedings, and the preparations that were making in her favor, they gave orders for raising forces which were to meet those already on foot at Newmarket.

At the same time, the earl of Arundel had so politically contrived it that the duke of Northumberland should go and take the command of these forces, that in his absence they might have the better opportunity of shaking off his yoke and declaring against him.

He accordingly marched out of London with 10,000 troops, and with these went and headed 6,000 more, already assembled at Newmarket. The duke marched to Cambridge, and from thence advanced to St. Edmundsbury. The duke's army diminished daily by desertions.

Mary made great progress in Norfolk and Suffolk; six men-of-war, sent to the coast of Suffolk to prevent her escaping abroad, declared for her. Sir Edward Hastings, who had been sent by the council to levy troops in Buckinghamshire, having raised 4,000 men, instead of joining Northumberland, declared for queen Mary.

The duke turned back to Cambridge, from whence he wrote to the council for immediate succor, but to no purpose; for the council had declared for Mary, and sending for the Lord-Mayor and Aldermen, went together and proclaimed her in several parts of the city. Which done, they sent to the duke of Suffolk to deliver up the tower, which order he immediately obeyed; and to his daughter Jane, to desist from the title of queen, and lay down her new dignity, which she did with more pleasure than she had taken it up but nine days before.

The council next sent orders to the duke of Northumberland

What did some of the professed friends of Northumberland do? How did the earl of Arundel manage the affair? What is said of the duke's army? What is said of Mary's progress in Norfolk and Suffolk? What did Sir Edward Hastings do? What did the duke do? What had the council already done? What did they next do? The consequence?

to disband his troops and submit to queen Mary. But the duke having heard what had passed, prevented their orders, and proclaimed her at Cambridge, throwing up his hat and crying, "God save queen Mary." Notwithstanding this, he was the next day arrested with three of his sons and some others, and sent to the tower; whither also were sent or detained there, the Lady Jane and her husband, the duke of Suffolk, the Marquis of Northampton, bishop Ridley and others.

Three days after, the queen set the duke of Suffolk at liberty. And now the whole kingdom declared for Mary, who entered London in August, with her sister Elizabeth, who had met her with 2,000 horse; and going to the tower, she immediately released Gardiner and Bonner, with the duke of Norfolk, who had been sent there at the end of Henry VIII.'s reign, and some others.

Thus queen Mary found herself established upon the throne without any effusion of blood; which was owing more to the hatred of all ranks of people against the duke of Northumberland, than to their love of Mary, who had no hearty friends but the papists, then by much the smallest party in the kingdom. The new queen, who was a thorough bigot to papacy, thought of nothing but restoring it, and would immediately have sent for Cardinal Pole, as legate, to reconcile the nation to the pope. But the politic Gardiner, whom she had made Chancellor, proposed the restoring of the old religion by degrees, and so managed matters with the emperor, that he wrote to Mary to follow the bishop's measures, to which she at length consented.

The queen had promised the Suffolk men that she would leave religion as she found it; but it soon appeared that she did not design to keep her promise, when she declared in council

Next order of council? What did the duke do? What is said of the arrest of the duke and his sons? What other persons were arrested? Who was set at liberty? What now followed? Give an account of her entrance into London? What did she immediately do? What was the cause of Mary's easy accession to the throne? What was the religion of Mary? What was her greatest object? What was Gardiner's policy? How did Mary regard her promises made to the Suffolk men?

that she would not force men's consciences in matters of religion; and yet this declaration as well as the other, she soon contradicted by her actions. The papists were so sure of her intentions to restore their religion, that they began openly to inveigh against the protestant religion, though it still had the law on its side.

By a proclamation published about this time, all preaching was forbidden without an express license, and several orders were contained in it very unfavorable to the protestants.

On the 22d of August the duke of Northumberland was beheaded for high treason; and Sir John Gates, and Sir Thomas Palmer, two of his associates, were executed at the same time.

The people of Suffolk were among the first that fell under the displeasure of the court for transgressing the orders in the proclamation. They therefore sent deputies to the queen, humbly to remind her of her promise; but they were received very roughly, and told that it was not for the members to rule the head, but the head the members.

Shortly after, Bradford and Rogers, two eminent protestant preachers, were committed to prison. The popish bishops who had been deposed in the last reign were restored, and those who had been put in their places turned out; some of them were sent to prison on various pretenses, as was shortly after Archbishop Cranmer.

The Roman Catholics, now seeing how the tide ran, began openly to set up their worship before it was restored by authority; in which they were countenanced by the court.

The queen was crowned on the 1st of October, and the parliament met on the 10th. As to the lords, though they had

What did the papists now do? What proclamation was now published? What executions took place in August? Who first fell under the displeasure of the court? What did they do? How were they received? What is said of Bradford and Rogers? What is said of the Bishops? Of Cranmer? What did the Roman Catholics now do? When was the queen crowned? When did the parliament meet?

been almost all protestants in the reign of Edward VI., they turned, almost wholly, zealous Catholics under queen Mary.

This parliament immediately repealed the divorce of the queen's mother, by which they a second time declared the princess Elizabeth illegitimate. They then made void all the laws of king Edward concerning religion, restored the mass, and brought all things back to the state they were in the latter part of the reign of Henry VIII. ; Gardiner not thinking it advisable as yet to proceed further. But the queen was impatient to go through with the work, to have the pope's power fully restored and the nation re-united to the holy see.

Gardiner was desirous of the same, but did not think it yet the proper time. About this time a marriage was in contemplation by the emperor, with Gardiner in the secret, for his son Philip, of Spain, with queen Mary. The nation was very averse to this match, and even the House of Commons, packed as it was, addressed the queen against it ; at which, being offended, she dissolved the parliament.

In the meantime, Jane Grey, and Guilford Dudley her husband, were tried and condemned as traitors ; as was also Archbishop Cranmer, though he appealed to the judges with what reluctance he signed the instrument for the queen's exclusion.

However, the queen affected to forgive him for the treason, desiring at the same time to have him put to death as a heretic ; though he had been the means of saving her life when her father would have put her to death for her adherence to her mother's interests.

Whilst the parliament were sitting, the convocation decided in favor of *transubstantiation*, after a sham disputation between the protestants and popish clergy ; in which the former, who

What is said of the lords ? What did the parliament first do ? What next ? What is said of the views of the queen and Gardiner ? What is said of a contemplated marriage ? How was this looked upon ? What is said of Jane Grey and her husband ? What is said of Cranmer ? What did the convocation do ?

were but six in the house, were run down with numbers and noise for want of argument.

The treaty of marriage between Philip and Mary was signed June 12th, 1554, in which Gardiner took care to have such conditions inserted as might make it acceptable to the parliament, and might seem to secure England from coming under the dominion of Spain. Notwithstanding which, as soon as it was published, murmurs and complaints were everywhere heard against it; and an insurrection soon broke out, of which the marriage was the real or pretended cause.

This was concerted between the duke of Suffolk, Sir Thomas Wyatt and Sir Peter Carew; but was so badly managed that it was easily crushed, and its ill success tended only to increase the power of the court. This conspiracy and the part the duke of Suffolk took in it, hastened the death of his innocent daughter, the lady Jane Grey, and her husband; though it is highly probable, that as she was so firmly attached to the reformation, she would some time have fallen a sacrifice if this affair had not happened.

This remarkable and pious lady, with the utmost resignation and fortitude, submitted her neck to the block on February 12th, after she had seen the headless body of her husband carried along by her from the same execution. Nine days after, the duke of Suffolk, her father, underwent the same fate.

Wyat, on his trial, in hopes of saving his life, accused the princess Elizabeth as an accomplice in his conspiracy; but finding he must die, he cleared her of all on his second examination, as also at the place of execution. This accusation, however, caused her to be sent to the tower, where she endured a long and severe confinement, and was afterwards removed a prisoner

How was the discussion conducted? What is said of the treaty of marriage between Philip and Mary? The consequence? What is said of an insurrection? What was the consequence of this conspiracy? What is said of the execution of Jane Grey? Of the duke of Suffolk? What is said of the conduct of Wyatt? What was the consequence of this accusation?

to Woodstock. Gardiner and the queen too would have been glad to have put her to death, and schemes were even laid for that purpose ; but she happily escaped them all.

A parliament was now to be procured which should approve of the queen's intended marriage, and restore the pope's authority ; both of which the greater part of the nation were against, and many even of those who were in favor of the old religion thought that the pope's authority was by no means necessary to the church. But the court was resolved to have it fully restored, and in order to this the marriage was deemed necessary, that they might have the assistance of Spain in case the nation should prove too refractory. However, by means of Spanish gold and the promise of pensions from the emperor and the queen, added to former acts, a parliament was modeled to the mind of the court.

The parliament met April 2d, and approved the treaty of marriage between the queen and Philip.

Nothing now standing in the way, that prince arrived at Southampton July 19th. The queen met him at Winchester, and they were married by Gardiner on the 25th.

Philip was twenty-nine years old and Mary thirty-eight. The same day they were proclaimed king and queen of England, France, Naples and Jerusalem, with many other titles. To these were afterwards added that of king and queen of Spain, upon the emperor Charles V. resigning those dominions to his son Philip, as he soon after resigned the empire to his brother Ferdinand. Care was taken by the articles of marriage, that Philip should have no share in the government of England.

The Spanish gravity of Philip was by no means agreeable to the English, but he did some things which gained him a

What did Gardiner and the queen wish in respect to Elizabeth? For what purpose was a parliament called? Were the greater part of the nation favorable to this? What did the court resolve? How was this parliament modeled? When did it meet? What do? Give an account of Philip's arrival in England? What were the ages of Philip and Mary? How were they proclaimed? Was Philip to have any share in the government? How were the English pleased with Philip?

degree of esteem. He procured the liberation of several state-prisoners, and among the rest, the Princess Elizabeth, who, whether from motives of policy or otherwise, found in him a protector during the rest of this reign.

While the parliament was sitting, a new conference was held at Oxford, about the *Eucharist*. Archbishop Cranmer, and the bishops Ridley and Latimer, all prisoners in the tower, were selected to dispute with the popish clergy upon that subject. It was resolved beforehand to confound them with noise and clamor, as in the former dispute; after which they were required to abjure their pretended errors, and upon their refusing to do it they were excommunicated. The parliament meeting again in September, Pole was sent for, and arrived in quality of the pope's legate. He opened his legation before the king, queen, and both houses of parliament, telling them that the design of it was to bring back the straying sheep to the fold of Christ.

In November, the grand work of reconciling the kingdom to the pope was effected. The two houses petitioned the king and queen to intercede for them with the legate for that purpose. Hereupon Pole came to the parliament, and after a speech on the occasion, he enjoined the repeal of all the laws made against the pope's authority, which the two houses promising, they received absolution from the legate, on their knees, and were released from all the papal censures.

The act of repeal passed in January, 1555, by which the papal authority was restored as it stood before the 20th of Henry VIII.

Popery being now fully re-established, the spirit of it soon appeared in the most violent and bloody persecution against the protestants. Pole was for reducing them by gentle methods, without any force or corporal punishments, but Gardiner's

What liberal spirit did he show? What is said of a new conference? Who were selected to carry on the discussion? How was it conducted? Who was the pope's legate? How did he proceed? What laws were repealed by parliament? When was the act of repeal passed? The consequence? How did the spirit of popery now manifest itself? Whose counsels were followed?

violent counsels were most agreeable to the court and the rest of the bishops. It was therefore resolved to put them in practice, and to leave him the business of extirpating heresy, which he afterwards transferred to Bonner, bishop of London, who was, if possible, more furious and bloody than himself. To prepare the way, the parliament revived the ancient statutes that had been made against *heretics*.

The first sacrifices to popish zeal and bigotry were Hooper, who had been bishop of Gloucester, and the three famous protestant preachers, Rogers, Saunders and Taylor, who were all burnt at the stake, at the beginning of February, 1555; and on March 30th, Ferrar, bishop of St. Davids, was also burnt.

Notwithstanding the murmurs of the people these persecutions raged with increased fury. Among those who suffered were the two venerable bishops, Ridley, of London, and Latimer, of Worcester, who were both burnt at Oxford, and suffered with a constancy equal to that of the primitive martyrs. No less than sixty-seven persons were burnt before the end of this year.

King Philip, despairing of issue by the queen, whereby he hoped to have united the monarchies of Spain and England, and growing weary of her, as she was neither young nor handsome, left England, on the 4th of September, to the no small mortification of the queen.

Soon after, the popish champion, Gardiner, bishop of Winchester, a man of learning and abilities, but who would sacrifice everything to his private interest, ambition and revenge, suddenly died. The fury of the persecution went on notwithstanding, which at length laid hold on the learned and pious archbishop Cranmer, who was burnt at the stake, March 15th, 1556. He had been prevailed upon, by the hopes of saving his life, to

What was resolved on? What is said of Bonner? What statute was revived? Who were some of the first sacrifices to popish zeal and bigotry? Give an account of the persecutions? When did Philip leave England? Why did he leave? How did this affect the queen? What is said of Cranmer?

sign an abjuration of his opinions, but when he found that he was, notwithstanding, to die, he repented of what he had done, and suffered with great resolution, holding out, it is said, the hand that signed the abjuration till it dropped off in the flames, and crying out, as he was burning, *that unworthy hand*.

All the rest of the year was one continued persecution of the protestants, in which eighty-five perished in the flames under Bonner's management.

The following year seventy-nine protestants underwent the same fiery trial.

While the queen and court were wholly intent upon these violent methods for extirpating heresy, they suffered themselves to be seduced, by Spanish counsels, into a rupture with France. And although in this war the Spaniards and English gained a great victory over the French, in the battle of St. Quintin, yet it ended, to the disgrace of England, in the loss of Calais, which had been in possession of the English since the reign of Edward III.

The loss of Calais occasioned great uneasiness and murmurs among the people, and the queen herself was so sensibly touched at this misfortune that it was thought to be one means of shortening her days. Her grief was so excessive that she told those about her she should die, and if they would know the cause they must dissect her after her death, and they would find Calais at her heart.

At the same time, Philip's aversion gave her great uneasiness, and, with her other vexations, increased her natural melancholy, while her health was sensibly declining by a dropsy, which grew every day worse and worse. In this state of body and mind it was evident she had not long to live; and yet this did not abate her fury and that of her ministers against the protest-

What is said of a war with France? What important place did the English lose? How did this affect the queen? What did she say to those around her? What is said of the queen's health? Did the persecutions continue?

ants. Thirty-nine were burnt in a short time in this last year of her reign, and near three hundred perished in the flames in the four years which this persecution raged; besides which several died in prison, and many were whipped or otherwise cruelly treated.

The queen's death, Nov. 17th, 1558, put an end to these persecutions. She reigned five years, four months and eleven days.

Mary was educated under her mother, in the most superstitious attachment to the papal authority and religion, in which she continued all her life. She was either naturally of a gloomy temper of mind, or her religion made her so. An excessive bigotry was her distinguishing characteristic, which made her resolve either to reduce her subjects to popery or to destroy them. In short, Queen Mary must be said to have been a bad queen; but what chiefly contributed to making her so, was the badness of her religion. In consequence of her violent persecution of the reformers, she is styled by all protestant historians as "the bloody Mary."

(1558)

ELIZABETH.

(1603)

Mary was succeeded by her sister Elizabeth, daughter of Henry VIII., by Ann Boleyn, who ascended the throne November 17th, 1558, pursuant to the order of succession settled by that king's will, as authorized by act of parliament. The counselors and ministers of the late queen would have been glad to have set her aside, knowing that she was a protestant.

In the difficulty they were in, they concealed the queen's death for some hours. But as the parliament was sitting, they sent a message to the two houses to inform them of the event, and leave the declaration of the succession to them. As the act whereby Elizabeth was declared illegitimate had never been

How many perished in the flames during Mary's reign? When did the queen die? How long did she reign? What is said of Mary's education? Her temper of mind? Of her bigotry? What must be said of her? What do protestant historians call her? Who succeeded Mary? When? How? Why did the Ministers wish to set her aside? What did they do?

repealed, there were two other princesses who might have pretended to the crown. These were Mary queen of Scots, granddaughter to Margaret, eldest sister of Henry VIII., and Frances, duchess of Suffolk, daughter of Mary his younger sister. But there was no disputing Henry's will, as it was made in consequence of an act of parliament which had never been repealed. And in this will the descendants of Margaret were not expressly named at all; and as far as they might be understood, were placed last in the succession. And as to the descendants of Mary, though named in the will, they were set after Elizabeth; and so could have no right to come in before the queen of Scots, but what Henry's will gave them, which was equally in favor of Elizabeth's coming before them, notwithstanding her having been declared illegitimate, as well as her sister Mary, who succeeded by virtue of the same will.

Upon this, then, there could be no dispute. And as Mary queen of Scots was married to the dauphin of France, the parliament might well fear the consequence of her succeeding to the crown of England would be, its becoming a province of France. Besides, she was as bigoted a papist as the late queen of England had been, and the parliament, as well as the nation in general, were tired of the late cruelties on account of religion.

Be the reasons what they may, the house of lords first, and then the commons, unanimously declared for Elizabeth, who was thereupon proclaimed queen of England, France and Ireland.

Queen Elizabeth began her reign at the age of twenty-five years, and in the course of it, showed the most consummate policy and skill in government, acquiring the character of a great and glorious queen. As to her person, she was not handsome, but her mien was grand, noble and majestic.

Who might have pretended to the crown? What were the conditions of Henry's will in regard to the descendants of Margaret and Mary? What did the parliament fear might be the consequence of Mary's ascending the throne? Why? For whom did the lords and commons declare? What followed? At what age did Elizabeth begin her reign? What did she show? What is said of her person?

But what she is most to be admired for, are the endowments of her mind, her solid judgment, her great capacity, her deep penetration ; all which she discovered in the choice of her ministers, in the prudent and frugal management of her revenues, in her thorough knowledge of the interests, views and intrigues of foreign states, and taking her measures accordingly, for her own safety and the peace and prosperity of her people ; and, above all, in taking care, by her affable and engaging deportment, to reign in the hearts of her subjects and preserve their affections.

After all, queen Elizabeth had her faults, she was guilty of some severities which can hardly be excused, unless she thought them necessary for the security of her person and the peace of her kingdom ; wherein, too, she might possibly be mistaken. However, her faults were greatly outweighed by her virtues. And if we consider that she had her enemies, France and Spain, the pope and all the Catholic powers, who denied her title ; that the queen of Scotland was supported by all those powers, in her pretensions to the crown ; that her own Roman Catholic subjects wished to have her dethroned ; that the Irish, who were strongly attached to the pope, were rebellious, and occasioned many intestine commotions in that kingdom ; and yet that in the midst of all, she, without any allies, supported herself through a long and glorious reign, defeated all the projects of her enemies, and kept the crown unshaken on her head to the last, purely by her good policy, and the affection, zeal, and loyalty of her faithful subjects, whom by her wise behavior she attached firmly to her interests ; I say, if we consider all these things, her vast and surprising abilities will evidently appear.

We will now give some account of the chief transactions and occurrences in the long reign of this renowned queen. After

Of her mind? How did she discover her great abilities? What of her faults? Whom had she for enemies? How did she support herself through her reign against her enemies?

having dispatched ambassadors to foreign courts to notify her accession, she proceeded to form her council, in which she continued thirteen that had been counselors to the late queen, all Roman Catholics. To these she added others who were zealous Protestants. With the principal of her Protestant counselors she held secret consultations, how to restore the reformed religion in England.

Before this was done, king Philip of Spain made a proposal of marriage to her, which, though she was resolved against, she would not give a peremptory denial, but kept him in suspense, because it was not for her interest to break with him at present. But when she had established the reformation, there was an end of the affair, and Philip became her enemy.

The methods taken for restoring the reformation were, to remove all the zealous Catholics from the council, and from all posts of authority, and to turn out the popish magistrates of counties and corporations, and put Protestants in their room, in order to have such members chosen and returned to parliament as should favor the reformation.

Before parliament met, the queen published a proclamation allowing divine service to be performed, and the Scriptures to be read in the vulgar tongue.

The queen was crowned January 15th, 1559, by Oglethorpe, bishop of Carlisle, all the rest of the bishops refusing to be concerned in the office because they already saw the queen's aversion to the church of Rome.

Parliament met in about ten days after, and appointed public worship to be performed in the vulgar tongue, and restored the queen to her rights of supremacy in all cases ecclesiastical as well as civil. They also renewed and confirmed all the acts of Edward VI. concerning religion, passed the famous act of

Her first business? How form her council? What of a proposal of marriage? How did Elizabeth manage in the affair? What measures were taken to restore the reformation? What proclamation did Elizabeth publish? Where and by whom was she crowned? When did parliament meet? What did they do?

uniformity, and by another act, suppressing all the religious houses which Mary had founded, and gave their lands and revenues to the crown.

In 1563, an act was passed against holding and maintaining the authority of the bishop of Rome, and another to establish and confirm the queen's supremacy in ecclesiastical affairs; and *the Articles of the Church of England*, as they stand at this day, were settled by the convocation.

Thus the reformation, which, with several interruptions, had been carried on above thirty years, was at last finally established. But the act of uniformity, and the subscriptions that were required, occasioned disunions among the Protestants themselves, which in time produced fatal consequences; those who were afterwards called Puritans, contending for a further reformation, whilst the others were firm against it; though the former seemed to be as much for uniformity in their own way, as their antagonists were in theirs; and from the mischiefs that these contentions produced, we may see the reasonableness and necessity of a general toleration.

What tended much to the safety of queen Elizabeth and her government, and secured her from the attempts of foreign powers, was their intestine broils among their own subjects. These troubles she politically promoted as much as she could, and took advantage of them. As they were chiefly on account of religion, she assisted the Protestants in Scotland, France, and the Low Countries, against their respective sovereigns, by whom they had been cruelly oppressed and persecuted.

The queen of Scots and the dauphin her husband, had, by order of Henry II. of France, taken the arms of England, with the title of sovereign of that kingdom. This raised the jealousy of queen Elizabeth, who from that time looked upon

What acts were passed in 1563? What the consequence? What did the act of uniformity occasion? Consequence? What may we see from these mischiefs? What tended much to the safety of queen and government? What course did Elizabeth pursue in reference to them? What did Mary queen of Scots and her husband do?

Mary, queen of Scotland, as a dangerous rival; and induced her in 1560, to enter into a treaty with the Scotch malcontents, in pursuance of which she sent an army into Scotland in order to defeat the measures of her enemies.

For the same purpose, she assisted the Huguenots in France, (as the protestants were there called,) against the papists. By these means Elizabeth kept both France and Scotland so employed, that they could find no opportunity to put in execution their schemes for dethroning her.

Robert Dudley, son of the late duke of Northumberland, was now a great favorite at court. He was made earl of Leicester, and had a great ascendant over the queen. At the same time, Sir William Cecil, secretary of state, a man of vast abilities and great integrity, was first minister of the affairs of the government. The queen afterwards created him lord Burleigh, and made him lord high treasurer.

Mary, upon the death of her husband, Francis II., left France and arrived in Scotland in 1561.

She now, by advice, for the present, dropped her title and arms of England. But this did not satisfy Elizabeth, who insisted upon her declaring that she had no right to take them, and upon ratifying the treaty of Edinburgh, whereby she was to promise never to resume them; which Mary refused to do. This was the source of a perpetual difference and animosity between the two queens.

The pope, yet entertaining hopes of reclaiming Elizabeth, was desirous of sending a nuncio to England; he had arrived in Flanders, and demanded permission to continue his journey to England, but was refused, the queen saying she had nothing to do with the pope.

Consequence? Why did Elizabeth assist the Huguenots in France? Consequence? What of Robert Dudley? Who was secretary of state? What about him? When did Mary arrive in Scotland? What was she advised to do? Did this satisfy Elizabeth? What did Elizabeth require? What did Mary do? Consequence? What did the pope wish to do? Consequence?

In 1563, the queen of Scots had the satisfaction of being delivered from one rival, by the death of Frances Brandon, duchess of Suffolk, grand-daughter to Henry VII., who, as has been said, was placed next after Elizabeth in the will of Henry VIII.

In 1565, the queen of Scotland married her cousin, Henry Stuart, lord Darnley, son of the countess of Lenox, daughter of Margaret, queen of Scotland, by her second husband, the earl of Angus; by which means she united the title of that family to the crown of England, with her own. This marriage created great confusion in Scotland. Darnley was a Catholic, and Murray and other lords were opposed to the match, as fearing it would endanger the reformation.

The queen of Scots at this time was much attached to one David Rizzio, son of a musician of Turin, who had so insinuated himself into her favor as to become, in a manner, prime minister; and it is said she was guilty of scandalous familiarities with him. However that may be, the king, her husband, grew jealous of him. This jealousy was increased by the aversion the queen, on all occasions, showed him after the marriage; and the sway Rizzio bore in her affection filled several of the nobles with indignation. This ended in the murder of Rizzio, by order of the king, in 1566. The queen was kept under a guard for some time, but put on such an artful fondness for her husband that she found means to regain her freedom and resume her authority, after which she manifested a greater antipathy to her husband than before, and took all occasions to mortify him.

And now the earl of Bothwell began to have the same place in her heart that Rizzio had before, and became as great a favorite and as absolute at court; while the king was entirely

What rival of Mary, queen of Scots, died in 1563? Who was she? When and whom did Mary, queen of Scots, marry? Consequence? What favorite had the queen at this time? What about him? Consequence? What other circumstance increased the jealousy of her husband? How did this end? What became of the queen? How did she regain her freedom? Her conduct? Who was her next favorite?

neglected, and once had poison given him, which, however, had not the effect his enemies desired. But soon after, in 1567, he was murdered in his bed by Bothwell's procurement, the queen herself being also strongly suspected as privy to the crime; and what strengthened this suspicion was her marrying Bothwell in a short time after.

Between the murder of Rizzio and that of the king, June 15th, 1566, queen Mary was delivered of a son, named James, who was afterwards James I., when he had been for many years king of Scotland.

Plots had been continually carried on in England in favor of Mary, which had even infected the two houses of parliament, who strongly pressed Elizabeth either to marry or to name her successor, having a view to the queen of Scots. But she would do neither. It seems that she was always resolved not to marry, though she was courted by almost all the young princes in Europe, and fed them with hopes, only to make her own advantage while such negotiations were on foot. And she would never make the queen of Scots her heir, lest her party in England, which was already strong, should become stronger, and she should be exposed to the mortification of seeing her subjects adore the *rising-sun*.

The queen of Scots had evidently lessened her party in England by her late shameful conduct. The murder of the king, and the queen's marriage with Bothwell, produced great changes in Scotland.

The earl of Argyll and many others entered into a confederacy to bring the murderers to justice, and dissolve the queen's marriage. They raised forces, and Edinburgh declared for them. The queen and Bothwell retired to Dunbar and levied some troops, in order to oppose the confederates. But many

What became of the king? By whose procurement? What suspicions against the queen? Cause? When was James I. born? What plots were carried on? Elizabeth's course? Why would she not make the queen of Scots her heir? Consequence of the conduct of Mary, queen of Scots? What confederacy formed? Consequence?

deserting, the queen saw no other way than to capitulate with the confederate lords, and put herself into their hands, who conducted her to Edinburgh and set a guard over her. Bothwell, finding there was no safety for him in Scotland, retired to the Orkneys, turned pirate, and afterwards escaped to Denmark, where he was imprisoned for some years, when he died.

The confederates obliged the queen to resign the crown to her son, who was but about a year old, and the earl of Murray was appointed regent. But a strong party was soon formed against him, in order to restore the queen, who had escaped from her confinement. Forces were raised on both sides, but the regent defeated the queen in the battle of Glasgow, in 1568, and forced her to fly into England, where Elizabeth kept her a prisoner many years, and from whence she never returned.

At the beginning of the year 1569, several great men of the queen's council, who were friends to the queen of Scots, and who wanted either to have her on the throne, or declared presumptive heir of Elizabeth, conspired to get secretary Cecil removed, whom they knew to be heartily in the interest of the queen Elizabeth. But Elizabeth, knowing the fidelity of her minister, effectually discouraged their attempts.

Rebellions broke out at various times in the different parts of England, headed by the papists and friends of Mary queen of Scots, which queen Elizabeth happily suppressed. Several of the rebels were hanged, some outlawed, and the rest pardoned.

The many plots for freeing the queen of Scots from confinement, and which she herself encouraged as much as she could, furnished Elizabeth with farther reasons for detaining her still a prisoner. For if she could give her so much trouble in her present situation, she was likely to occasion more if she were at liberty.

What became of the queen? Of Bothwell? What was Mary obliged to do? Who was appointed regent? What party was raised against him? Consequence? What happened in 1569? Consequence? What rebellions? Consequence? What additional reasons had Elizabeth for continuing Mary a prisoner?

The many conspiracies against the queen occasioned the parliament to pass some severe acts against the Catholics, for the safety of the queen's person, the defense of her title and the security of the protestant religion.

The year 1571 passed chiefly in negotiations for a marriage between Elizabeth and the duke of Anjou, second son of Catharine de Medicis, and brother of Charles IX., king of France. Neither Charles nor Elizabeth intended that this should take effect. The design of Charles was to amuse Elizabeth and all the protestants, particularly the Huguenots, with whom he had made a perfidious peace, until he had drawn them into the snare, in order to destroy them by treachery, when he found it difficult to do it by open force; which accordingly happened the next year in the massacre of St. Bartholomew, in which admiral Chatillon, and all those Huguenots who had been drawn to court under pretense of celebrating the nuptials of the king of Navarre with Charles' sister, were inhumanly butchered.

Queen Elizabeth entered into the negotiation of the match to please her ministers, who were continually pressing her to marry, in order to cut off all hopes from the queen of Scots. Besides, while her enemies believed the marriage would take place, they would of course be disheartened. And she dissembled so well in this affair, that even Cecil himself, who was now lord Burleigh, thought for some time she was in earnest. But it at last broke off on account of religion, which was always Elizabeth's last resort for breaking off treaties of this kind.

However, this did not hinder a defensive league being concluded between the two crowns, and the highest protestations of friendship passed between the two courts; Charles being afraid of Elizabeth's assisting the Huguenots, and she being willing to gain time that she might penetrate deeper into the

What act was passed? Why? How was the year 1571 passed? Was either party sincere? What was Charles' design? How did it succeed? Elizabeth's object? How did she act her part? How did the affair terminate? What of a league? Why the league?

designs of her enemies, so that the Huguenots knew not what to make of their good protectress, who had gone so far as to stand god-mother to Charles' daughter after the massacre of St. Bartholomew.

Elizabeth knew that there was no sincerity in Charles' pretensions of friendship, but she resolved to match him in dissimulation, and at the same time made all the necessary preparations for her defense. Charles dying soon after, he was succeeded by his brother, the duke of Anjou, by the name of Henry III., who pressed queen Elizabeth to renew the league between the two crowns, which she did, but secretly supplied the prince of Condé with money for the Huguenots. Some time after, another negotiation was carried on for a marriage between her and the duke of Alencon, king Henry's brother, which went so far as the signing of the marriage articles; by-and-by it was suddenly broken off as the others had been.

In the low countries, Philip seemed bent upon extirpating the protestants. The duke of Alva with his army of Spaniards had introduced the inquisition, so odious to all the inhabitants, papists as well as protestants. This forced them at last to enter into a confederacy and take up arms for the defense of their liberties, and Elizabeth thought it good policy to assist them both with men and money. She therefore, in 1577, lent the oppressed states £100,000 sterling, to enable them to carry on the war. Companies of volunteers also went over from England with the queen's approbation. In short, from maxims of policy, she continued to support them to the last, and this war ended in a total revolt of seven of those provinces from the dominion of Spain.

Affairs were now in such a state in France that it became agreeable to Elizabeth's policy openly to assist the Huguenots

Did Elizabeth understand Charles' object? What did she resolve? Who succeeded Charles? What followed? What other negotiation was carried on about this time? How did it terminate? Give an account of what was done in the low countries? Consequence? What course did Elizabeth pursue? Consequence of this war? What of the affairs in France? Elizabeth's policy?

again. A league had been formed against them by the papists in the reign of Henry III., who himself approved of it and swore to do his utmost to extirpate them. It was not without reason that Elizabeth assisted the protestants in France and the Netherlands, as she thereby kept her enemies employed, and hindered them from executing their projects against England. The pope had excommunicated her and absolved her subjects from their allegiance. The king of Spain and the duke of Guise were in league with the pope to invade England, dethrone the queen and set up the queen of Scots in her room.

In the meantime many plots were set on foot by the popish emissaries to take her life. The queen being thus threatened from all quarters, a general association was formed in England to prosecute to death such as should attempt anything against her person or government. The parliament approved and confirmed this association, and passed a severe act against popish priests and Jesuits, whereby they were required to depart the kingdom, and if any returned they were to be guilty of high treason, and those who harbored them, of felony. A short time after, the queen made an alliance with the king of Scotland for their mutual defense, and the security of the protestant religion.

To be beforehand with the king of Spain, Elizabeth resolved to carry war into America. Accordingly, in 1585, she sent thither Sir Francis Drake, (who some time before had made a voyage round the world,) with a body of land forces under Christopher Carlisle. They took St. Jago, one of the Cape de Verde Islands; St. Domingo and Carthagena, burnt St. Antonio and St. Helena, in Florida, and returned home with a large booty. Ralph Lane, whom Sir Walter Raleigh had left in Virginia, came home with this fleet, and was the first that brought tobacco into England.

Why did she assist the protestants? How was she situated? What was the consequence of the many plots against the queen? What did the parliament do? What alliance was now formed? What did Elizabeth resolve? Why? Consequence? Who first carried tobacco to England?

The queen of Scots was the occasion of continual uneasiness to Elizabeth. Her pretended title to the crown was always made the handle by Elizabeth's enemies, both at home and abroad, for all their plots and conspiracies to destroy her in order to set Mary upon the throne; but their principal view in this was by her means to restore the Roman Catholic religion. It is not strange, then, that since Mary's advancement to the throne could not be brought about but by the destruction of Elizabeth, that the latter should resolve at last to sacrifice her to her own safety, and be pleased with some plausible pretense for that purpose. This, Mary herself, by her indiscretion and the zeal and officiousness of her friends, furnished her with. That both she and her friends should be contriving means for her liberty was not strange; but they always joined with this, not only the restoring her to the throne of Scotland, but placing her on that of England, to which they pretended she had a better title than Elizabeth. This was the pretense for all the plots against her by the pope, the king of Spain, the house of Guise, and the Irish, Scotch and English Catholics, in which Mary had too plainly showed herself to be an accomplice. This was particularly the case of the plot in 1586, called Babington's conspiracy, because he, with several popish priests, was the chief instrument in it. It was laid for a foreign invasion, to kill the queen, free the queen of Scots, and set her on the throne; and was timely discovered by the vigilance and dexterity of secretary Walsingham.

At last the conspirators, to the number of fourteen, were all apprehended, and after impeaching one another, and discovering the whole matter, were arraigned, condemned and executed. As the queen of Scots appeared by letters and otherwise to

Who now occasioned Elizabeth much uneasiness? Why? What was their principal view? What did Elizabeth at last resolve to do? Was it strange that Mary and her friends should contrive means for her liberation? What did they join with this? What did this furnish? Tell about a plot in 1586. What became of the conspirators? Had the queen of Scots any hand in these plots?

have a hand in this conspiracy, it was resolved now to prosecute her on an act of parliament made the preceding year, (and very probably with a view to her,) whereby the person for whom or by whom anything should be attempted against the queen, was made liable to death. Upon this she was tried, convicted, and sentence passed upon her on the 25th of October. Four days after it was approved and confirmed by parliament. On December 6th it was proclaimed in London, and then throughout the kingdom; and on February 7th, following, the sentence was executed upon her, by severing her head from her body, which she suffered with great calmness and resolution.

Elizabeth's policy appeared throughout this whole transaction. She pretended all the time to be in suspense, and to remove the blame from herself it was so managed that the parliament should press her to put the sentence in execution. She still seemed under great perplexity; but at last, upon some rumors of plots and invasions, she signed a warrant for her execution, ordering secretary Davison to keep it privately by him. But being, from her whole behavior, in some doubt about her intention, he showed it to some of the council, and they to the rest, who thought fit to hasten the execution. After which the queen put on a great show of concern and sorrow, drove her privy-counselors from her presence, and ordered them to be examined in the star-chamber; no one suffered but Davison, who was fined £10,000 and imprisoned during the queen's pleasure.

Notwithstanding all this, it is most probable that the execution was not without the queen's approbation. However, this tragical end of the queen of Scots has served for abundant matter of reflection to Elizabeth's enemies. It must be confessed there were some things very irregular in the proceedings against her, and Elizabeth is in no way to be justified but upon the

What was done? When was sentence passed? When executed? Her behavior? Give an account of Elizabeth's behavior in this matter. What is most probable? The effect?

principle of self preservation, which may also serve to justify in some measure the council and the parliament, since they were persuaded that neither the queen, nor themselves, nor the protestant religion could be safe without the death of Mary; and it was certainly no more reconcilable to the principles of strict justice to murder Elizabeth in order to restore popery, than to put Mary to death in order to keep it out; and it is natural for those who are in possession to take care to secure themselves.

The next year, (1588,) is memorable for a vigorous attempt against the queen and the protestant religion, made by king Philip, of Spain; to which he was encouraged by the pope, who on this occasion again thundered out the anathemas of the church against Elizabeth. Philip had long been making vast preparations for an expedition against England. In the meantime, the queen had made all necessary preparations for opposing this formidable invasion. Twenty thousand men were disposed along the southern coasts; an army of 22,000 foot and 1,000 horse were encamped at Tilbury; and there was another army of 34,000 foot and 2,000 horse to guard the queen's person; and she fitted out a fleet under the most experienced commanders to oppose this Spanish fleet, which they already called the *Invincible Armada*.

It consisted of 130 ships, 20 caravels, and 10 salvos, having above 20,000 soldiers on board, with seamen, ammunition and provision in proportion. This formidable fleet put to sea about the beginning of June, but being dispersed by a storm, it was July 19th before they entered the channel, where the English fleet kept close to them, and took some of their ships. On the 24th there was an engagement which was disadvantageous to the Spaniards. On the 27th the Spanish fleet came to an anchor off Calais, where they were followed by the English

What excuse is pleaded in defense of Elizabeth's conduct? For what is 1588 memorable? What of the preparations on both sides? Give an account of the fleet. What was it called? What happened to the fleet? Describe the engagement of the 24th. On the 27th.

fleet, which now consisted of 140 ships of war, not so large indeed as were the Spanish ships, but more easily managed. While the Spanish admiral lay off the coast of Calais, the English admiral in the night sent in among them eight fire-ships, which so terrified them that they cut their cables and put to sea in the utmost confusion. In short, the whole fleet was now dispersed, and the Spaniards made the best of their way toward home. Only sixty ships of this vast armament returned to Spain. The Spaniards suffered so much in this expedition, and some others in this reign, that they have never recovered to this day.

The earl of Leicester, the queen's favorite, died this year; and John Fox, the famous Martyrologist, the year before.

In 1592, Roderigo Lopez, a Jew, who was the queen's physician; two Portuguese, and Patrick Cullen, an Irishman, were bribed by the Spanish government to make way with the queen by poison; but the plot being discovered, they were seized and executed.

In 1592, Sir Walter Raleigh made a second expedition to America, which was attended with no great success, as neither was that of Drake and Hawkins, who were sent thither by the queen, and both died in the expedition.

The Spaniards in 1596 and 1597 made a second and third invasion of England, both of which were unsuccessful.

In 1598, Henry IV. of France made a separate peace with the king of Spain. And now the queen and *States* agreed to carry on the war against Spain by themselves, for which purpose a new treaty was made between them, in which Elizabeth had the address to turn all to her advantage. The same year Philip of Spain, so famous for his projects against England

What became of the Spanish fleet? How many ships returned to Spain? Consequences to Spain? What distinguished persons died this year? Give an account of a plot to poison the queen? What of Sir Walter Raleigh? Of Drake and Hawkins? What happened in 1596? In 1597? The result? What took place in 1598? What followed?

and the Protestant religion, died, and was succeeded by his son, Philip III.

Spencer the poet died too, this year ; and Hooker, author of Ecclesiastical Polity, the year following.

Robert Devereux, earl of Essex, a young nobleman of lively wit, had been for some time in favor with the queen, in consequence of which she had raised him to several posts and commands, which he, ascribing to his own merits, became proud, vain and presumptuous ; imagined he could govern the queen herself, and sometimes disobeyed her express orders. At length he carried his insolence so far in maintaining his opinion on a certain affair, contrary to that of the queen, as to turn his back upon her with an air of contempt ; at which she was so provoked that she gave him a box on the ear ; he instantly clapped his hand on his sword, protesting with an oath, that *he neither could nor would put up with such an affront ; and if Henry VIII. were alive, he could not have taken it from him ;* and so withdrew from court. Yet after this, upon making his submission, the queen pardoned him ; though it is probable that from this time his mind was wholly set upon revenge. In 1599, the earl of Tyrone having raised a rebellion in Ireland, the earl of Essex was sent over with an army to stop his progress. But here he acted so contrary to the queen's orders that she suspected him of some ill design ; and when she wrote him about it, he went over to England without leave, to justify himself. But he was put under arrest and confined at the lord-keeper's house. Upon his humbling himself, the queen permitted him to retire to his own house, but forbade him from coming to court. Here he meditated revenge ; it was thought by his conduct, that he even aspired to the crown. His house was open to all malcontents, papists as well as puritans ; he enter-

When did Philip of Spain die ? For what was he famous ? By whom was Philip succeeded ? Who died about this time ? Give an account of Robert Devereux ? An instance of his insolence ? What happened afterwards ? History of the rebellion in 1599 ? Essex's conduct ? Consequence ?

tained the swordsmen in and about London, and established a council to consult what was to be done in his favor. But his enemies at court had spies about him to inform them of what passed, which they did not fail of representing to the queen as much to his disadvantage as possible. The queen sent some of her counselors to know the reason of so great a concourse at his house; but they were made prisoners, and immediately the earl marched out with his company and endeavored to raise the city of London, but he was disappointed. In the meantime the court had taken all necessary precautions, and he was proclaimed a traitor in many parts of the city. Upon this, he with much difficulty got back to his house, which was presently invested by the lord admiral; and the earl and his associates being at last obliged to surrender, were sent, some to the tower, and some to other prisons. These things were transacted in 1600 and 1601.

Lee, one of the earl's confidants and an intimate friend of the earl of Tyrone, was the first that was executed; by whose confession it appeared that Essex was in confederacy with that rebel against the queen.

In February, 1601, the earls of Essex and Southampton were both tried and condemned to die; Southampton's life was spared, but he was kept in prison. Essex was beheaded. He made a full confession, and expressed great sorrow for his rash conduct. The queen showed some irresolution when the fatal day came, which has furnished some writers with matter for plays and romances, in which she is represented as tossed between the passions of *love* and *rage*; but as she was then in her sixty-eighth year, one would think there could be no great reason for such an imagination.

Some others of the earl's accomplices were executed, and the rest fined or imprisoned.

His subsequent conduct? What did the queen do? Consequence? What became of the conspirators? How was Essex's complicity discovered? Give an account of the trial of Essex and Southampton? The result? The queen's conduct? What has this furnished? Who else were executed?

Towards the end of the year (1601) the queen did a very popular act. Complaints having been brought before the Commons, of certain monopolies authorized by her letters patent, she no sooner understood that the parliament deemed them so many infringements of the people's privileges, but, without staying to be addressed, she annulled most of them and left the rest to the laws.

The Irish war was successfully carried on this year.

Queen Elizabeth having got the better of all her enemies, and governed the nation so long in peace, notwithstanding all the repeated efforts to disturb her reign, fell sick at the beginning of the year 1603; and being now old, and her illness increasing, she grew somewhat melancholy, especially when she observed that most of her courtiers neglected her, and began to make their court to the king of Scots, her presumptive heir. When she was near her end, the council sent some of their body to desire her to name her successor. She answered at first somewhat obscurely, but being pressed to explain herself, she at last named the king of Scots, and soon after expired, on the 24th of March, in the seventieth year of her age, and forty-fifth of her reign. She was buried at Westminster Abbey.

This queen had many virtues and excellent qualities, and but few faults; she had great abilities, and understood the art of governing perfectly well. To make herself beloved of her subjects, to be frugal of her revenue, and to keep up dissensions amongst her enemies, were the maxims by which she steered her course and kept herself and people in peace. Her dissimulation had generally a right turn, which was to preserve her own dominions, and not to encroach upon her neighbors. She put some papists to death, but none purely on account of religion, but for plotting against her and the state; or attempting to de-

What did Elizabeth do in 1601? What of the Irish war in this year? Give an account of Elizabeth's sickness and death? What did the council do? Whom did she name as successor? When and at what age did she die? Her character and abilities?

stroy the protestant religion by violent methods. Some puritans also suffered death in her reign, for writing what were called *seditionous* books, chiefly against the supposed errors of the church establishment.

The severe statutes made against them for debarring them of liberty of conscience can not be justified; perhaps they were too obstinate, but their enemies were certainly too uncharitable.

She caused justice to be duly administered, and trade and commerce to flourish, of her regard to which there are many instances; and England under her enjoyed a state of felicity unknown in the reigns of most of her predecessors.

The present method of maintaining the poor, and choosing overseers in every parish was established in this reign. The famous Bourse for the convenience of merchants was also built, to which queen Elizabeth gave the name of the Royal Exchange.

What was established in this reign? What built? What name given?

THE STUART FAMILY

(1603)

JAMES I.

(1625)

UPON the death of Elizabeth, James VI., of Scotland, succeeded to the English throne in 1603, by the name of James I.

He was the first of the Stuart family who reigned in England. He was now in his thirty-seventh year, and had been king of Scotland ever since he was a year old, upon the deposition of Queen Mary, his mother, who was the daughter of James V., son of James IV., by Margaret, eldest daughter of Henry VII.

James was the nearest in blood to Elizabeth, by his descent from Margaret, her aunt, though she did not think fit to declare him her successor till she was near her end, that by keeping him in suspense she might have him the more dependent upon her.

But, just before her death, she nominated him as her successor, and, immediately upon her demise, he was proclaimed king of England, &c.

Towards the end of the last reign there were two factions at court; the one consisting of the friends, the other of the enemies of the earl of Essex, whom the king held in regard. Prominent among the enemies of the earl were Sir Walter Raleigh and secretary Cecil. The latter, foreseeing how things would go after the queen's death, with much policy made his peace at once with the king of Scots, by holding a private correspondence with him and acquainting him with all that passed at court. By such means he alone of his party had secured the new king's favor.

Who succeeded Elizabeth? When ascend the throne? The first of what family? His former history and descent? Why did not Elizabeth sooner declare him her successor? Give an account of the two factions at court.

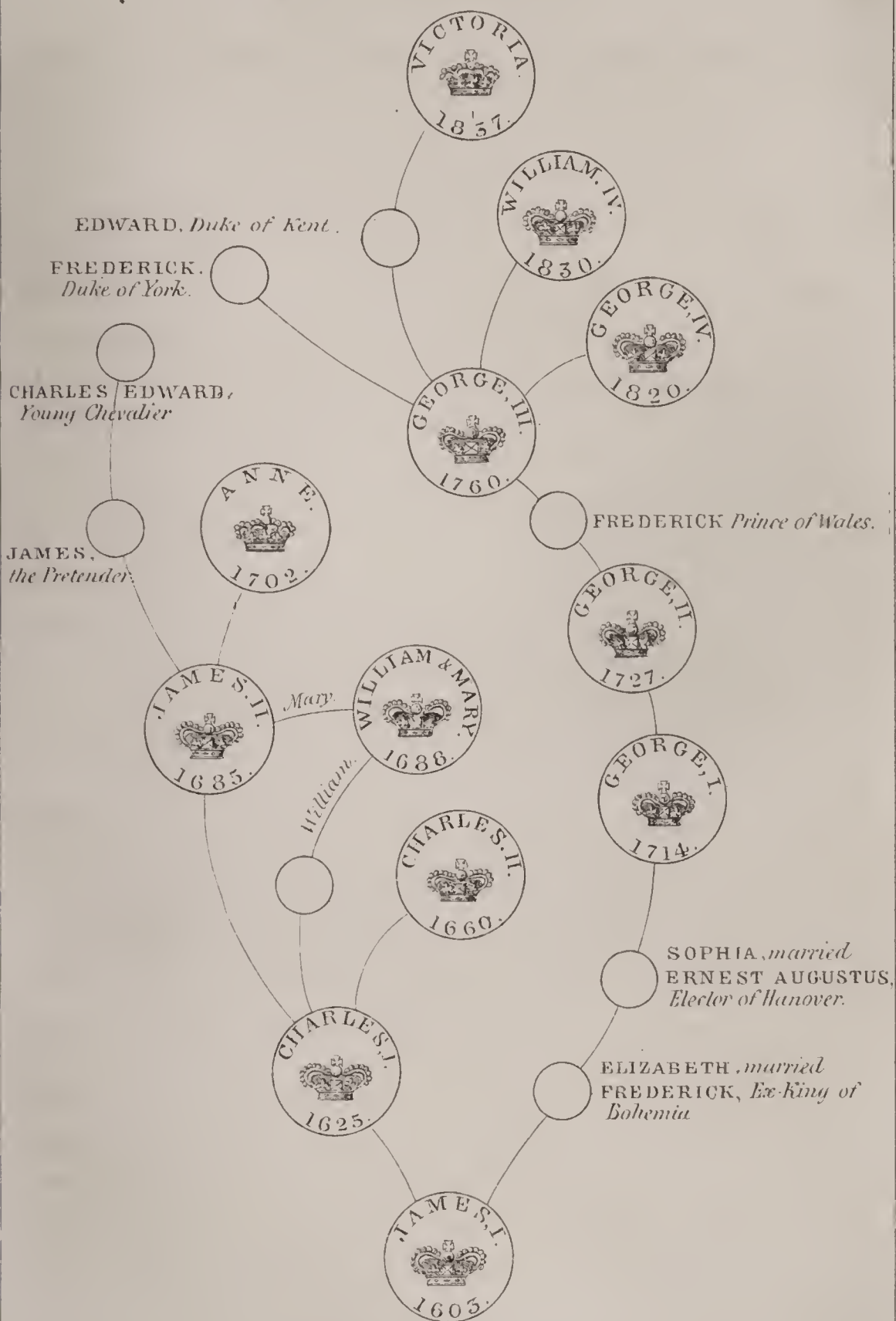


Plate illustrating the succession in Stuart Family, and the descent of the present reigning Family from James I

The council having sent the king notice of his accession, he set out for England, attended by several Scotch lords and others, where he was received with loud acclamations of welcome. The multitude were so extravagant in their expressions of joy, that an honest, blunt Scotchman in the company said, "*This people will spile a gude king.*"

When he arrived at York, most of the English noblemen came and made their obeisance to him. He arrived in London in May. Before he came to London he restored the earl of Southampton and the son of the earl of Essex to their titles and estates; but the lords Cobham, Grey, Sir Walter Raleigh, and others who had been enemies to Essex, met with a very cold reception. The king soon sent for his queen, Anne, sister to the king of Denmark, and mother of his three children, Henry, Elizabeth and Charles.

Before the king and queen were crowned, in July, a conspiracy was discovered for setting Arabella Stuart, the king's cousin, on the throne. The authors were lords Grey and Cobham, Sir Walter Raleigh, Sir Griffith Markham, George Brook, two priests, Watson and Clark, and others. It was thought by some that Count Aremberg, ambassador from the archduke, and the infanta Isabella, was the first to encourage the plot, to compromise Raleigh, whom the Spaniards most dreaded, and that afterwards the count gave information of the plot to the king. Others looked upon it as a state trick, to weaken a party that wished to have the king tied to articles upon his succession, and devised by Cecil, to ruin those who might otherwise ruin him. However, they were condemned to die, and Raleigh in particular, upon the written evidence of one single witness, the lord Cobham, without being confronted as the law required. Only

Upon notice of his accession what did the king do? How received? What happened at York? When did he arrive in London? What did he do before he reached London? What as to Essex's enemies? What did James soon do? Whom marry? What of his children? What conspiracy was soon discovered? Who the authors? What did some think? What did others think? What was the consequence?

the two priests and Brook were executed; the rest were sent back to prison, but soon after released, except Sir Walter Raleigh, who continued twelve years in the tower, where he wrote his history of the world.

King James was often thought to be a favorer of the Romanists in Scotland, and therefore the papists in England flattered themselves that their religion would be fully tolerated under him. But though he had no aversion to the popish religion, he hated the doctrine of the Jesuits and priests concerning the power of the pope to depose kings, and absolve their subjects from allegiance; and he found it was not in his power to grant a full toleration to other Romanists, how much soever he desired it. So they received no other answer to their petition than that he thought himself obliged to maintain what he found settled in the kingdom at his accession.

The puritans were even more disappointed than the Romanists. They thought that a king educated in their religion, and who had professed it for so many years, would be very favorable to them. But though James had sworn to the religion of the Kirk, he had always hated it in his heart; and after he went to England he took the first opportunity to mortify the presbyterians. But to do it with a grace, when they presented their petition, not only for a toleration but for reforming certain things in the doctrine, discipline and worship of the Church of England, and which the bishops strenuously opposed, he appointed a conference between the divines of both parties. The king himself undertook the cause of the Episcopalians, and answered the Presbyterian ministers' arguments, sometimes with reasons and sometimes with authority and menaces, which was pleasing to the bishops.

The result was that the Puritans were deemed obstinate, and

What became of Raleigh? What did he do? What did the papists hope? James' view of the matter? Answer the papists received? How was it with the puritans? What did they think? James' feelings in regard to presbyterian religion? What did he do? How? What next do? The result?

threatened with the rigor of the laws unless they conformed. Many were forced to leave their country and seek refuge in foreign parts; and multitudes prepared to transport themselves and families to the new settlements in America.

James had much higher notions of the royal prerogative than was consistent with the English constitution. He thought that the power of kings was above control, and that parliaments and the people's privileges were so many encroachments upon the sovereigns, or at best but concessions made by them which they might revoke at pleasure.

In applying these high maxims, King James, through his whole reign, endeavored to encroach upon the privileges of parliament, and to set himself above the laws. In these principles and practices he was flattered and encouraged by his ministers, and by his bishops and clergy. The consequences were a weak government at home, and contempt of the nation abroad. dissensions and disputes between the king and his parliaments, and uneasiness and murmuring among the people. All which, together with the constant inclination he showed to favor the Romanists, and his severity towards the protestant non-conformists, laid the foundation of the miseries which followed in his son's reign.

A proclamation was published on February 22, commanding all Jesuits and popish priests to depart the kingdom; in which the king took care to show that he did not banish them from any hatred to the Romish religion, but only for their holding the doctrine of the pope's power over kings, and intimated that he would have regard to the tender consciences of the moderate Romanists. It was not so with his proclamation which came out soon after against the puritans. Here was no indulgence shown to *tender consciences*, but they were all, as obstinate people, to be compelled to conformity.

James' notions of the royal prerogative? What did he think? The consequence? By whom was he encouraged? The consequence? What proclamation published in Feb., 1604? What was he careful to do? What intimate? What of another proclamation?

James' first parliament met in March, to whom he made a long, tedious and intricate speech. He was careful to mention his hereditary right to the crown. He bore very hard upon the puritans, but spoke more favorably of the papists, expressing his desire of tolerating them, and even of meeting them half-way, if they would but lay aside their tenets of the pope's power to dethrone kings, and the lawfulness of killing them when so deposed, but so long as the popish clergy maintained and taught these doctrines, he thought they were not to be suffered in the kingdom. But the main business of this speech was to recommend the uniting of the two kingdoms of England and Scotland, that as there was but one head there might be but one body. This was a point he had much at heart, and to pave the way to it he ordered himself to be proclaimed king of *Great Britain*. But the king's partiality to his Scotch courtiers so raised the jealousy of the English that the union he so earnestly desired was not consummated.

The commons presented an address to the king, complaining of certain grievances and representing their privileges, with which they supposed him not thoroughly acquainted, as he had interfered in their debates about the controverted elections, which they claimed the sole privilege of determining. This address so displeased the king that he prorogued the parliament to February. In the meantime he concluded a peace with Spain, not much to the honor of the nation.

The thorough papists, who held the unlimited power of the pope, finding that there was no likelihood that any indulgence would be granted them, formed a conspiracy against the king and estates of the realm, called the *Gunpowder Plot**. The design was to blow up the parliament house, while the king

When did James' first parliament meet? Tell about James' speech. The main object of the speech? The result? What did the commons do? The consequence? What did James do in the meantime? What is said of it? Give an account of a conspiracy formed against the king and parliament.

* The papists assert that this plot was the invention of Cecil, earl of Salisbury, to prejudice the minds of the people against their religion.

was delivering his speech to the lords and commons, and so at once destroy both king and parliament. The chief conspirators were Catesby, Percy, Grant, Rookwood, Wright, Tresham, Digby, Robert and Thomas Winter and Guy Fawkes. One of them hired a cellar under the house of lords, as if for his own convenience, and thither by night conveyed thirty-six barrels of gunpowder, covering them with coals, billets and faggots.

The parliament was to have met in February, 1605, but was prorogued to October, and then to the 5th of November. Then it was, that this design was to be put in execution.

A few days before, it was happily discovered by means of a letter, as has been commonly thought, which one of the conspirators sent to the lord Monteagle, without name or date, advising him not to go to the parliament on that day, for "they should receive a terrible blow, and yet not see who hurt them;" which the king interpreted to be a blow with gunpowder.

A search was made, and *Guy Fawkes*, who was to set fire to the train, was first discovered with a dark lantern, tinder-box and matches in his pocket. Then removing the coals and wood, they found the powder. Fawkes continued obstinate for some time, but being shown the rack, he discovered his accomplices; of whom, seven, together with himself, were executed in January following; and not long after, Oldcorn and Garnet, two Jesuits, for concealing and abetting the plot. Besides those who were executed, Catesby and Percy were killed as they were endeavoring to escape from a house which the sheriff had invested. The parliament appointed the fifth of November to be annually observed as a day of thanksgiving for this great deliverance.

In 1609, a treaty was concluded between Spain and the United Provinces, whereby the Provinces were acknowledged a free and independent state, after a brave struggle of above forty years in defense of their liberties.

What treaty was concluded in 1609? The consequence?

In 1607, a new translation of the Bible, that now in use, was begun, which was published in 1611.

Matters did not go on very smoothly between the king and parliament in 1610. The commons complained of many grievances, such as the king's enriching his courtiers, especially the Scots; his regard to the Romanists; vigorous proceedings against the Puritans, &c. The king sent for both houses, and endeavored to vindicate himself in a speech, using extravagant expressions concerning the kingly power, more agreeable to an absolute monarchy than the English constitution.

The parliament, aware of his designs, resolved to guard against them; but not thinking it proper to carry the matter any farther at this time, they granted him a subsidy, and then were prorogued, and not long after dissolved by proclamation, after having continued seven years.

During this session, Henry, the king's eldest son, was created prince of Wales; as prince Charles had some time before been created duke of York.

No other parliament was called till 1614, and in the mean time the ministers endeavored to supply the king's wants, by ways and means not very agreeable to the people.

Henry IV. of France, though he turned papist for the sake of his crown, was not thought zealous enough in the popish cause, and therefore he was assassinated at the instigation of the Jesuits. The news of this alarmed king James, who by fresh proclamation banished all Jesuits and priests from the kingdom, and forbade all recusants, or such as refused to take the new oath of allegiance, to come within ten miles of the court.

King James had thus far no favorite on whom to bestow his intimate affections; but in 1611 he was captivated by a young

What memorable thing was commenced in 1607? When published? How were matters between the king and parliament? What did the commons do? The king? The parliament? What was next done? Next parliament, when called? What did the ministers do? How? What else done by this parliament? What did the papists do in France? Why do it? The consequence in England?

Scotch gentleman whose name was Robert Carr. He was a person of but small parts and no learning, but airy and gay, and of a comely and graceful appearance; qualities more pleasing to James than virtue and merit. "Of all wise men," lord Clarendon says, "James was the most delighted with handsome persons and fine clothes."

The king at once knighted him, made him a gentleman of his bed-chamber; afterward treasurer of Scotland; then baron of Branspeth, and viscount Rochester; next, privy counselor and knight of the garter. By the advice of Sir Thomas Overbury, his friend, Rochester behaved very prudently at first. The king was very lavish in his expenditures upon his favorite, whose insolence soon began to be developed. This occasioned a jealousy among other members of his court.

In 1612, Frederick V., Elector Palatine, married the princess Elizabeth, the king's only daughter. About this time Henry, the prince of Wales, died.

There having been no parliament for four years, as the king was desirous of governing without one, he and his ministers were continually inventing new ways to raise money, as by monopolies, benevolences, loans and other illegal methods, which occasioned great murmurs and complaints. But all methods coming short of what the king wanted, a parliament was called in 1614. The commons, instead of granting money first, as was expected, began to enumerate their grievances, and resolved to present an address. Upon this, the king dissolved the parliament without one statute being enacted, and committed several members to prison, who had been the most free in their speeches. And now, to supply the king with money, it was resolved not only to demand, but to extort a benevolence from

Give an account of a favorite of the king. What did lord Clarendon say of James? What of the promotion of this favorite? His conduct? The consequence? What happened in 1612? How did James and his ministers raise money? What next did James do? The commons? The consequence?

the people ; which was accordingly put in practice, but not without great opposition.

Rochester, now earl of Somerset, was still the king's favorite, and governed all at court. But in 1615, his fall was almost as sudden as had been his rise. The first step toward it was the queen's becoming his enemy, and privately forming a party against him. The next was the king's being taken with a new object, George Villiers, a handsome, personable, well dressed young gentleman ; which of course cooled his affection for his old favorite. And his ruin was completed by the discovery of the murder of Sir Thomas Overbury in the tower some time before, at his instigation.

As soon as the king heard of this, he ordered Chief Justice Coke to search the affair to the bottom, without respect to person. Soon after, a number of persons were apprehended, condemned and executed. Somerset was arrested at the same time, and condemned to death, but was afterwards pardoned.

By the disgrace of Somerset, Villiers became sole favorite, and engrossed the king's affections as much as the former had done. And as he held it much longer, he rose to a higher degree of power, which he used well for a short time, while he followed the advice of wise and grave men ; but afterwards discovered extreme vanity, avarice and ambition. The king soon created him lord Whaddon, viscount Villiers and earl of Buckingham. He was shortly made marquis of Buckingham, and lord High Admiral, though he had never been at sea except between Dover and Calais.

The king, having the most extravagant notions of his prerogative, and being wholly influenced by this vain and presumptuous young man, it is no wonder that the rest of this reign, as the former part of it had too much been, was one continued

What method was next resorted to? What of the fall of the favorite? Who was the king's next favorite? Consequence of Somerset's disgrace? Villiers' conduct? How advanced? What is said of the latter part of this reign? The cause of it?

series of misgovernment, bad politics and arbitrary measures. By such means, two parties were formed in the nation, one for the court and the other for the people, which produced most disastrous effects in the following reign.

Prince Charles, now the king's oldest son, was created prince of Wales in 1616. The king was desirous of marrying him, and entered into negotiation for a marriage between the prince and the infanta Maria, daughter of Philip III., king of Spain, an avowed enemy to the Protestant religion. This negotiation, by the artifices of Spain, was drawn out for several years; during which time James' desire for the match made him the dupe of that court, to the detriment of the Protestant cause, and contempt of him and his government.

King James hated the Puritans because he thought their notions of church government made them enemies of monarchy in the state. He therefore endeavored to reduce the church of Scotland, which was Presbyterian, to a conformity with the church of England. With this view, in 1617, he took a journey into Scotland, under pretense of visiting his native country. When there, he required the Scots to admit certain articles which were designed to pave the way to their further conformity, and make them at last wholly Episcopal. This course met with great opposition from the ministers and people, and laid the foundation of what afterward produced fatal consequences.

On his return from Scotland, in opposition to the Puritanical scruple upon that head, he published what is called the *Book of Sports*, allowing dancing, playing and other recreations, on a Sunday after divine service. This gave offense to others besides Puritans, as it was enjoined to be read in all churches,

What was the consequence of James' measures? What occurred in 1616? Of what was the king desirous? What negotiation was entered upon? How conducted? Why did James hate the Puritans? What did he endeavor to do? How? The consequence of this course? What did James do on his return from Scotland? What enjoin?

and those who refused were punished by the High Commission.

Sir Walter Raleigh, after a twelve years' imprisonment in the tower, had his liberty granted him, but without a pardon. His estate being all forfeited, he entertained a project of seeking his fortune in distant countries. And having found means to acquaint his majesty that he knew of a rich gold mine in Guiana, in America, he obtained a commission to go in quest of it. The king, no doubt, was tempted with the hopes of gain by the project. Being supplied with men, money, and ships, he set sail in August, 1617. But the expedition proving unsuccessful, the sailors, vexed at their disappointment, compelled him to return to England, where he was immediately arrested by the king's order, and sent to the tower.

As Guiana belonged to Spain, Gondemar ceased not to stir up the king against Raleigh, and demanded that he should be punished, otherwise the treaty for the marriage of his son with the Infanta would be broken off. This induced the king to sacrifice Raleigh to the Spaniard's resentment. And this brave man, who had deserved so well of his country, was beheaded in October, 1618, by virtue of the sentence passed upon him fifteen years before, notwithstanding his pleading that the king's commission was equivalent to a pardon. What opinion Prince Henry had of him appears by his saying, "That no king but his father would keep such a bird in a cage," meaning the tower.

In 1619, Queen Anne, the king's consort, died of apoplexy.

An affair happened abroad about this time, in which James could not avoid being concerned; but he took such measures in relation to it as lost him more and more the esteem and affec-

The consequence? Give an account of Sir Walter Raleigh, the cause and manner of his death. What did Prince Henry say? When did Queen Anne die? What of an affair abroad at this time? King's course? The consequence? Give a history of the transaction and the consequence.

tion of his subjects, and brought him into great contempt among foreigners.

The protestants in Bohemia had refused to acknowledge Ferdinand of Austria as their sovereign, and chose Frederick, Elector Palatine, son-in-law of King James, for their king. A war ensued; but James, who disapproved of the Palatinate's accepting the crown of Bohemia, stood neutral, in vain endeavoring to accommodate matters by negotiations, till in the battle of Prague, November 7th, 1620, Frederick was totally routed, and forced to flee into Holland. The next year the Upper Palatinate was conquered by the duke of Bavaria, and the Lower by the Spaniards.

Thus by James' indolence, his son-in-law was stripped of his crown, and deprived of his hereditary dominions, and the Protestant religion ruined in Bohemia.

The cause of the king's conduct was the Spanish match, which furnished the king of Spain with means of amusing him, and keeping him in a peaceable disposition, whilst he secured all possible advantages for the house of Austria, of which he was a branch, and for the Romish religion.

The murmurs of the people about the Palatinate, occasioned the calling of a parliament, which met in January, 1621.

The king, under a pretense of going to war about the matter, obtained two subsidies from parliament; but when they saw no preparations for war, and yet that James demanded still more money, instead of readily granting it they drew up a remonstrance about the increase of popery at home, the state of the protestant religion abroad, by the neglect of vigorously interposing in the defense of the Palatinate, and against the Spanish match. But the king forbade the presenting of it, and requested them "not to meddle with any thing concerning his government, or deep matters of state."

What was the cause of James' conduct? The effect? What caused the calling of a parliament? How did James obtain subsidies? What next occurred? How was this remonstrance treated?

Upon this the commons drew up a *petition*, and presented it with the remonstrance. The former he received, but rejected the latter, and sent them an angry answer to their petition, charging them with usurping upon his prerogative royal. The parliament, knowing that they were about to be dissolved or prorogued, drew up a *protestation*, maintaining their privileges to be their undoubted birthright. The king hereupon ordered the Journal Book to be brought to him, when, with his own hand, he took the said *protestation* out of the journal, declaring it to be invalid, null, void, and of no effect. Soon after he dissolved the parliament, and committed to prison several members who were most zealous in maintaining their privileges, among whom was Sir Edward Coke.

This opposition between the king and parliament produced the two parties before mentioned, who, in after times, came to be distinguished by the names of *Whigs* and *Tories*.

During this session, Sir Francis Bacon, the Lord Chancellor, was adjudged guilty of bribery and corruption, his chancellorship taken from him, and his estate forfeited. To bring about this Spanish match, the king had made every concession which the pope or king of Spain demanded in favor of the Romish religion, even to the granting a full toleration to the papists for the future. But the match was finally broken off by the management of the duke of Buckingham; from what motives, it is uncertain. From this time the king ruled no more, but was wholly under the direction of the prince and Buckingham, who kept him in a state of servile subjection.

As a war with Spain must be a consequence of breaking off the match, and as money must be had for that purpose, the prince and duke persuaded the king to call a parliament. As the match was very disagreeable to the nation, this parliament

What did the commons next do? The consequence? What did parliament next do? What did the king do? Give an account of the two parties and their names. What of Sir Francis Bacon? What did the king do to bring about the match? How was it finally broken off? The consequence?

unanimously advised him to break it off, (a thing which was already done,) and gave largely for the war.

The commons soon after presented a petition for banishing all Jesuits and seminary priests. The king returned a favorable answer, and a seeming harmony was restored between him and his parliament. But about this time, a treaty of marriage was set on foot, between the prince and Henrietta Maria, of France, daughter of Henry IV., in which much the same advantages were stipulated for Romanists in England, as by the Spanish treaty.

The articles were signed November 10th, 1624. But the king died before the marriage was consummated, in March, 1625, in the 59th year of his age, after a reign of 22 years.

King James is represented by some as a very learned king; by others, as a mere pedant.

It is certain that the court of England, in his time, was the most impolitic then in Europe; very different from what it had been in Elizabeth's reign.

James had high notions of his maxims of government, though they brought great inconveniences upon him. His dissimulation was gross and obvious, and not the effect of refined policy. And of his religion, it may be said, that he was neither a sound Protestant nor a good Romanist.

(1625)

CHARLES I.

(1649)

Charles I., son of James I., ascended the throne in 1625.

The bad policy of King James appeared in nothing more than in his falling out with his parliaments, which was mainly owing to his extravagant notion of regal power, and brought many inconveniences. Happy had it been if his successor, Charles I., had taken warning by the imprudent management

What did this parliament do? The commons? The king? Tell about another treaty of marriage, the stipulations, &c. When, and at what age did the king die? James' character? When did Charles I. ascend the throne? In what did James' bad policy appear? The consequences?

of his father, and thus have avoided the rock on which he split. But being brought up in the same high notions of prerogative, he trod in the same steps; nay, took larger strides towards arbitrary power, than even his father had done.

By this means the party which decided with the people against the court grew every day more formidable; men's passions on both sides were heated; mutual distrust and jealousy took place; and religion also, mixing in the quarrel, the patrons of civil liberty took their advantage of it, till enthusiasm, which gathered strength from the arbitrary proceedings of the court, and the severity of the hierarchy, grew rampant in its turn, and overturned not only the hierarchy, but the monarchy too.

The chief cause of the difficulty between Charles and his parliament, in the beginning of his reign, was the determination of the king to stand by the duke of Buckingham, who was more the favorite of king Charles than he had been of his father, and who had been impeached of high crimes and misdemeanors.

The king's marriage with Henrietta Maria, of France, took place in May, 1625. This marriage proved very unhappy to the nation, gave great encouragement to the papists, and was one main source of the misfortunes of this reign.

The first parliament met in June, when the king in his speech exhorted them to attempt the recovery of the palatinate by force of arms, for which he demanded a supply. After some complaints and debates about grievances, the commons gave the king two subsidies; but, at the same time, both houses joined in a petition setting forth the great dangers from the increase of popery, the causes of this increase, and the remedies for preventing this evil in future; to which the king gave a satisfactory answer, but his actions were not agreeable thereto.

What course did Charles pursue in this respect? What the consequence? What was the cause of the first difficulty between Charles and his parliament? When and whom did Charles marry? The consequence? Give a history of Charles' first parliament.

On the 11th of July, the parliament was adjourned, by the king's order, to the 1st of August, when they met at Oxford, by reason of the plague which raged in London, as it had done in the first year of king James.

An affair soon happened which heightened the discontents of the commons and the people in general: King James having promised to lend some ships to the French king, to serve against the allies of Spain, Admiral Pennington was now sent to Dieppe, with the Vantguard man of war, and seven stout merchant ships. It soon appeared that the French king designed to make use of them against his protestant subjects; upon which the crews deserted to a man, rather than fight against their fellow protestants; and yet Pennington was ordered by the court to put these ships into the hands of the French, to be employed as they thought fit. This occasioned a distrust of the king, a jealousy of the queen, and a general odium against the duke of Buckingham.

The king perceiving that the commons would grant no further supply, dissolved them. But wanting money for the expedition against Spain, he raised it by a forced loan upon his subjects, which increased the popular discontents. The fleet sailed in October, but returned without doing any thing, which proved a new subject of complaint.

The king was crowned in February, 1626; and being still in want of money, he called a new parliament, which met the same month. This parliament was no more favorable to the king's designs than the former had been; they even made greater complaints against the public grievances.

The king sent a message to the house to hasten the supply, but the commons thought the redress of grievances should go before it: upon which the king sent them another message, and

What soon heightened the discontent of the people? What was done? The result? Why did the king dissolve the parliament? What do next? What of the fleet? When was the king crowned? What did Charles next do? What is said of this parliament? What did the king do?

among other things, said, "I must let you know, that I will not allow any of my servants to be questioned amongst you, much less such as are of eminent place, and near unto me." This did not hinder the commons from examining the conduct of the duke of Buckingham, and resolving to impeach him in form; in order to which, a question was moved and carried, "that common fame was a good ground of proceeding for the house." Nevertheless, to show that they were not unwilling to supply the king's wants, provided their grievances were first redressed, they voted four subsidies and three-fifteenths; but their design was that this vote should not pass into an act till they had received satisfaction. Upon this the king severely reprimanded the commons, complaining of their animosity against the duke; of the scantiness of the supply, and the manner of granting it; and in the end said, "remember that parliaments are altogether in my power, for their calling, sitting, and dissolution; therefore as I find the fruits of them good or evil, they are to continue, or not to be."

This did not intimidate the commons, who drew up a remonstrance and presented it to the king to justify their proceedings; and then went on with their articles of accusation against the duke.

About the same time an affair happened in the house of lords, which gave the court no small disturbance: The earl of Bristol was under confinement by Buckingham's influence, in order to hinder him from giving a true account of the transactions in Spain, in relation to the marriage alluded to in the former reign; and had hitherto no writ of summons to parliament, and taking advantage of the disposition the commons were in, petitioned the lords to intercede with his majesty, that he might have his summons according to his privilege as a peer. In a

The commons? The king? What say? The effect upon the commons? What question carried? What did the commons vote? Why did they do this? What their design? What did the king do? What say? Commons next do? Relate an affair that happened about this time. Give an account of it. What did the king do? What is said of the earl's defense?

second petition to the lords, the earl acquainted them with his case, and desired permission to bring his accusation against the duke, who had not only wronged him in his narrative of the proceedings, but also imposed upon the late king, his present majesty, the state, and the parliament.

The king, who was resolved to stand by the duke, was so offended at this proceeding of the earl of Bristol, that he ordered the attorney-general to exhibit to the house a charge of high treason against him. The earl defended himself so well, and gave such an authentic account of the whole affair, directly contrary to what the duke had given, as justified his conduct in the eye of the world, and showed the duke's relation to be nothing but downright forgery and prevarication.

Soon after the earl had given in his answer, and exhibited his charges against the duke, the commons brought up to the lords their declaration and impeachment against the duke, containing thirteen articles of misdemeanors, misprisions, offenses and crimes. Sir Dudley Diggs opened the charge, and Sir John Elliot concluded. Diggs and Elliot were soon after sent to the tower.

The commons then sent a message to the lords, desiring that the duke might be taken into custody, but the lords did not care to do that, for fear of incurring the king's displeasure. The commons also made such a stir about their imprisoned members, that the king thought fit to release them. The commons continued their petitions to the king, and finally waited on him, in a body, to justify their conduct; at which the king was so offended, that he determined to dissolve the parliament. The commons having an intimation of this resolution, made haste to draw up a remonstrance against the duke, as the principal cause of all the grievances in the kingdom; and against ton-

The effect? What followed the earl's answer? What is said of Sir Dudley Diggs, and Sir John Elliot? What did the commons next do? What the lords? What did the commons next? The consequence? Next step of the commons? What did the king determine upon? Next move of the commons?

nage and poundage, which had been levied by the king ever since his accession, though it was never understood to be payable without a special act of parliament in every new reign. But the parliament was dissolved before this remonstrance could be presented. The king now resorted to almost every variety of methods for raising money.

In the mean time, the king having a war with the house of Austria on his hands, and being in continual want of money, declared war with France. Various pretenses were alleged for this war; but be the cause what it may, it was very unreasonable for the king, and was rendered yet more unpopular by his leaving the whole management of it to the duke, who was made admiral of the fleet, consisting of over 100 ships, and commander-in-chief of the land forces, to the number of 7000. But the duke managed matters so badly, and was so dilatory in his proceedings, that being at last pressed by the French, he with difficulty re-embarked, and returned from this inglorious expedition with the loss of some thousands of his men.

The ill success of this expedition drew forth fresh complaints against the duke, and increased the disaffection to the king, who intrusted the whole conduct of it to a person so much disliked, and so inexperienced in military affairs. However, the king determined to equip another fleet, and to send it under the same commander

In the mean time, he was greatly distressed for want of money. In this difficulty the king took advice upon the matter and called another parliament, which met in March, 1628. The king pressed them to a speedy supply, and told them if they did not their duty herein, he must use those other means which God had put into his hands. Then the lord-keeper magnified

Why was not the remonstrance presented? What did the king next do? What was the position of the king at this time? What did he do? What rendered the war more unpopular? How did the duke of Buckingham manage? The consequence? The effect upon the people? What did the king now determine on? When did the king call another parliament? What did the king do? What say? What the lord-keeper?

the dangers from abroad to induce the commons to grant an immediate supply ; and said, "though parliaments were the fittest, they were not the only way ;" bidding them remember his majesty's admonition.

The commons, instead of acting upon the supply, entered at once upon the consideration of the grievances of the nation. However, they at length voted a supply in general, and upon a message from the king to hasten it, promising that he would agree to any expedient for securing their persons and properties, by way of bill or otherwise, they unanimously granted five subsidies ; but at the same time resolved that supply and grievances should go hand in hand.

The commons, not wishing to depend upon his mere promise, at once set to work and prepared the famous act called the *Petition of Right*, whereby the grievances were declared to be illegal, and the rights of the subject established ; particularly, "that no man hereafter be compelled to make or yield any gift, loan, benevolence, tax, or such like charge, without common consent by act of parliament." The king used all manner of arts to hinder this bill from being presented to him, but the commons were resolute, and the king, on June 7th, went to the house of peers and gave them such plain and direct answers as were satisfactory, after which, the subsidy bill was passed by the commons. Other grievances remaining still unredressed, the commons at once proceeded to frame a remonstrance against certain practices, when the king went in haste to the parliament and prorogued it, October 20th.

As the duke of Buckingham was about to embark from Portsmouth with a second fleet, prepared by the king, he was assassinated. The king was sensibly affected with this tragical end of his favorite. The fleet, however, sailed for Rochelle, but

What did the commons do? What did they vote? The conditions? What did the king promise? What did the commons resolve? What act did they prepare? What declaration? Course of the king? Other acts of the commons? The consequence? Tell of the death of the duke of Buckingham. Its effect upon the king? The result of the expedition?

could not come near the town, by reason of the strong barricado which Cardinal Richelieu had caused to be made. The English fleet had now nothing to do but to make the best of their way home. Soon after, in 1629, a peace was concluded between the two crowns, which was followed by a peace with Spain the next year. And so these impolitic, sham wars ended.

Parliament met again in January, which was dissolved in March, the whole time being employed as were the former and subsequent parliaments of this reign in one continual struggle between *privilege* and *prerogative*; the commons by their determined course growing in importance and insisting upon a redress of all their grievances, as a condition precedent to granting supplies.

The nation was now for a period of eleven years without a parliament, during which time the ministers were fruitful in pretenses and illegal schemes for raising money. All these things served only to widen the breach between the king and people.

In May, 1633, the king took a journey into Scotland; he was crowned at Edinburgh, held a parliament which gave him a large subsidy, and took some steps towards his favorite project of establishing Episcopacy in Scotland, and introducing the English ceremonies there.

He returned in July, and in opposition to the Puritans, supported wakes and revels on Sundays, and renewed and confirmed his father's proclamation allowing diversions and recreations on a Sunday, after divine service. In 1634, Prynne, for writing against stage plays, reflecting on the court and bishops, was sentenced to be set in the pillory, to have his ears cut off, to be imprisoned during pleasure, and fined five thousand pounds. These severities only served to open the people's mouths the more against them.

Why? English fleet do next? What soon followed? Give a history of the next parliament. How long before another parliament was called? In the meantime what did the ministers do? The consequence? Give an account of the king's visit to Scotland. What did he do when he returned? What of Prynne?

In 1635, Thomas Parr died, aged 152 years; he was born in the last year of the reign of Edward IV., so that he had lived in the reigns of ten kings and queens of England.

From what King Charles did in Scotland, in the year 1637, we may date the beginning of his ruin. This was his attempting to impose upon the Scotch nation Episcopal government, and the discipline, ceremonies and service of the Church of England. He first sent down a book of canons, and then the liturgy, or service-book, ordering it to be read on such a day. When the dean began to read it in St. Giles' church, at Edinburgh, there was such a noise, tumult, and clamor among the people, that not a word could be heard. In other churches in Edinburgh there were like tumults. The magistrates in vain commanded silence. The malcontents seemed at first to be only the meaner sort of people, but they were soon openly abetted by great numbers of the nobility and gentry.

At last, in 1638, they appointed committees to manage their affairs; one of the nobility, another of the gentry, a third of the burghers, and a fourth of the ministers; also a general Table, consisting of commissioners from the other four. From these Tables proceeded their famous *Solemn League and Covenant*, for the maintenance of their religion from all innovations, subscribed by almost the whole nation.

A general assembly met at Glasgow, November 21st, which the Tables had taken care to have composed of such as were wholly devoted to their interests. The high commissioner dissolved the assembly in the king's name on the 28th. Nevertheless they continued sitting by their own authority, passed several acts against the innovations, and declared Episcopacy to be abolished by the concession of 1580.

The effect of these severities? What can you say of Thomas Parr? How and when did Charles' ruin begin? What did he first do? The effect? The effect in other churches? What was done in 1638? What proceeded from these tables? What next? The consequence? What did the assembly declare?

The courtiers and rigid Episcopalians in England deemed these proceedings no better than rebellion; but the Puritans, among whom we must now reckon all who were dissatisfied with the government, who were by far the most numerous, looked upon the Scots as their friends.

The king soon raised an army to reduce them to obedience. He summoned the nobility to attend him at York, April 1st, 1639, and to bring what forces they could raise; and each county was likewise obliged to raise such a number of troops. When the king arrived at York, he found himself at the head of 20,000 men. The Scots, in the meantime, prepared for their defense, but relied more on their friends in England. They acted with great policy and caution, and punctually observed the king's proclamation, not to approach within ten miles of the borders, thereby showing that the war was not offensive on their part, till the king ordered the earl of Holland to march into Scotland with 4,000 men. Leslie, the Scotch general, sent a body of forces to oppose his march, upon which he halted.

Both armies now being resolved to act on the defensive, the Scots at length sent a petition to the king, beseeching him to appoint commissioners to treat of a peace; which his majesty having consented to, the articles of pacification were agreed on, June 17th; but this was a very precarious and uncertain peace, and consented to by both parties for the purpose of gaining time.

Another rupture, as might have been expected, happened the next year, 1640; for when the king saw that the Scotch parliament was fully determined to abolish Episcopacy, he prorogued it, and resolved to reduce the Scots to their duty by force of arms. Accordingly he raised a numerous army; and as he was in want of money, by advice of his secret council he called

How did the Episcopalians look upon this? What did the king soon do? How? What did the Scots do in the meantime? How did they act? What did the king order? What did Leslie do? What did both armies resolve? What was done? What is said of the peace? Cause of it? What is said of another rupture? King next do? Reason of it? What did the king next do?

a parliament. This parliament meeting, seemed not much inclined to meddle with the Scotch affairs, but took into immediate consideration the many petitions presented them from the several counties for redress of grievances.

The lords, at the request of the king, demanded a conference with the commons, at which they endeavored to show that the supply in the present exigency should go before the grievances.

The commons voted the lords' meddling with the supply, to be a breach of privilege; and the contest between the two houses took up several days, which only retarded the king's affairs. The commons refusing to grant the king's demands, which they deemed exorbitant, the king hastily dissolved the parliament, and all the methods before used were put in practice to raise money for paying the army against the Scots.

The Scots in the meantime continued their preparations for war. General Leslie passed the Tweed with the Scots army, consisting of 22,000 men, on the same day that the king set out for York, where his army lay encamped. The lord Conway was advanced to Newcastle with 4,500 men. Leslie forced the passage of the Tine at Newburn, and obliged Conway to retreat, with the loss of several hundred of his men; and quitting Newcastle in consternation, the Scots immediately entered it and became masters of the town.

They used this advantage with great prudence, to show the English that they had no design against them. They dispersed two manifestoes; one entitled, "Six considerations of the lawfulness of their expedition;" the other, "Intentions of the Scots and their army manifested to their brethren in England." They failed not to show their desire of peace, and sent a humble petition to the king, that he would be graciously pleased to redress their grievances, by the advice of the English parliament.

Action of this parliament? What did the lords demand? What endeavor to show? Vote of the commons? Consequence? What did the king do next? What did the Scots do? Give an account of an engagement. How did they use their advantage? What did they do? Title of manifestoes? What next?

The king, now in the utmost perplexity, summoned a great council of the peers to meet him at York, in order to have their advice. In the meantime, the city of London and the gentry of Yorkshire petitioned him to call a parliament, as the only means of removing the dangers that threatened both him and the state. The king's necessities were now so urgent that he was forced to comply, and a parliament was summoned for the 3d of November.

The parliament having met, the king made them a very mild speech, particularly desiring them to find means for driving the Scots out of the kingdom. The first thing that the commons did, was to appoint a select committee to draw up a remonstrance of all the grievances of the nation. But the king showing a ready compliance in giving his assent to all their bills, the remonstrance was laid aside for the present, and not presented till a year after, when a misunderstanding between the king and parliament began to break out.

The commons now applied themselves in earnest to redress all the public grievances, in which they were very successful, by reason of the king's situation, with an army of Scots in the nation. At the same time, they proceeded vigorously against the authors of the grievances, impeaching many of high treason, and committing them to the tower.

About the same time, the king acquainted the parliament with the marriage of the princess Mary, his eldest daughter, with the prince of Orange. She was mother of king William III.

A bill of four subsidies was passed in February, 1641. And at the same time was also passed the bill for triennial parliaments, ordaining that parliaments should be held at least once in three years.

What did the king do? Who petitioned the king? For what? Did the king comply? Why? Give an account of the action of this parliament? What next action of commons? What information did the king give parliament? Who was Mary? What bills passed in February, 1641?

On June 22d, his majesty signed a temporary bill of *Tonnage* and *Poundage*, the preamble to which declared that the crown had no right to take it without consent of parliament. Not long after, an act was passed for abolishing the *Star Chamber* and *High Commission Courts*.

On the 10th of August, the king set out for Scotland, after having passed the "Act of pacification between the two nations," and "An act for the total abolition of ship-money." Soon after, the armies were disbanded, the parliament having given the Scots £300,000.

The king had not been long in Scotland before parliament was alarmed with the news of a plot in that kingdom; and fearing that it might extend itself into England, they took to themselves a guard, under the earl of Essex, whom the king had left in command on the south side of the Trent. But the greatest impression was made on men's minds by the rebellion and massacre in Ireland, which broke out October 23d, when the Irish rose in all parts of the kingdom, and on that and the few following days, inhumanly butchered over 40,000 English Protestants that were settled there, men, women and children, without distinction of age, sex, or condition.

Unluckily for the king, the Irish pretended they had his authority for what they did, and gave out that their design was to oppose the puritanical parliament in England, and dispersed through the kingdom copies of a pretended commission to them under the great seal. This commission, it is said, was forged. However this might have been, these things made an ill impression on those already disaffected toward the king. Though the parliament did not much regard the calumny against the king, they were, however, filled with distrust; and possibly the leaders might feign a greater distrust than they really felt, in order to

What bill was passed in June? The preamble? What other act was passed? What the king do in August? What happened soon after? What alarmed the king? The effect? Give an account of a rebellion and massacre in Ireland? What did they pretend? What was thought of this commission? The effect of it? How did it affect the parliament?

increase the fears of those members who were, as yet, but half persuaded to join them in their scheme of diminishing the kingly power.

The king returned from Scotland in November, and on the 1st of December the commons presented their famous *petition* and *remonstrance*, reciting all the grievances of the kingdom from the beginning of his reign to the present time, attributing all to evil counselors and a malignant party about the king.

The leaders of the party, who were for retrenching the royal authority, were men of great abilities, and used all their arts to bring others over to their sentiments. The remonstrance was therefore a test to see which party should prevail. A very strong opposition was made to it; but it was at last carried by a majority of nine votes. It was not only presented to his majesty, but, contrary to his express desire, printed and published before he had given his answer to it.

The breach between the king and his parliament may be dated from this time, December, 1641.

If the king had had a mind to break entirely with his parliament, he could not have chosen a more effectual method than the unprecedented step he now took. He sent his attorney-general to the House of Peers, to accuse in his name, of high treason, the lord Kimbolton of that house, and five members of the House of Commons; and to deliver articles of impeachment against them.

—The king having sent a serjeant-at-arms to the House of Commons to demand the five members, without any effect, the next day he went himself, attended by a number of armed men, as if with a design to seize them. Leaving his guard at the door, he entered the house, and taking the speaker's chair, made a speech to them, as to the objects of his visit; but looking

When did the king return from Scotland? Action of commons? What is said of the leaders of the party? What was the remonstrance? The effect of it? How was it used? Relations between king and parliament? Course of the king? What did the king do? What did the king attempt? How?

around, and finding that the accused persons had left, he told the house he expected they would send them to him as soon as they returned; and then departed, the members crying out, *privilege! privilege!*

They then voted that the king had violated the *privileges* of parliament, and adjourned for several days. The king with his family removed to York. Two days after his departure he sent a message to both houses, telling them he would waive his proceedings against the six members; and two days after, he sent another to the same effect; and soon after, in February, offered a general pardon, but all to no purpose; the wound was too deep to be healed. The commons declared strongly against the late action, impeached the attorney-general and committed him to prison.

The parliament then published an ordinance, whereby the militia was put into their hands, and commanded all persons to be obedient to it.

The king forthwith issued a proclamation forbidding the putting of the ordinance in execution; and the parliament, in their turn, published a declaration, forbidding all persons to obey the king's proclamation.

In May, 1642, the commons voted, "1st. That it appears that the king intends to make war against the parliament. 2d. That whenever the king makes war upon the parliament, it is a breach of the trust reposed in him by the people, contrary to his oath, and tending to the dissolution of the government. 3d. That whoever shall serve or assist him in such wars are traitors, by the fundamental laws of the kingdom."

Thus the breach between the king and parliament grew every day wider, and the mutual distrust became incurable; while by the numerous papers that passed between them,

Consequence? Vote and action of the parliament? Where did the king remove to? What did he next do? The consequence? What did parliament publish? What proclamation did the king issue? Parliament next publish? Vote of commons, May, 1642? Consequence?

they sought only to amuse each other for the sake of gaining time.

Both sides now prepared openly for war. On June 10th, the two houses published proposals for borrowing money for the defense of the kingdom. On the 15th, the king granted several commissions for levying troops, and the parliament drew up a declaration against them. On the 12th of July, the commons voted, and with them the lords agreed, that an army should be raised, and the command thereof be given to the earl of Essex. On August 22d, the king set up his standard at Nottingham, having before, by proclamation, commanded all men who could bear arms, to repair to it on the said day.

Notwithstanding the king's proclamation, the people did not come in as was expected, and he was yet but badly provided for the war. In this condition, he sent a message to the two houses with some overtures toward a treaty; and messages, answers and replies between his majesty and the parliament continued for several weeks without effect, while both sides were carrying on their preparations for war.

The first encounter in this war was at Powic-Bridge, near Worcester, which resulted in securing Worcester to the parliament, and soon after Gloucester and Bristol. On October 23d, 1642, a great battle was fought at Keynton, in Warwickshire. Both sides claimed the victory, and both armies sustained severe losses, the number slain being about 5,000.

While people's minds were terrified on account of the late battle, the king's friends took the advantage to press for a peace. The parliament seeming to comply, sent to his majesty, desiring a safe conduct for a committee of lords and commons to attend him with a petition for a treaty; which the king granted.

What did both sides do? What course did they take for borrowing money? King's grant? Parliament's vote? What did king do? The effect? King next do? Effect? Where was the first encounter? Result? When and where was a great battle fought? The result? What did king's friends do? The parliament do?

To the parliament's petition the king returned a gracious answer. But in a few hours after the departure of the committee, he began to march towards Brentford, where some of the parliament's troops were quartered.

As soon as he arrived he attacked the town, and, after a sharp fight, wherein many of the parliament's men were slain, and others driven into the river, became masters of the place. This action, whilst the treaty was pending, proved of no service to the king's reputation. Several smart skirmishes and assaults soon happened in different parts of the nation, sometimes one side gaining the advantage and sometimes the other, though these actions in themselves were of no great importance.

The year 1643 began with a treaty for peace, which was held at Oxford between the king and commissioners from the parliament. Many conferences were held, but the king's tergiversations were such that the people lost all confidence in him, and the treaty was broken off.

The civil war again commenced. Reading was besieged and taken by the earl of Essex; as on the other side Birmingham and Litchfield were by Prince Rupert, and Hereford by Sir William Waller while the treaty was on foot.

In May, the earl of Stamford, the parliament's general, was defeated in the battle of Stratton.

In June there was a fight in which the famous Hampden, a leader in the parliament, was slain. His death was soon followed by that of Mr. Pym, a person of great abilities, and the most leading man among them.

About this time several deserted the parliament and went over to the king. A plot was also discovered, which was to seize on some of the leading members, surprise the city, and bring the king up to dissolve the parliament. The chief conspirators were

The king? Conduct of king after departure of committee? Effect of king's conduct? What next happened? The result? How did 1643 commence? Give an account of it. The consequence? Give an account of the progress of the civil war. What happened in May? In June? What was discovered about this time?

Edmund Waller, Tompkins and Chaloner. The two last were hanged, but Waller purchased his life with £10,000. This was the famous poet whose works are now extant.

On July 5th was fought the battle of Lansdown, and on July 25th Prince Rupert took Bristol from the parliament. On September 20th a long and bloody battle was fought at Newbury, which continued from morning till night, when the king retired with his army, having lost twenty officers of note, as also the lord Falkland, secretary of state. On the 25th, Prince Maurice, brother of Prince Rupert, took Exeter for the king.

This year, Oliver Cromwell, of whom we shall hear much hereafter, and who had been very active and vigilant for the parliament, began to appear to the world, and to be more than ordinarily noticed for his military skill and courage. He was promoted from the rank of captain to the degree of colonel, and distinguished himself in all the battles in which he was engaged.

The king visibly gained ground of his parliament in the year 1642, and therefore the two houses thought it necessary to call the Scots to their assistance. This was what the Presbyterians who now prevailed in the parliament, wanted; for the Scots would not give their assistance to the parliament of England, but on condition of their bringing the Church of England to a conformity with that of Scotland; and, therefore, the first article of the treaty that was made on this occasion was, that “the *Solemn League and Covenant* should be sworn to and subscribed by both kingdoms;” whereby, among other things, they engaged to endeavor the extirpation of Prelacy and the establishment of Presbyterianism in its room. The covenant was accordingly sent into England and taken by all the members of parliament, and by the assembly of divines then sitting at Westminster to consider of a reformation in the church.

Give a history of it. What occurred in July? In September? Give an account of it. What is said of Oliver Cromwell? Relations of king and parliament in 1642? What did the two houses think necessary? What effect had this on the Presbyterians? Why? What was the first article of the treaty? What was done with the covenant?

In pursuance of the treaty above mentioned, the Scots army, consisting of 18,000 foot and 3,000 horse, entered England under command of the earl of Levern, and passed the Trent near Newcastle. The earl of Newcastle marched from York to oppose their passage, leaving Colonel Bellasis to command in that city.

The lord Fairfax upon this marched toward York, and wrote to his son to meet him. To hinder their juncture, Bellasis marched to York and posted himself at Selby. An engagement took place in which Bellasis was defeated and taken prisoner with about 1,600 of his men.

Another battle was fought, July 2d, at Marston-Moor, in which the parliamentarians gained a complete victory, which was mainly owing to Cromwell's valor and management. York was now surrendered to the parliament generals, and the Scots army marching northward, took Newcastle by storm, October 19th. Other battles were fought, when it was apparent that the king was gradually losing ground.

In January, 1645, the lords passed the ordinance for laying aside the book of *Common Prayer*, and establishing the *Directory*, which had been drawn up by the assembly of divines. And thus the Presbyterian worship was appointed in the Church of England, to the great joy of the Scots and many of the principal members of both houses. A bill of attainder was passed against Archbishop Laud, and he was beheaded March 10th.

A party about this time sprang up, that in the end got the better of both king and parliament.

These were the *Independents*, so called from their being against the dependency of churches, and consequently against all national churches, Presbyterian and Episcopalian.

They first united with the Presbyterians in parliament until

What did the Scots next do? The earl of Newcastle? The lord Fairfax? Result of an engagement? Give account of another battle. What did the Scots army do? What did the lords do in January, 1645? The consequence? What party now sprang up? What called? Why? What did they do first?

they got the king in their power, and then began to act more openly.

Oliver Cromwell, a person of uncommon valor, great parts, and profound dissimulation, was their chief patron. He made use of them to pull down the power of the Presbyterians, who at this time bore all the sway, and were as rigid against all who conformed not to their new hierarchy as ever the bishops had been.

The first thing was to get the army on their side. To bring this about, Cromwell got an act passed called the "Self-denying Act," which excluded all members of parliament from all offices, civil and military. By virtue of this act those members who were friendly to the Presbyterians were removed from their commands, and their places were filled by those who were friends to the Independents. Cromwell, who was appointed lieutenant-general, was the only member of parliament who kept his post in the army after the "Self-denying Act," of which he himself had been the chief promoter. Having joined Fairfax, who was commissioned general of the new-modeled army, the famous battle of Naseby, in Northamptonshire, was fought on June 14th, 1645.

The king's troops were defeated, and more than one hundred and fifty of the king's officers and gentlemen of quality were slain, most of his foot were made prisoners, all his cannon and baggage were taken, with 8,000 arms and other rich booty, among which was also the king's cabinet, with his papers, and letters between him and his queen, which showed how different his councils with her were to those he declared to the kingdom.

This battle decided the quarrel between the king and his parliament. After this signal victory nothing could stand before the parliament's forces. Leicester, Bridgewater, Bath, Sher-

Who was the chief leader? What is said of him? What did he do? His first step? What act did he have passed? The consequence? What battle was fought in 1645? The result? What did this battle decide? What happened soon after this victory?

burne, Bristol, and other places were soon taken; and the king himself narrowly escaped into Wales, and retired to Oxford. This was in September.

The army next laid siege to Oxford; but upon Fairfax's approach, the king made his escape and threw himself into the hands of the Scots army, then lying before Newark. He arrived there in May, 1646, and presently after ordered Newark to be surrendered to them. They then marched to Newcastle, carrying the king along with them; from whence he sent messages to parliament, and they sent him their propositions, to which he did not think fit to agree.

Oxford surrendered in June, and the few remaining garrisons soon after. Thus the whole kingdom was subjected to the obedience of the two houses.

The parliament now consulted how to get the king out of the hands of the Scots, and to send them back into their own country.

At last it was agreed that they should have £400,000, for the arrears due to them, one moiety to be paid before their going home, and the other at stated times. And so after several debates as to the disposal of the king's person, the Scots, after having received the £200,000, on January 20th, 1647, delivered him up to the commissioners of the parliament of England. The same day they commenced their march for Scotland, and the king was conducted to Northamptonshire.

The king being subdued, the conquerors now began to fall out among themselves. This was occasioned by the different views of the Presbyterians and Independents. The former were for grasping at the whole power, and suppressing all who would not conform to their establishment, whom they branded with the name of Sectaries. The Independents were sworn

What did the army next do? What followed? The final result? Next business of the parliament? How was this done? What was done with the king? What occurred amongst the conquerors? The cause? The object of the Presbyterians? The Independents?

enemies to this hierarchy, and favored such a settlement as secured liberty of conscience, as well against presbytery as episcopacy. The parliament, and the city of London, were mostly Presbyterians, and the army almost wholly Independents. The Independents were determined to ruin the Presbyterians, to prevent their own destruction. In order to effect this, Cromwell, whilst he seemed to go with the parliament, artfully promoted a spirit of discontent in the army.

To strengthen themselves the more against the designs of the Presbyterians in parliament, the common soldiers formed a new council called the council of *Agitators*. Animosities increasing more and more, it was feared the parliament, the better to subdue the army, would close with the king on almost any terms. Whereupon the agitators, at the instigation of Cromwell, sent a detachment to take the king from the hands of the parliament's commissioners and carry him away to the army. This done, the army being masters of the king's person, in a short time became masters of the parliament too, and managed every thing as they pleased.

The army now drew up a charge of treason against eleven members of the house of commons, the chiefs of the Presbyterians, for betraying the cause of the parliament, endeavoring to break and destroy the army, &c. Nor would they be satisfied till they withdrew from the house, which was all the army wanted.

A multitude of citizens, stirred up by the leading Presbyterians, went in a tumultuous manner to the parliament house, and compelled them by threats and violence to vote that the king should come to London.

They then adjourned for some days; and in the mean time the two speakers, and a great many members of both houses, fled to the army for protection. When the remnant of the par-

How were they divided? Course of Independents? Cromwell? Course? The Presbyterians? What did the Agitators do? The consequence? What did the army next do? Their pretext? The effect? What was next done?

liament met they chose new speakers, and passed several votes, disagreeable to the army. Upon this, the army marched to London, restored the speakers and members to their seats, and made the parliament revoke all that had been done during their absence. And from this time the two houses were wholly governed by the army.

As to the king, although he was treated with great respect and civility by the heads of the army, he was, in reality, no more or less than their prisoner. Cromwell was actually in treaty with him to restore him. And even the agitators of the army were once for restoring him, and proposals were drawn up for his assent; but upon his majesty's rejecting them, they turned as violently against him, imagining that he was more inclined to the Scots and Presbyterians than to them.

Cromwell, to preserve himself, was now under the necessity of abandoning the king's interest. The consequence of which was, the whole army was at last united against the king.

In January, 1648, the house resolved that no more addresses should be made to the king, nor messages received from him; and to this, the lords some days after agreed; the army now promising to adhere to the parliament against the king.

The king being reduced to this melancholy condition, his friends, who ever since the beginning of the war were called *Cavaliers*, (as the opposite party were called *Roundheads*, from their having their hair cut short and round,) began to stir for him in several parts of the kingdom, in which they were joined by the Presbyterians, from their hatred to the Independents.

They were much encouraged in their insurrections by the prospect of powerful aid from Scotland; for the Scots not being consulted in the last propositions to the king, were offended.

Give an account of the proceedings. What did the army do? Condition of the king? Cromwell's course? Agitators' conduct? What was necessary for Cromwell to do? The consequence? What resolution passed the house? What did the friends of the king do? What were they called? Why? By whom were they joined? How were they encouraged?

These troubles broke out early in the year 1648.

The Welsh first took arms under Major-General Langhorn, and Colonels Poyer and Powel, but they were defeated by Cromwell; and Langhorn, Poyer, and Powel were soon after condemned by a court-martial; and one of them was to die, for which they were to cast lots; which falling on Poyer, he was accordingly shot.

The Scots army under Duke Hamilton, amounting to near 20,000, entered England in July, and were joined by about 5,000 English, under Sir Marmaduke Langdale.

Cromwell marched with all expedition, totally routed and dispersed them, taking the duke prisoner. Cromwell then marched directly into Scotland, and arriving at Edinburgh, divested the Hamiltonian party of their authority, and returned in triumph to England.

At the beginning of these troubles, the Presbyterian party in the house, in the city and other places, began to resume their courage, and the secluded members who had absented themselves, having returned to their seats, the votes of no more addresses were repealed, and it was resolved by both houses to enter into personal treaty with the king, and that his majesty should be there with power, freedom and safety; and five lords and ten commoners were nominated commissioners for this treaty.

But the debates were so artfully spun out by the Independents in the house, especially Sir Henry Vane, that it was not agreed upon, till after Cromwell had finished matters in Wales, and defeated the Scots, and the army had been every where victorious. And now the army was resolved to break off the treaty by force. Accordingly, Colonel Ewer presented to the

When did these troubles commence? Who first took up arms? Under whom? The consequence? When and under whom did the Scots army enter England? Who marched against them? The result? What did Cromwell next do? What did the Presbyterians do? The secluded members? What was resolved? What of the debates? Who was prominent among the Independents? What did the army resolve? What was done?

commons a remonstrance from the army, wherein they desired that the treaty might be laid aside, and that the king might come no more to government, but be brought to justice, as the capital cause of all the evils in the kingdom, and of so much blood being shed.

The fate of the unhappy king now came on apace. On November 21st, the general sent to Colonel Ewer, to take charge of the king's person, who kept him in strict custody. On the 30th, his majesty was brought over to Hurst-Castle, in Hampshire; and the army marched toward London, and published a declaration of the reasons of their taking this step.

On Monday, December 4th, the commons resumed the debates on the king's concessions, until they at last voted that the said concessions were sufficient grounds for settling the peace of the kingdom.

The Presbyterians were excluded from the house of commons, which from this time consisted wholly of Independents, and their friends, who were disposed to comply with whatever the army dictated.

December 23d, the commons appointed a committee to draw up a charge against the king. The charges that were brought against him were, that he had been a "*tyrant*, because of his desire to reign as an arbitrary monarch; a *traitor*, because he had made void his trust towards the people; a *murderer*, because all the bloodshed of the civil war was to be attributed to him." Soon after, they reported an ordinance for impeaching *Charles Stuart*, king of England, of *high-treason*; which being agreed to by the house, was carried up to the lords for their concurrence; and upon their rejecting it, the commons voted, 1st, "That the people are, under God, the original of all just power. 2nd, That the commons of England, chosen by, and represent-

Give an account of the action as regarded the king. What vote passed December 4th? How was parliament now composed? What did the commons do December 23d? What did they report? What did the commons vote?

ing the people, are the supreme power of the nation. 3d, That whatsoever is enacted or declared for law, by the commons assembled in parliament, hath the force of a law, though the consent of the king and house of peers be not had thereto."

At the same time they made an ordinance for erecting a high court of justice, for trying the king, who was brought to St. James on the 19th. The next day, this unprecedented trial commenced, the court sitting in Westminster Hall, having chosen Serjeant Bradshaw for their president. The substance of the charge was, that the king had endeavored to set up a tyrannical power, and to that end had raised and maintained a cruel war against the parliament.

The king behaved with great dignity, making no other answer but denying the authority of the court. He did the same thing on the 22d and 23d. At last, being brought before them a fourth time, he earnestly desired, before sentence, to be heard before the lords and commons, (intending, as it is thought, to resign his crown to his eldest son;) but his request was not granted. And so, still persisting in disowning the jurisdiction of the court, and consequently in his refusal to answer to the charge, his silence was taken for a confession, and sentence of death was passed upon him. Pursuant to which, he was, on January 30th, beheaded on a scaffold erected in the street near the windows of the Banqueting house, at Whitehall, showing as great a firmness, resolution, and resignation to the last, as he had done in all his sufferings.

The day before his execution he was permitted to see his children, the Princess Elizabeth and the duke of Gloucester, the only ones then in England; which was perhaps as tender a scene as is to be met with in history.

King Charles was certainly a man of great abilities, and many excellent qualities. He was strictly chaste, temperate,

Give a history of the trial and execution of King Charles. What was he permitted to do? What is said of the scene? His character?

and constant in his devotions, both public and private. His aiming at more power than the constitution allowed, was the first cause of his misfortunes, and his losing entirely the confidence of his people, with the clashing interests of parties, violent and furious in their opposition to each other, at last completed his ruin, after a troublesome reign of nearly twenty-four years.

THE COMMONWEALTH OF ENGLAND.

AFTER the death of Charles I. there was an interregnum of eleven years and four months, during which time there was a total eclipse of the royal family, and the government of England underwent various forms and shapes.

The first was that of a pure democracy or *commonwealth*; for the king was no sooner dead than the remnant of the House of Commons, scarce eighty of them in number, assuming to themselves the name of parliament, passed an act forbidding the proclaiming of Charles Stuart, eldest son of the late king, or any other person, under pain of high treason. Then they resolved that those who had assented to the vote that the late king's concessions were a ground to proceed to a settlement, should not be re-admitted to sit as members. On February 5th, they voted that the house of peers was useless and dangerous; and accordingly passed an act for abolishing it. The lords had only the liberty allowed them of being elected members of parliament in common with other subjects; which some few accepted, but the greatest part rejected it.

They next resolved and declared, that as the office of king had been found to be unnecessary, burdensome, and dangerous to the liberties of the people, it should therefore be abolished; and that the nation should be governed by the representatives of the people under the form of a Commonwealth.

A new oath was enjoined, to be true and faithful to the gov-

What is said of the government after the death of Charles I.? What was the first form? How constituted? What act was passed? What did they resolve? What did they vote? The consequence? What next resolve?

ernment established without king or house of peers. A new Great Seal was prepared, which was committed to certain persons under the title of the "keepers of the liberty of England by the authority of parliament;" and all writs and public orders were to run in their name. And finally, a council of state was appointed, consisting of thirty-nine persons, for the administration of public affairs under the parliament, whose powers were to continue for one whole year, and then a new council should be chosen. And thus the Commonwealth of England was fully established.

A new high court or justice was created, and many who had been concerned in the late insurrections were condemned to death. Some were pardoned and others executed. The council of *Agitators* was next abolished, though not without much difficulty and some effusion of blood.

The parliament soon found it necessary to turn their thoughts toward Ireland. The marquis of Ormond had put himself at the head of the Irish army, and having taken several places, was preparing to besiege Dublin.

In this exigency, the governors of the new commonwealth sent over a body of forces for the relief of Ireland. Oliver Cromwell was appointed general for this expedition, and lord governor of that island, both for civil and military affairs, for three years. He lost no time in making preparations for his departure, and entered at once upon his work.

Without referring to the particulars of this campaign, it will suffice to say, that Cromwell carried on his conquests with such amazing rapidity, that in nine months he almost completed the reduction of the whole island, when he was re-called by the parliament, to enter upon a new scene of action in another place.

What new oath enjoined? What of a great seal? Style of writs? For what purpose was council appointed? Of what did it consist? What court established? What next done? What did the parliament next find it necessary to do? What did the marquis of Ormond do? The commonwealth? Who was appointed general? Give an account of the campaign?

Leaving his son-in-law to finish what remained, he embarked for England, and having landed at Bristol, proceeded in triumph to London, where he arrived amidst the loud acclamations of the people.

Scotland was the next country where Cromwell was to make himself famous.

Charles, Prince of Wales, being then at the Hague, no sooner heard of the tragical death of the king, his father, than he took the title of king. The Scots were united with England, so long as the English parliament continued Presbyterian; but when the Independents controlled the parliament, they began to murmur, and sent commissioners to present a memorial against their trying the king, and against the "sinful and ungodly toleration," that was about to be introduced. After the king's death, they agreed to acknowledge and proclaim his son, king Charles II., but on the express condition of his consenting to maintain Presbyterianism and the covenant. Though the king by no means liked these terms, necessity at last forced him to comply, and he embarked for Scotland, where he arrived in June, 1650.

The rulers in England, not ignorant of these proceedings, re-resolved to be beforehand with them, and carry the war into Scotland. Cromwell was appointed general and commander-in-chief of all the armies of the commonwealth. He entered Scotland in July, 1650, at the head of 20,000 men, and at once entered upon the business for which he was sent.

The first engagement took place near Dunbar, September 3d, when Cromwell commenced the attack with such fury and resolution, that he soon put the Scots army, twice as numerous as his own, to flight, killing several thousands, and taking nearly 10,000 prisoners. Cromwell immediately took possession of

What did Cromwell next do? Conduct of Charles, prince of Wales? Relations of Scotch and English? What memorial was presented? What did they agree to do? What did Charles do? What did the rulers in England do? Who appointed to the command? When did he enter Scotland? First engagement? The result?

Edinburgh and Leith, and soon after became master of Edinburgh Castle.

The king was crowned at Scone, January 1st, 1651. The Scots now raised another army, which was composed of all parties who were willing to serve in this war. The king commanded it in person. He had Leslie for his lieutenant general, and went and encamped at Torwood, between Edinburgh and Sterling. Cromwell managed to get behind the king; who, being now under a necessity, if he staid in Scotland, either of fighting him or starving in his camp, took a sudden resolution to march his army into England, not doubting but he should be joined by great numbers of his friends.

Accordingly, the king entered England by the way of Carlisle, and presently caused himself to be proclaimed at the head of his army. The parliament at Westminster were startled at this sudden invasion, and began to think that Cromwell had made a false step. But he wrote to them, telling them that he would overtake the enemy, and doubted not but he should give a good account of them. The parliament exerted themselves to the utmost on this occasion. They not only published an act strictly forbidding the abetting or assisting Charles Stuart or any of his adherents, on pain of high treason, but ordered the militia of the several counties to be drawn out to obstruct his march. Cromwell, to lose no time, immediately sent Lambert and Harrison, with part of his army, to molest the king's march as much as possible, who soon found his friends did not come in to him as he expected, being hindered by the forces of the commonwealth.

The king, therefore, instead of marching to London, with difficulty arrived at Worcester and encamped, fortifying himself as well as he could.

Cromwell next do? When and where was the king crowned? Next object of Scots? How composed? By whom commanded? Give an account of Cromwell's management? Consequence to the king? Course of the king? Effect of this upon parliament? Action of parliament? Cromwell's precaution? Where did the king encamp?

Cromwell having settled matters in Scotland, and left his lieutenant-general, George Monk, with a sufficient force, to command in his absence, marched in all haste after the king. His forces daily increasing as he passed along, his army was now double in number to that of the king.

He arrived at Worcester, September 1st, and on the 3d he charged the king's army so vigorously that they were driven back with great slaughter, in the utmost confusion, Cromwell taking many thousand prisoners.

The king narrowly escaped, and after wandering about in a peasant's garb for several weeks, fled into France. Cromwell, after the battle, returned in triumph to London; and Monk, in a short time, completed the reduction of Scotland, which was afterwards united with England in one commonwealth.

The commonwealth was now at the height of its glory, and enjoyed a profound tranquillity after the success at Worcester; when a war broke out between it and the republic of Holland.

The parliament had proposed a union with the *States*, which the latter refused, thinking the terms of it injurious to their commerce. The parliament then passed an act forbidding all commodities that were not of the growth and manufacture of the country from whence they came, to be brought into England in any other than English bottoms; which put an end to the commerce between England and Holland. And when the *States* sent ambassadors to desire a repeal of this act, they were so far from doing it that they insisted on satisfaction for some old injuries the Dutch had done to the English. A war, therefore, necessarily ensued, in which were fought several of the most terrible and bloody sea-fights that ever had been known, between the Dutch under the famous Van Tromp and the English under the renowned Blake. The Dutch were generally worsted in these

What did Cromwell next do? What is said of his army? Give an account of a battle. Cromwell's next course? What is said of the commonwealth? What war next broke out? Cause of it? Consequence? Who commanded the Dutch fleet? The English?

engagements, though the English also suffered great loss. The fifth, which was fought in February, 1653, lasted three days. The Dutch at last sued for peace, but before it was concluded a new revolution happened in England.

Cromwell's reputation and glory had now attained to such a height after the victories at Dunbar and Worcester, that the parliament grew jealous of his power, and now that he had done their work for them would have been glad to have ruined him. The general, aware of this, resolved to prevent it, which it was not difficult for him to do, as he had secured the esteem and affection of the officers and soldiers, and as the parliament, after so long a continuance, began to be disagreeable to the people.

The army insisted that the parliament should dissolve themselves and make way for new representatives; but instead of complying they went to preparing an act for filling up their house, and to declare it high treason for any one to propose or contrive the alteration of the present government. Upon this, Cromwell, on April 20th, 1653, took a party of soldiers and went to the house, and having sat and heard their debates for some time, when the question was about to be put for passing the act, he suddenly arose and bade the speaker leave the chair, and then stamping with his foot told them they were no longer a parliament; upon this signal the soldiers entered, who, by his orders, saw the house cleared of the members, being about an hundred, who all quietly departed; and then having caused the doors to be locked, he went away to Whitehall.

What is said of the last battle? Of Cromwell's reputation? Its effect upon parliament? On what did the army insist? The effect? Give an account of Cromwell's dissolving the parliament.

OLIVER CROMWELL.

THE general having thus by force turned out his masters, became himself master of the commonwealth. He immediately consulted with his council of officers how to carry on the government, and published a declaration of the grounds and reasons of his dissolving the late parliament, "promising to put the government into the hands of persons of approved fidelity and honesty."

This met with a good reception, and was answered by addresses from the fleet, the army, and people, approving of the late action and promising to stand by the general and his council of officers. This was in April, 1653. This declaration was soon followed by another, signed, "*O. Cromwell*;" giving notice that till the persons above mentioned should meet, a council of state had been appointed for the better carrying on the affairs of the commonwealth.

In June there was another terrible sea-fight between the English, under Blake, Monk and Dean, and the Dutch, under Van Tromp and De Ruyter; in which the English gained the victory, sinking six of the enemy's ships, blowing up two others, and taking eleven. The English lost Admiral Dean, who was killed at the beginning of the engagement.

It having been resolved to summon select persons to be nominated from every county, who should represent the whole nation, and the persons having been agreed upon, in number 144, Cromwell, in June, sent his summons to each one of them to appear in council chamber at Whitehall, on July 4th, using this authoritative style, after the preamble: "I, Oliver Crom-

What was Cromwell's first act? How was this received? By what was this declaration followed? Give an account of another sea-fight. What did Cromwell do in June? The style of it?

well, captain-general and commander-in-chief of all the armies and forces raised, and to be raised, within this commonwealth, do hereby summon and require you," &c. &c.

The persons thus summoned met, when Cromwell, attended by his officers, made a speech to them, and then, by an instrument under his hand and seal, he constituted them, or any forty of them, the supreme authority of the nation. They then adjourned to the next day, when they met in the parliament house and at once voted themselves the parliament of the commonwealth of England. In August there was another sea engagement between the two contending states, in which Admiral Van Tromp, the glory of the Dutch nation, was slain. The Dutch then applied to parliament for a peace, but in vain, upon which they addressed themselves to Cromwell, promising, if he would depose the present powers and assume the government to himself, they would enter into such a defensive alliance with him as should secure him against all his enemies, foreign and domestic. This he resolved to do, for which the confusion of their debates afforded him a pretext. And so the matter having been concerted with the speaker and Cromwell's select friends in the house, they met early in the morning, Dec. 12th, before the other members, who were not in the secret, had taken their seats, and voted, "That as it was not for the public good that the parliament should sit any longer, it was fit that they should resign their powers to the lord general," which the speaker and members, going with the mace to Whitehall, did accordingly, by a writing under their hands. By this means, Cromwell, with his council of officers, was again in possession of supreme power, which he had before delegated to this assembly.

This done, he advised with his council of officers, how the government should be carried on, and they immediately resolved, "That Oliver Cromwell should be Lord Protector of the com-

What was done? Next day what did they do? Give an account of another sea engagement. What did the Dutch next do? How was the matter accomplished? The effect. What did Cromwell next do? What did they resolve?

monwealth of England, Scotland and Ireland, and constituted him such by an instrument called the "Instrument of Government," consisting of forty-two articles.

Thus did this great man, who was hardly known in the former part of his life, mount himself into the throne of three kingdoms, and, though he had not the title of king, ruled with more power than most preceding kings. He applied himself closely to business, and on all occasions maintained the part of a great prince. Congratulatory addresses were presented to him from all parts of the three nations, and foreign states courted his friendship and alliance.

It is surprising how he managed the several opposite parties then in the nation, all mortal enemies to each other, so as to make them contribute to his own security, though most of them hated him in their hearts. He kept a strict eye upon the *Cavaliers*, and, for the most part, terrified them into submission. He caressed the *Presbyterians*, to keep them in good humor, and when they began to take too much upon themselves, he played the *Independents* and other sects against them, in order to humble them and keep them within bounds. The *Republicans* were his greatest enemies because he had overturned their beloved scheme of government, and these he took care to divide, by setting the *Enthusiasts* and *Fifth-Monarchy* men against the *State Republicans*, who hated him most of all.

In April, 1654, the lord protector concluded an advantageous peace with the Dutch.

Cromwell's good policy appeared in nothing more than in advancing to the several posts in the government, men that were best qualified for them. The famous Matthew Hale was one of his judges, and Thurloe, a very able minister, a second Walsingham for intelligence, was made secretary of state. Crom-

Cromwell's present position? What did he do? What was presented him? What did foreign states do? Give an account of Cromwell's management. What peace was concluded in 1654? What is said of it? How did Cromwell's good policy appear? Mention some of them.

well next called a parliament; but soon after dissolved them, not being pleased with their warm debates upon the "*Instrument of Government*," &c.

The Cavaliers had designed two insurrections, one in the north, and another in the west. These were soon quelled, and some of their leaders hanged.

France and Spain, being now at war with each other, each strove to gain the Protector. He resolved at last to assist the French, and equipped a fleet for the purpose, which was sent to attack the Spanish settlement of St. Domingo. The design miscarried, and they were repulsed with great loss. They however sailed for Jamaica, and took it in May; which island has ever since remained in possession of the English.

In the mean time Blake performed wonders in the Mediterranean. In September, 1656, he attacked, sunk and burnt the whole Spanish Plate-Fleet, except two ships which he took, whose valuable treasure was conveyed in triumph to London. In short, this brave admiral, the glory of the English nation, in April, the following year, burnt six large Spanish galleons at the Canaries, and died of the scurvy on shipboard, on his return home.

Sometime before, the *Fifth Monarchy* men, or *Anabaptists*, as they were sometimes called, entered into a plot against Cromwell; but it was timely discovered and prevented. Another conspiracy was formed against his life, which also failed.

The Protector now thought fit to summon a new parliament, which met in September, 1656.

This parliament was composed entirely of Cromwell's minions, to carry out his will. They passed an act for renouncing the pretended title of Charles Stuart, and another, declaring it

What did Cromwell next do? What next? Why? What insurrections were designed? The consequence? What part did Cromwell take in a war between France and Spain? The result of an attack on St. Domingo? Jamaica? Give an account of Blake's doings. His death. What is said of him? What plot was entered into? By whom? The result? What did the Protector next do? How was this parliament composed? What did they do?

high-treason to attempt any thing against the Protector's life.

They approved of the war with Spain, and offered to Cromwell the title of king; which being demurred to by many, he, with a great show of humility, declined it. They however empowered him to name his successor, and to call parliaments, consisting of two houses. To this act the Protector gave his assent.

The parliament met again in January, to which time it had adjourned. It now consisted of two houses, the new one being called the *Other House*, to answer to the house of peers. But disputes arising between the two houses, the Protector suddenly dissolved them.

In June, 1658, Dunkirk was taken from the Spaniards, and according to treaty, was surrendered up to the lord Protector.

The Protector was taken ill in August, and died on his victorious day, the third of September, in the sixtieth year of his age, having named his son Richard to succeed him, just before he expired. He was buried, it is supposed, in Westminster Abbey. But some say that his body was wrapped in lead and sunk in the Thames. And others affirm it to have been buried in Naseby Field.

Cromwell made no figure in the world till about the period of the breaking out of the civil war. Though his government was arbitrary, and supported only by the army, he did many things worthy of praise; encouraged trade and commerce, and maintained the honor of the nation.

His reign in some respects resembled that of Queen Elizabeth, except whereas she supported herself by the affections of her people, Oliver maintained himself by a standing army. In one thing, indeed, they were two much alike, for if Oliver

What did they offer him? Why did Cromwell decline it? How? What power did they grant him? Give an account of the next parliament. What occurred in 1658? Give an account of his illness and death? What is said of his burial place? What is said of his government? Whose reign did Cromwell's government resemble?

sacrificed King Charles I. to his own safety, Elizabeth did the same by the queen of Scots. In short, his greatest enemies acknowledged he was not unworthy of the government, if his way to it had been just and innocent.

He left two sons, Richard and Henry, and four daughters.

Among the eminent persons who lived and died under the protectorship, were the famous John Selden, the venerable Archbishop Usher, and Dr. Harvey, the discoverer of the circulation of the blood.

In what respects did they differ? In what resemble? His family? What eminent persons lived and died during the protectorate?

RICHARD CROMWELL,

WITH THE VARIOUS GOVERNMENTS, TILL THE RESTORATION.

FROM the death of Oliver to the Restoration, a state of confusion and anarchy existed.

Richard was peaceably proclaimed upon the death of his father. But he wanted his father's spirit to support himself, especially against the intrigues of the army, which commenced in Oliver's time. Richard wished to become master of the army, as his father had been; but the officers resolved that he should not.

By advice of his council, he called a parliament, which met in January, 1659. This parliament was composed of members of many parties, who were continually intriguing against each other, making use of Richard as a tool; until, finally, the officers seized the government, taking no further notice of Richard.

They next resolved to restore the members of the long parliament, whom Oliver had turned out in 1653. The parliament thus restored, gave Richard £2,000 for paying his private debts, and ordered him to quit Whitehall; which order he quietly obeyed, and returned again to private life.

The parliament had not been long in session before differences began to arise, as usual, between them and the principal officers. But before the animosity arose to any great height, they had information of plots forming by the royalists in different parts of the nation, with whom the presbyterians joined. The design, however, was timely frustrated in most places.

What was the condition of the government after the death of Oliver, till the restoration? What is said of Richard? What did he wish? What did he do? How was this parliament composed? Their conduct? Who finally seized the government? What did they resolve? What did the parliament do? What did Richard do? What soon occurred in parliament? What plots were discovered? The result?

The contest between the parliament and officers still continued, until Lambert, at the head of some regiments, secured all the avenues to Westminster hall, and stopped the speaker and members as they were going to the house. A strong guard was afterwards placed at the parliament doors to hinder their meeting for the future. The officers now appointed a council of ten to attend to such affairs as were most pressing. The government was next entrusted to a *Committee of Safety*, consisting of twenty-three, who were to consider further of a settlement, *without a king, single person, or house of peers.*

In the mean time, Monk resolved to march out of Scotland with his troops, and restore the parliament.

The members were no less busy in endeavoring to restore themselves. The fleet, the governor of Portsmouth, and a great part of the army also, declared for the parliament. The *Committee of Safety* were now forced to give way, resign their authority, and consent to the meeting of the parliament. But the parliament began to suspect, from the conduct of Monk, that his object was not so much to restore them, as to set himself up; and both parliament and the army began to be uneasy at his proceedings.

Monk managed to restore the *secluded members*, who, under a guard, marched to the parliament-house and took their seats; upon which, the leaders of the Independent and Republican party, surprised at their appearance among them, withdrew from the house.

The parliament, thus altered, repealed the oath for abjuring Charles Stuart, as also the engagement to be faithful to the commonwealth, without a king, or house of peers, and passed several other votes in favor of the king's restoration; and then

What did Lambert do? What did the officers now do? To whom was the government next intrusted? Their duty? Relate the proceedings of Monk. What were the Committee of Safety forced to do? What gave uneasiness to the parliament and army? What did Monk succeed in doing? The consequence? What did this parliament do?

having issued out writs for calling a free parliament, they dissolved themselves March 16th, 1660.

The parliament met in two houses, lords and commons, April 25th, 1660, and it soon appeared that many royalists had been elected. The king's letters to the lords and commons, containing declarations and promises, which gave great satisfaction, were read in both houses. Upon which it was voted "that by the fundamental laws of the kingdom, the government is, and ought to be, by King, Lords, and Commons."

On May 8th his majesty was proclaimed, and three days after, commissioners from the parliament and city set out to wait on him in Holland; with whom also went some presbyterian ministers. On the 23d the king embarked, and two days after, landed at Dover, and on the 29th arrived at Whitehall, where he was received with the loudest acclamations of joy.

Thus was this great revolution effected without any effusion of blood.

When did parliament again meet? How constituted? How composed? What was read to the houses? The effect? What was voted? When was Charles proclaimed? Mention the circumstance of the king's arrival and reception. How was this revolution effected?

(1660)

CHARLES II.

(1685)

AN extravagant tide of joy overspread the nation upon the king's arrival.

The confidence the people had in the king, and their satisfaction at being delivered from the late confusions and distractions by means of his restoration, will account for the excessive complaisance shown to the court at the beginning of this great event; and the ill use that was made of this confidence was the chief cause of the opposition that was afterward made to the court.

Not only the character of king Charles II., but that of the duke of York, who bore the chief sway in the counsels of the king his brother, is to be considered, if we would know the source of the principal events of this reign.

Charles was endowed with many engaging qualities and excellent talents. He was affable, had a surprising ready wit, a solid judgment and a deep penetration; but was excessively fond of ease and pleasure, and would sacrifice anything to the gratification of his inclinations. He had many mistresses, to whom he devoted most of his time, attention and money. He embraced the Romish religion through policy; yet he was quite indifferent to all religions, and it was all the same to him whether Popery or Protestantism was the religion of England. But the duke of York was of an active, violent and vindictive temper, and such a thorough bigot to Popery that he would stick at nothing to have it established; and in order to that,

When did Charles II. ascend the throne? What effect did this event have? How was the complaisance shown the king accounted for? What the cause of their opposition to the king and court afterward? What must be considered to understand this reign? Qualities and propensities of Charles? What is said of his religion? Character of the duke of York?

labored to extend the prerogative, and to establish an arbitrary government.

This, then, joined with the indolence of the king, of which the duke of York took advantage to pursue the schemes he had formed, was the chief cause of the distractions and animosities in the latter end of this reign.

After these remarks, it will be sufficient to give a brief narrative of the principal transactions and events in the reign of Charles II.

The king, in forming his council, took in some who had been engaged against his father and himself; but afterward promoted his restoration, and others who had been presbyterians. The assembly which restored the king, had been summoned by a commonwealth writ; it was however called a parliament, till his arrival, but then, had only the name of convention, when afterward he gave his assent to an act for changing the convention into a parliament.

The act of *Indemnity* or *Oblivion*, received the royal assent August 29th. There were excepted out of it, the late king's judges, and some others, who had been deeply concerned in his death. Of those, twenty-five were dead; nineteen had made their escape, who were afterward attainted; seven received the king's mercy, and twenty-nine were condemned to die.

At about the same time the *Act of Indemnity* was passed, the king gave his assent to "An act for a perpetual Anniversary Thanksgiving" on the 29th of May, the day of his arrival in England, which was his birth-day.

Henry, duke of Gloucester, the king's youngest brother, died of the small pox on September 30th. I will mention here that Elizabeth, the king's second sister, died a few days after the battle of Dunbar in 1650.

Cause of the animosities which arose? What is said of his council? What act was passed? Who were excepted? How were the others disposed of? Next act passed? To what act did the king give his assent?

In October, the princess dowager of Orange went over to England to congratulate the king, her brother, on his restoration. And the queen mother arrived in the following month, bringing with her the princess Henrietta, her youngest daughter, who was married to the duke of Orleans. The duke of York had a short time before married Anne, daughter of Chancellor Hyde, earl of Clarendon. The princess of Orange died in December, leaving only one son, William, prince of Orange, now about ten years old, and afterward king of England.

The *Royal Society* was founded in 1660, by the king's letters patent, for experiments and discoveries in *natural philosophy* and *mechanics*.

In 1661, Episcopacy was restored in Scotland, and the parliament then, wholly devoted to the court, abrogated the *Solemn League and Covenant*, and passed several other acts in favor of the king and against the Presbyterians.

In March, 1661, a conference was opened between some bishops and other clergymen of the Church of England, and the same number of Presbyterian divines, to revise the book of *Common Prayer*, and make such alterations and amendments as should be agreed upon by both parties. But this conference came to nought, both sides being too tenacious of their own ways and opinions.

The king was crowned April 23d, and a new parliament met in May, and continued almost eighteen years. The first thing they did, was to order "the *Solemn League and Covenant*," *the act for trying the late king*, and several other acts made against the royal family, under the commonwealth and protectorate of Oliver, to be burnt.

What event happened in October? When and whom did the duke of York marry? When did the princess of Orange die? When was the Royal Society founded? When was Episcopacy restored in Scotland? What did the parliament do? What conference was opened in March? How was it composed? The object? The result? When was the king crowned? What is said of a parliament? The first thing they did?

On July the 30th, the king gave his assent to an *act for restoring the bishops to their seats in the house of Peers*, and to another, *for declaring the sole right of the militia to be in the king*. In December, he gave his assent to the famous *Corporation Act*, which was designed to exclude the *non-conformists* from any share in the government of corporations.

The king married Catharine, princess of Portugal, in May, 1662. Dunkirk was sold this year to the French king for five millions of livres.

In January, 1663, the king published a declaration in favor of the Presbyterians, to dispense with their compliance with some articles in the *Act of Uniformity*. The object of this act was, to furnish a pretense to extend a toleration to all *non-conformists*, in which the papists might be included.

In March, 1664, the parliament, at the king's desire, repealed *the act for triennial parliaments*. And as the king contemplated a war with the Dutch, parliament voted £2,500,000 for carrying it on.

In May, 1664, the famous *Conventicle Act* was passed. The *money bill* being passed in January, 1665, the king soon after declared war against the States-General. The duke of York sailed in May, 1665, with a fleet of 107 men-of-war, and 14 fire-ships, and on June 3d encountered the Holland and Zealand squadrons, composing a fleet of 120 men-of-war besides fire-ships, under the command of Admiral Opdam, when a remarkable engagement took place in which the Dutch were badly beaten.

In May, 1665, the plague made terrible havoc in London, which before the end of the year swept off 68,596 of the inhabitants. The parliament had been prorogued to October, when it met at Oxford, in consequence of the plague.

To what acts did the king give assent in July? In December? Whom did the king marry? What declaration was published in January, 1663? The object of it? What did the parliament in March, 1664? What act passed in May? What war was declared in 1665? Give an account of the first engagement. What is said of the havoc of the plague? What did the parliament in October?

They appropriated £1,250,000 for the continuance of the war, and £120,000 to the duke of York for his services.

In this session was also passed the famous "*Five Mile Act*," prohibiting all non-conformist teachers to dwell, or come, unless upon the road, within five miles of any corporation, or any place they had preached at, after the act of oblivion, under penalty of fine and imprisonment. Plots and conspiracies were made a pretext for these severities. At the same time, no less rigor was exercised against the Presbyterians in Scotland; which occasioned an insurrection there shortly after. But the numbers being small they were soon defeated.

In January, 1666, the French king declared war against England, which by his conduct appeared to be only a feint, and not with any real design to assist the Dutch. Rapin says, "it was only to save the pensionary, *De Witt*, who was entirely attached to his interest, and could not otherwise support himself."

The English fleet, under command of prince Rupert and the duke of Albermarle, put to sea in May, 1666. The Dutch fleet was now commanded by De Ruyter; and there followed a most bloody sea-fight, which was renewed for four days successively, the English being every time worsted. There was another furious fight in July, when the Dutch were beaten; but De Ruyter made a most gallant retreat. After this, the English burnt 100 merchant ships and two men-of-war who were to be their convoys.

On September 3d, 1666, a dreadful fire broke out in London, which, continuing to rage with merciless fury for three days, laid the greatest part of the city in ashes, consuming eighty-nine churches, many other public structures, and 13,000 dwelling-houses. The parliament, in September, gave the king

What famous act was passed this session? What was the pretext for these severities? What did the French king in January, 1666? Give an account of a sea-fight in May? In July? What occurred September 3d, 1666? What is said of it?

£1,800,000. The king had no sooner received this large supply for the war, than he began to enter on measures for bringing about a peace; and the conferences between the plenipotentiaries of England, France, and Holland, were opened at Breda, in May, 1667.

While negotiations were going on, King Charles unmanned his fleet and laid up his ships, for the sake of keeping the money given him by parliament; while the Dutch, pretending to doubt whether Charles was sincerely inclined to peace, continued their preparations, till at last De Ruyter sailed with his fleet and entered the mouth of the Thames, burnt several ships and took several fortifications; which caused great consternation in the city, and complaints against the king. In short, De Ruyter sailing out of the Thames, kept the coast of England in continual alarms, till he heard that the peace was signed, which was on July 21st. This peace was not very advantageous to England, and caused much murmuring against the king and his ministers.

About this time the chancellorship was taken from the earl of Clarendon, and given to Sir Orlando Bridgham. A short time before this, the earl of Southampton, lord treasurer, had died, and the king put the treasury into the hands of commissioners, one of whom was Sir Thomas Clifford, a declared papist.

In October, 1667, the king laid the first stone of the Royal Exchange.

Abraham Cowley, the poet, and Dr. Jeremy Taylor, died this year.

After the death of Southampton, and the disgrace of Clarendon, the court was abandoned to debauchery, without any check or restraint. The duke of Buckingham, a man of dissolute

What conference was entered upon in May? Conduct of Charles pending negotiations? What did De Ruyter do? What is said of a peace? Who was made chancellor? Who was made treasurer? What is said of him? When was the royal exchange commenced?

morals, but an extraordinary genius; and Wilmot, earl of Rochester, a great wit, but the most licentious poet of the age, were the king's chief favorites, and the ministers of his pleasures. With these, and his mistresses, he spent nearly his whole time. In short, none but papists, and men of no religion, had any credit at court.

In January, 1668, was concluded the famous *Triple Alliance* between England, Holland and Sweden, which was designed to check Louis XIV., of France, who had invaded the Spanish Netherlands. This was almost the only step taken by King Charles for the interests of England, during his whole reign.

Nothing of importance occurred in the year 1669.

In April, 1670, another severe act was passed against the *non-conformists*, subjecting to a penalty, "any persons, above the age of sixteen, who should be present at any religious meeting, for religious exercises, in any other manner than according to the liturgy of the Church of England."

The king, (or the duke of York, for him,) designing to make himself absolute, in order to introduce popery, established a secret council, consisting of the five following named persons, Clifford, Arlington, Buckingham, Ashley Cooper and Lauderdale. This council was named the CABAL, from the initial letters of their names; and indeed they truly deserved that title, as they artfully promoted all the king's measures.

It was evident that the parliament could never be brought to countenance popery; and it was the design of these ministers to enable the king to govern without one.

Charles, by the counsel of the *cabal*, entered into an alliance with France against Holland. The war with the *States* was to be renewed upon the slightest pretense; the object being to de-

What is said of the court at this time? What peace was concluded in 1668? What act was passed in April, 1670? What council was now established? The object? Of whom did it consist? What was it named? What alliance did Charles enter into?

stroy the *States*, to make way for the easy introduction of arbitrary power and popery in England.

Henry Jenkins, a poor fisherman of Yorkshire, died this year, 1670, aged 169. He was born in the reign of Henry VII., and exceeded the famous Thomas Parr by seventeen years.

In February, 1761, the king sent a message to hasten the money bills. But the commons, in conjunction with the lords, presented to him a solemn address upon the dangerous growth of popery, representing the causes and the remedies. The king, according to the custom, set forth a proclamation against them, which was simply a matter of form, as was always the case from the beginning of the reign of James I. to the end of Charles II. A difference occurring about this time, between the two houses, the king went to the house of peers and prorogued the parliament.

The duchess of York died in 1671, leaving two daughters, Mary and Anne, both afterwards queens of England.

This year, (1671,) two famous parliament-generals died; the lord Fairfax, and the earl of Manchester.

A powerful league was now formed against Holland, by France and England, and the king wanted more money, which he would fain raise without applying to parliament. Upon this, the *cabal* advised him to shut up the exchequer; which he did, and it continued shut for over a year, to the great distress and ruin of many families.

On March 15th, the king published his declaration for *liberty of conscience*, suspending the execution of the laws against the *non-conformists*. It is supposed that this was done that the papists might reap the benefit of it. On the 17th, the king declared war against the states-general, in which the French king and the other allies soon after joined.

What is said of Henry Jenkins? What message was sent to parliament? What address did the lords and commons present? When did the duchess of York die? What other persons died this year? What league was now formed? What did the cabal advise? The effect? What declaration did the king publish? What was done October 17th?

In May, there was a naval engagement between the combined fleet of France and England, and the Dutch fleet under De Ruyter, both sides claiming the victory.

The Dutch were now in a most melancholy situation. The province of Holland, to stop the progress of the conquerors, opened their sluices, and laid the country under water. In this exigency, the prince of Orange, who had before been appointed captain-general, and admiral, was now raised to the dignity of *stadtholder*; and the pensionary *De Witt*, and his brother, were in the most tragical manner torn to pieces by the populace, at the Hague, as the betrayers of their country.

King Louis now used all his arts to corrupt the prince of Orange, then only about twenty-two years old, but all in vain. He rejected all proposals with scorn. And when the duke of Buckingham passed through the Hague, on his way to Utrecht, where the French king was, and asked the prince what he meant to do, in the desperate condition his country was then in, the prince bravely and honestly answered, "*that he had one way, not to see its ruin completed, and that was to die in the last dyke.*"

The king and cabal, to raise more money, now found it necessary to have recourse to parliament. They met in February, 1673, and it soon appeared that the court party were in the minority. They vigorously addressed the king against his declaration *for liberty of conscience*, as it was claiming the dispensing power; and both houses joined in an address against the dangers of popery. Alderman Love, a city member, and a leading dissenter, spoke zealously against the king's declaration; which induced the commons to bring in a bill *for the ease of protestant non-conformists*, but it was lost by the king's proroguing the parliament which satisfied the people that the

In May? The result? What was now the condition of the Dutch? What did the province of Holland? What is said of the prince of Orange? The pensionary De Witt? What did Louis now do? The effect? What was the answer of the prince? When did the next parliament meet? How was it composed? What did they do? What did the prorogation of parliament satisfy the people of?

giving ease to the presbyterians was not his real design in his *declaration for liberty of conscience*.

The king at last complied with the desire of the commons, and recalled his declaration. The commons then presented several petitions concerning grievances, and the king having promised to redress them, they passed the money bill, with a proviso tacked to it, that "no papist should be capable of holding any public office." This bill, and the *Test Act*, the king passed on March 29th, 1763, and parliament then adjourned to October.

There were three furious sea-fights this year, (1763,) between the combined fleets of England and France, (the former under Prince Rupert,) and the Dutch fleet; wherein the loss on both sides was nearly equal, and victory remained doubtful.

The king of France took Maestricht in June. In September, the prince of Orange made himself master of Naerden, and in October took Bonne. Louis soon after abandoned all his conquests in the United Provinces, except Maestricht and Grave, being called off by Spain's having declared war against him.

About this time the duke of York married Mary, sister to the duke of Modena.

The parliament met in October, and after a warm session of nine days they were again prorogued; having first voted *that the alliance with France was a grievance; that the evil counselors about the king were a grievance, &c., &c.*

They met again in January, 1674, and went on as before, talking about grievances. A bill *for a general test to distinguish Papists from Protestants*, was likewise prepared, but the king put a stop to these proceedings by proroguing the parliament in February.

What did the king at last do? What followed? What sea-fights occurred in 1763? The result? How did the war progress? Give an account of the next session of parliament. Their next meeting.

This year, (1674,) besides the lord Clarendon, died, the celebrated poet, John Milton, the author of *Paradise Lost*. He had been blind for some years, and was Latin secretary to the long parliament, and to the protector, Oliver Cromwell.

The parliament met in 1677, when a question was started concerning its very being, or whether, by its long prorogation, it was not *ipso-facto* dissolved. The duke of Buckingham endeavored in a speech to prove this, and with him agreed the earls of Salisbury and Shaftsbury, and the lord Wharton, for which the house of lords sent them all to the tower.

The king hoped to bring over to his side William, Prince of Orange, by means of the match which the prince had solicited for himself with the princess Mary, eldest daughter of the duke of York. On this account he went over to England, in October, but would not engage in any discourse about a peace till the marriage was concluded, and when solicited to it he said, "As the allies were likely to have hard terms they would be apt to think he had made his match at their cost; and for his part he would never sell his honor for a wife."

In 1678, parliament passed an act for *burying in woolen*, for the benefit of that manufacture. This year was remarkable for the discovery of a most horrid and formidable conspiracy, carried on by the papists, commonly called the *Popish Plot*. The design was to kill the king, subvert the government, extirpate the Protestant religion and establish Popery. The authors and promoters of it were the pope and cardinals, the Romish, French, Spanish and English Jesuits; and there was strong presumptive proof that the duke of York was also deeply concerned in it. The chief discoverer of this conspiracy was Titus Oates, who, having been a clergyman of the Church of England, reconciled himself to the Church of Rome, or

What distinguished persons died in 1674? What question was started in 1677? The consequence? What did the king hope to do? Why? What did the prince say? What act was passed in 1678? Why? What conspiracy was discovered this year? The design of it? Give a history of it. What is said of Titus Oates?

rather pretended to do so, and joined himself to the English seminary at St. Omer's. He also went to Spain and was admitted to the consultations of the Jesuits, and by this means became acquainted with their designs, and then returning to England he published a narrative of the whole matter.

Many priests and Jesuits, upon the testimony of Oates, were impeached of high treason, condemned and executed.

A bill now passed both houses *for disabling papists from sitting in either house of parliament*, to which the king gave his assent. He did many things now for fear of the parliament, which he would not otherwise have done.

In 1679, a bill was brought into the house of commons, *to disable the duke of York from inheriting the imperial crown of England*, commonly called *the exclusion bill*. Upon this, after passing the *habeas corpus act*, the king prorogued the parliament, and soon after dissolved it.

Another parliament was summoned in October, which was prorogued from time to time for a whole year. During the repeated prorogations of this parliament many addresses were presented from all parts, to petition for its speedy sitting, which being highly distasteful to the court, means were found to have a number of counter addresses, expressing the greatest *abhorrence* of such petitions, as infringements upon the prerogative. And so the nation became divided into two parties, *Petitioners* and *Abhorrrers*, soon known by the names of *Whigs* and *Tories*, which the parties by way of reproach gave each other; *Tory* being the name for an *Irish robber*, and *Whig* signifying *sour milk*, an appellation first given to the Scotch Presbyterians.

Parliament met again in October, and went even greater lengths against the court and the duke of York. Lord Russel

The effect of Oates' testimony? What bill now passed? The cause of king's acts? What bill was introduced in 1679? What did the king? When was the next parliament summoned? Give a history of it? How was the nation divided? What names did the parties give each other? What did *Tory* signify? *Whig*? What is said of the next meeting of parliament?

moved in the house of commons, that they might in the first place consider how to suppress popery and prevent a popish successor. In November they passed the same vote, concerning the encouragement given to the designs of the papists by the hopes of the duke of York succeeding to the crown, that was passed in the last parliament. Then a bill to exclude the duke from the succession was moved for and passed by a great majority.

This year, (1680,) several persons of note died, as John Wilmot, the witty earl of Rochester; Samuel Butler, author of *Hudibras*; Sir Peter Lely, the famous painter; and Harry Martin, one of the late king's judges.

Among the resolutions of the commons against popery and the duke of York, was the following; "That it is the opinion of this house that there is no security or safety for the Protestant religion, or the king's life, without passing a bill for disabling James, duke of York, to inherit the imperial crown of this realm," &c. "And to rely upon any other means and remedies, is not only insufficient, but dangerous." And understanding that the king would prorogue parliament on January 10th, (1681,) they met early in the morning, and resolved, "That whoever advised his majesty to prorogue the parliament, to any other purpose than in order to passing a bill for the exclusion of the duke of York, is a betrayer of the king, the Protestant religion, and the kingdom, a promoter of the French interest, and a pensioner of France."

The parliament was accordingly prorogued on that day, and soon after dissolved by proclamation, and another summoned to meet in March. Parliament met at the time appointed, and the first thing the commons did was to order their votes to be printed, which practice has continued ever since.

In the year 1683, a dangerous plot, called the *Rye House*

What did lord Russell move? What vote passed in November? What other bill was moved? What distinguished persons died in 1680? What were some of the resolutions against popery and the duke of York? What followed? When did parliament meet again? First thing done? What other plot was discovered?

Plot, was discovered, the design of which was said to be, to seize the guards, to kill the king and duke, and to cause a rising in London and other places. Many of the originators of this plot were tried, condemned and executed.

On the 28th of July, the Princess Anne, younger daughter of the duke of York, was married to Prince George, brother to the king of Denmark.

The year 1684, was almost wholly taken up with prosecutions and penalties against persons for using reproachful words against the king and duke of York.

The king died in 1685, under such circumstances as gave strong suspicions of his having been poisoned by the papists.

He left no legitimate issue.

(1685)

JAMES II.

(1688)

King Charles having no legitimate issue, his brother, the duke of York, succeeded to the crown by the name of James II.

If James had kept the promises made in his first speech to his privy council, the people would have had no occasion to complain. But it soon appeared from his conduct that the fulfilling of his promises was the farthest thing from his thoughts.

The first Sunday after his accession he attended *mass*, and on many occasions he caused it to be published that the late king lived and died a zealous Catholic. The king and queen were crowned on the 23d of April, 1685. King James now thought fit to show his resentment against the witnesses for the popish plot. Chief Justice Jeffries was the infamous instrument of King James' cruelty.

The famous Titus Oates was the first victim, who was sentenced to pay a fine of 1,000 marks on each indictment, to stand

The design of it? The consequence? When and whom did the princess Anne marry? How was 1684 taken up? When did the king die? Under what circumstances? His family? When did James II. ascend the throne? What soon appeared from his conduct? What did he do the first Sunday after his accession? What did he cause to be published? When were the king and queen crowned? What did James now do? Whom did he employ? What is said of Titus Oates?

twice in a pillory, and five times a year afterward as long as he lived, to be imprisoned for life, and to be whipped, first from Aldgate to Newgate, and the next day but one, from Newgate to Tyburn; which sentence was executed with the utmost severity. Thomas Dangerfield received a sentence similar to that of Oates, but died in the execution of it.

The parliament of Scotland met on the day of the coronation and passed an act making it high treason to give, take, or defend the *National Covenant*, or the *Solemn League and Covenant*; and another against *House and Field Conventiclers*, (who were the zealous Presbyterians, and in the act called *Fanatics*,) ordaining that such as should *preach* or be *present* at such conventicles should be punished with death.

In England the parliament (the only one in this reign) met in May. The king's promises to this parliament in relation to the Church of England and the rights of the subject were the same as those made to his privy council.

The beginning of King James' reign was disturbed by two invasions, one in Scotland, the other in England, which were both almost as soon defeated, as undertaken.

The earl of Argyle sailed from Holland and made a descent upon Scotland. His army, consisting of 2,000 men, which being hotly pursued by the king's forces, dispersed, and the earl himself was taken and beheaded.

The duke of Monmouth, natural son of Charles II., landed at Lyme in Dorsetshire, June 11th, with about eighty followers, which soon increased to 2,000. He arrived at Taunton on the 20th, where he was received with loud acclamations; and his forces still increasing, he took upon himself the title of king, and was proclaimed by the name of James II. The next day he was proclaimed at Bridgewater. His army had now increased

Of Thomas Dangerfield? When did the parliament of Scotland meet? What do? When did parliament meet in England? What promises did James make? What disturbed the beginning of this reign? Give an account of these invasions. Who was the duke of Monmouth? What is said of him?

to 5,000 men. His pretended reign was short; for engaging the king's forces at Sedgemore on July 6th, he was defeated with a terrible slaughter. The duke was taken to London and informed that he must prepare to die. \

The duke, though he had most submissively begged his life, now rose from the king's feet with an air of bravery, and was conducted to the tower, from whence he was brought out and beheaded on the 15th of July, receiving five strokes of the axe before his head was severed from his body.

Jeffries was now sent with a special commission to try those persons who had been concerned in this rash and ill-concerted rebellion. Colonel Kirk attended him with a body of troops to keep the people in awe. They were both of a disposition equally cruel and bloody, and exhibited such a shocking scene of barbarity as was never before known in England.

They hanged men by scores in the most insulting and inhuman manner. Kirk caused thirty to be hanged at once in sight of himself and officers at dinner. *Ten* were turned off with a health to the king; *ten* with a health to the queen; and *ten* with a health to Jeffries.

Many other instances are given of the brutish cruelty of this judge and his military assistant. Jeffries boasted that "he had hanged more than all the judges since William the Conqueror;" and at his return from his bloody work he was rewarded with the office of lord high-chancellor.

The same spirit of revenge manifested itself in London. Many were executed for being concerned in the *Rye House* plot. Charles Bateman, a surgeon, was executed because he was engaged in curing Dr. Oates of his wounds after his cruel whipping.

James, now freed from the danger he was in from Monmouth's rebellion, began soon to discover his design of establishing Popery in his dominions.

What is said of Jeffries? Who attended him? What is said of them? What is said of the manner of exercising their authority? What was Jeffries' boast? How was he promoted? What was James' great object?

One of the modes adopted by James II. for the establishment of the Romish faith, was a dispensation from the operation of the "*Corporation Act*" and the "*Test Act*." The former, passed in 1661, prevented any person from being legally elected to an office belonging to the government of a corporation in England, unless within a twelve-month preceding he had received the sacrament of the Lord's Supper according to the rites of the Church of England. This act was aimed against the Dissenters, or the Presbyterians and Independents.

The *Test Act*, passed in 1673, required all officers to take the oaths and make the declaration against *transubstantiation* within six months, and also to receive the sacrament of the Lord's Supper in some public church according to the usage of the Church of England. This act was aimed against the Papists. These acts remained in force until the year 1828.

The king gradually changed his council, turning out Protestants and substituting Papists in their place. The same change was made in the officers of the army, until by degrees it became a Popish army.

In 1685 the king demanded a supply for keeping up his army. The commons voted him a supply, but addressed the king against employing Popish officers in the army, at which the king was greatly offended and prorogued the parliament, November 10th.

All the rest of King James' reign was wholly employed in measures to make himself absolute, and establish Popery. In consequence of the decision of the judges that the king might dispense with the laws, the Papists began every where to set up the public exercise of their religion. The Jesuits erected colleges and seminaries in all the principal towns; and it was not long before there were Popish lords-lieutenants of counties, Popish justices of the peace, and other Popish magistrates all

How did he proceed? What took place in 1685? What is said of the rest of this reign? What did the papists and Jesuits do? What was the consequence?

over England; and all places of honor or profit were bestowed upon Papists or persons popishly affected.

While the Papists had full liberty to say what they pleased in their sermons and writings, an order came out to prohibit the inferior clergy from preaching on controverted points of religion.

In 1687 the king sent his *declaration* into Scotland, suspending all laws against the Roman Catholics, and soon after he published a like *declaration for liberty of conscience* in England.

The king did all he could to gain the members of parliament and induce them to abolish the penal laws and tests, or authorize the dispensing power.

He used both promises and threats to bring them to compliance, but all proving in vain, he dissolved them July 2d. After this, he tried to get a new parliament to his mind, but such was the disposition of the nation, and such their aversion to Popery and arbitrary power, which they saw it was his design to establish, that he never ventured to call another.

The king was anxious to know the opinion of the prince and princess of Orange concerning the penal laws and tests. The matter was at first managed with great secrecy by one Mr. Stuart, who by the king's direction wrote to pensionary Fagel about it. At last some circumstances occasioned it to be made public how contrary were the sentiments of the prince and princess to those of the king, their father.

This year (1687) the famous George Villiers, duke of Buckingham, died.

The Protestants, in the midst of their danger, were in hopes that the king, being advanced in years, would not live much longer, and that the accession of the princess of Orange, who was presumptive heir to the crown, would set all things right; but their

What liberties had the Papists? What was prohibited the inferior clergy? What did the king do in 1687? What did he try to induce parliament to do? How? What was the result? How did the king manage to obtain information as to the prince and princess of Orange? Who were the prince and princess of Orange? What hopes had the Protestants?

hopes seemed quite extinguished, when on the 10th day of June, 1688, the queen was said to be delivered of a prince, (known hereafter as *the Pretender*.) Many believed, or affected to believe, that this was a supposititious child, and there were many circumstances which tended to confirm this belief.

After the birth, real or pretended, of a prince of Wales, the best part of the nation, tories as well as whigs, began to devise means for preserving their religion and liberties from being utterly destroyed; for now the danger from Popery and arbitrary power was not likely to end with the king's life, but to be perpetuated by means of this birth.

In this situation, many persons of eminence began to take measures for inviting over the Prince of Orange in order to put him at the head of the party against the king. Several of the nobility and gentry, going abroad on various pretenses, waited on the prince, at the Hague, and by these means such a secret correspondence was held with the leading men of the kingdom as in a short time produced a wonderful revolution and a happy deliverance from papal authority. And such was the situation of affairs in Europe at that time, on account of the ambitious views of France, which King James favored, that not only the Protestant but the Roman Catholic powers desired a revolution in England.

This business was managed at first with great secrecy, but when it came to be known it was approved by the whole nation, and by all Europe except France. In the mean time, the prince of Orange published a declaration, importing that the design of this undertaking was to maintain the Protestant religion, and the laws and liberties of these kingdoms, which had been so openly violated, and, in order to this, to have a free and lawful parliament.

How were their hopes extinguished? What did many believe? What means were now devised? By whom? What did many eminent persons do? How was the affair managed? What did most of the powers of Europe wish? What letter did the Prince of Orange publish?

On the 19th of October, the prince set sail with a fleet of about fifty men-of-war, twenty-five frigates, and many fire-ships, and transports, having on board about 14,000 land forces, and accompanied by many of the English nobility and gentry. The prince carried a flag with English colors, and surrounded with this motto, "The Protestant religion and Liberties of England."

This fleet entered the English channel and landed at Tourbay without opposition. From thence he marched to Exeter, where he was joined by many persons of note, who promised to stand by him and one another in the cause in which they were engaged.

Upon the prince's landing, the king ordered his army, under the earl of Feversham, to rendezvous on Salisbury plains. But great numbers deserted him and went over to the prince, among whom was the lord Churchill, afterwards duke of Marlborough.

The king finding that he could not rely upon his army, returned to London, and on the way had the mortification to be left by Prince George of Denmark, who with others went over to the Prince of Orange, and was soon followed by his princess, the lady Anne, to the unspeakable grief of the king, her father, from whom there was now an universal defection of the nobility and all ranks of people.

The prince, in the meantime, advanced to Sherburn, and from thence to Salisbury, where he made a triumphant entry; the king's army having retired to Reading.

The king, by the advice of some protestant peers, now promised to call a free parliament, and to send commissioners to treat with the prince, but consulting with his popish friends, they advised him to withdraw himself, with his queen and son, out of the kingdom. Accordingly the queen with the young

When did the prince set sail? What is said of his fleet? His flag? The motto? Give an account of their landing and march. What did the king do? Who now deserted him? How did this affect the king? What did the prince do? What did the king promise? What was he advised to do? What is said of the queen and prince?

prince, and a few attendants, Dec. 9th, embarked at Gravesend, and arrived safely in France; and the king, the next night, left Whitehall, in disguise, in order to follow her hither. A singular accident happened to the king, who, having embarked in a small vessel near Feversham, was stopped by some fishermen, who rifled him and treated him with great indignity. A constable who went on board knowing him, fell at his feet and begged him to forgive the violence offered to his person.

The lords, hearing of this adventure, prevailed on him to return to Whitehall, where he arrived on the 16th of December. His only public act at this time, which was the last of his reign, was the issuing out an order against mobs and riots. During his short stay, his palace was crowded with Irish papists, priests and Jesuits.

The prince arrived at St. James amidst the joyful acclamations of all ranks of people. On December 21st, he convened the lords spiritual and temporal, to consider of the best methods for calling a free parliament, and pursuing the ends of his *declaration*.

The king dreading the consequences of a free parliament, privately withdrew himself about three in the morning, and with only the duke of Berwick, his natural son, and two others, he embarked for France. To this flight we may properly fix the period of this unfortunate monarch's reign, after he had swayed the sceptre not quite four years, in the fifty-sixth year of his age.

Where did the king go? What accident befell the king? What did the lords do? Did the king comply? What was the last public act of his reign? When did the prince arrive at St. James? What did he now do? For what purpose? What did the king do? What is said of his flight? In what year of his age and reign?

INTERREGNUM.

As soon as King James had thus left the kingdom, the lords took upon themselves the government, and meeting in their house they agreed to address the Prince of Orange to take upon himself the administration of all public affairs till a convention should meet, for which they desired him to issue out letters to the several counties, cities and boroughs, directing them to choose such a number of persons to represent them as were of right to be sent to parliament. In reply to the invitation, the prince returned an answer that he would do as they desired.

The Scots peers presented a like address with regard to the administration of public affairs in Scotland, and received a similar answer.

The convention met on the appointed day, January 22d, 1689, when both houses chose their speakers. After a letter from the prince had been read in both houses, they jointly presented an address to him acknowledging him, under God, the deliverer of the nation, approving of his administration of the government, and praying him to continue it.

The commons soon passed the following vote, "That King James II., having endeavored to subvert the constitution of the kingdom, by breaking the original contract between the king and people, and having by the advice of Jesuits and other wicked persons violated the fundamental laws, and withdrawn himself from the kingdom, hath abdicated the government, and that the throne is thereby become vacant."

What did the lords do as soon as James had left? What did they desire of the Prince of Orange? What reply did he send them? What did the Scotch peers do? What answer did they receive? When did the convention meet? What did they do? What vote did the commons pass?

To this vote the lords finally agreed, after which both houses voted "that the Prince and Princess of Orange should be King and Queen."

The princess arrived in England February 12th, and the next day the prince and princess were waited upon by both houses of the convention, who offered them the crown, after having caused a declaration of their rights to be read, concluding thus: "The lords spiritual and temporal, and commons, assembled at Westminster, do resolve, that William and Mary, Prince and Princess of Orange, be, and be declared, King and Queen of England, France and Ireland, and the dominions thereunto belonging, to hold the crown and royal dignity, &c., during their lives, and the life of the survivor of them; and that the sole and full exercise of the royal power be only in and exercised by the said Prince of Orange, in the names of the said prince and princess, during their joint lives, and after their decease the said crown and royal dignity, of the said kingdoms and dominions, to be to the heirs of the body of the said princess, and in default of such issue, to the Princess Anne of Denmark, and the heirs of her body, and for default of such issue, to the heirs of the body of the said Prince of Orange."

The prince, in a most agreeable and obliging answer, accepted the crown in the name of them both, and the same day they were proclaimed king and queen, by the names of WILLIAM AND MARY.

Did the lords assent to this? What did both houses now vote? When did the princess arrive in England? By whom were they waited on? What followed? How was the crown and the succession settled? What answer did the prince make? When and how were they proclaimed?

(1689) WILLIAM AND MARY, (1702)

THE first act of king William, after he had settled his privy council, was his giving the royal assent to a bill that had passed both houses, "to remove and prevent all questions and disputes concerning the assembling and sitting of this present parliament:" by which act the convention which had placed the crown on the prince and princess of Orange, was changed into a parliament.

From the beginning of the reign of William and Mary, there was a party in the nation who disliked the new settlement, and were in continual plots to overturn it, and to restore the late king James. These were distinguished by the name of *Jacobites*, as also that of *Non-jurors*, from their refusing to take the oath to the present government.

The king having acquainted the parliament with the news that the late king James had sailed from Brest with a considerable body of French troops, in order to land in Ireland, both houses unanimously resolved, "That they would stand by and assist his majesty with their lives and fortunes, in supporting his alliances abroad, in reducing Ireland, and in defense of the Protestant religion and laws of the kingdom."

Not long after this, the king declared war against France, who had assisted the late king James in his invasion of Ireland.

The king and queen were crowned April 11th, 1689; before

What was William's first act? To what did he give his assent? The consequence of this act? What is said of an adverse party in the nation? What were they called? What did king William do? What did both houses resolve? Why did William declare war against France? When were the king and queen crowned?

which his majesty had conferred several titles of honor ; among the rest, lord John Churchill was created earl of Marlborough.

In May, the two houses passed an act *for exempting his majesty's protestant subjects dissenting from the Church of England, from the penalties of certain laws*, which is commonly called "*The Act of Toleration.*" To this the king gave his assent ; and to this act the people of England are justly indebted for the liberty they to this day enjoy.

In July, 1689, the princess Anne, of Denmark, was delivered of a prince named William, whom his majesty created duke of Gloucester.

In December, the *Bill of Rights and Succession*, agreeable to the *declaration of rights*, was passed, with the addition of a clause for excluding papists, and persons marrying papists, for ever, from inheriting the crown of England.

A revolution in Scotland quickly followed that in England. The convention of estates met in that kingdom, and passed an act for settling the crown upon the king and queen of England, pursuant to which, they were proclaimed on April 11th, the day of their coronation in England ; which being done, the meeting of the estates was turned into a parliament.

The late king James having landed in Ireland, took possession of several places, and proceeded as far as Dublin, where having called a parliament, an act was passed to attain between 2,000 and 3,000 protestant lords, ladies, clergymen, and gentlemen, of high treason.

Upon this, king William, in June, 1690, landed with a gallant army in Ireland, and on July 1st, fought the ever-memorable battle of the Boyne, wherein he gained a complete victory over the French and Irish army, and obliged king James

What titles did they confer ? What act was passed in May ? What is this act called ? What is said of it ? Who was now created duke of Gloucester ? What important bill was passed in December ? What was done in Scotland ? What did the late king James now do ? What did William do ? What battle was fought ?

to retire to Dublin, and to make all possible haste back to France.

After this victory, king William returned to England, and sent the earl of Marlborough to carry on the reduction of Ireland, who took Cork and Kinsale with such expedition that he was again at Kensington on the 28th of October.

The next year, 1691, the English, under the brave general Ginkle, pursued the conquest so vigorously and successfully, that in October, all Ireland was reduced to the obedience of William and Mary.

When king William was in Ireland, the *Jacobites* began to stir, designing to rise when the French fleet arrived on the coast, but by the vigilance of the queen, their measures were disconcerted and their leaders secured. This, together with the news of William's victory at the Boyne, caused the French to desist from their project.

In the meantime, the French king was pushing his conquests in Netherlands, which made it necessary for king William to go over to the congress at the Hague in 1691, in order to animate the confederate princes and *States*, who by the slowness of their councils had given too great an advantage to the common enemy.

King William commanding in person the confederate army, the famous battle of Steenkirk was fought, in which, though the French remained masters of the field, yet William so bravely disputed the victory, that they had scarcely anything else to boast of, the loss being nearly equal on both sides.

During William's absence in 1691, a conspiracy was set on foot by the Jacobites, in concert with the French, the object of which was to assassinate king William and restore the late

The result? Who was next sent into Ireland? The result? By whom was the conquest of Ireland pursued? With what effect? What did the Jacobites do during William's absence in Ireland? What were the French doing in the meantime? For what purpose did William go to the Hague? What is said of the battle of Steenkirk? What happened in England during William's absence?

king James. This was happily discovered, and some of the principal actors were executed as traitors.

In 1693, the battle of Landen was fought between the allied army commanded by King William, and the French under the duke of Luxemburg. The former fought with obstinate bravery, but by the superiority of numbers the French were left masters of the field. This year also, the English loss at sea was very severe, which was owing in a great degree to the bad management of the English admirals.

In 1694, the English in a great measure retrieved their honor at sea; of a fleet of fifty-five French merchant-men, Captain Pickard burnt or sunk thirty-five, as also the man-of-war which convoyed them; whilst the fleet under Admiral Russel rode triumphant in the Mediterranean, blocked up the French fleet in Toulon, and by that means put a stop to the conquering arms of France in Catalonia.

On the 28th of December this year, queen Mary died of the small pox.

WILLIAM III.

In the beginning of the year 1695, the parliament made a strict inquiry into several abuses and corruptions. They first began with the agents of regiments; they next fell upon the contractors for clothing the army, and afterward, the commissioners for licensing and regulating hackney-coaches and stage-coaches came under censure.

Next, the affair of the *East India Company* was taken up, and the *bribery* and *corruption* of several persons were exposed and punished. The bad state of the silver coin, which by clipping and adulterating, was next considered and a remedy applied.

In 1696 a double plot was discovered to assassinate the king and invade the kingdom, which was happily discovered in time

What was the object? How did it terminate? What is said of the battle of Landen? What is said of the English loss at sea in 1693? In 1694? When did Queen Mary die? What did parliament do in 1695? What abuses did they correct? What plots were now discovered?

to be prevented. Some of the conspirators fled beyond the sea, and others were apprehended and executed. The campaign of 1696 passed in Flanders without any action; and indeed France, as well as England and Holland, began to be weary of the war and to entertain serious thoughts of peace, for which some overtures had already been made on the part of the French king.

A treaty of peace was finally concluded and signed by the English, Spanish, and Dutch plenipotentiaries, with those of France, on the 10th of September. In December the royal assent was given to an act *against corresponding with the late King James, or his adherents*.

In 1698 a new East India Company was established, the merchants having agreed to advance £2,000,000 to the government at eight per cent. The old company offering to raise £700,000 at four per cent., the two companies were united.

In 1700, died William, duke of Gloucester, son of the prince and princess of Denmark.

In June, 1701, was passed the famous "*act for the further limitation of the crown, and better securing the rights and liberties of the subjects*;" whereby the crown was farther limited to the Princess Sophia, Electress Dowager of Hanover, and her Protestant heirs. She was grand-daughter of King James I. by his daughter Elizabeth, queen of Bohemia.

The English nation was now divided into two parties, the old and new ministry; but the death of the late King James in September, 1701, and the French king's declaring thereupon the pretended prince of Wales king of those realms, gave a new turn to people's minds, and made them all unite in a firm adherence to his majesty, and the utmost abhorrence of this indignity put upon him and the nation by the French king.

What followed? What is said of the campaign of 1696? What is said of a treaty of peace? To what bill was the royal assent now given? What is said of the East India Company? Who died in 1700? What famous act was passed in 1701? How was the crown further limited? What two parties now existed in the nation? What gave a new turn to people's minds? What effect did this produce?

The king called another parliament in December, and the commons addressed his majesty that it might be an article in the several treaties of alliance, "*that no peace should be made with France till his majesty and the nation have reparation for the indignity offered by the French king in declaring the pretended prince of Wales king of England, Scotland and Ireland.*"

They then voted 40,000 land forces and as many for the sea service. In the midst of these vigorous resolutions the king died, in February, 1702, in the fifty-second year of his age and fourteenth of his reign.

During his illness the royal assent was given by commission to an act "for attainting the pretended prince of Wales of high treason;" and another "for the further security of his majesty's person and the succession of the crown in the Protestant line."

William III. was a prince of few faults and many excellent qualities, and an illustrious instrument for rescuing the nation from Popery and arbitrary power.

During this reign the national debt, which grew out of the system of borrowing money on remote funds, and which has been attended with the most pernicious consequences, was greatly increased;* and a *standing army*, which was first sanctioned by

When did the king call another parliament? What address did the commons present? What did parliament vote? When did the king die? In what year of his age and reign? To what acts was the royal assent given during the king's illness? What is said of William's character? What pernicious system began in this reign?

* The beginning of the national debt of England was in the reign of Charles II., about the year 1672, when £650,000, about \$3,000,000, was borrowed of the banks and other capitalists of London, on pledge of the taxes, but the government not keeping its promise of repayment from the taxes, many of those who advanced the money were ruined. The revolution of 1688 and the establishment of William and Mary upon the throne added about £2,000,000 or \$10,000,000 more to the sum. In 1721 the wars with France and Spain ran up the debt to £54,000,000, or nearly \$270,000,000. In 1784 the war with France and Spain and the American revolution had increased the debt to £240,000,000, or about \$1,200,000,000. In 1815, at the close of the long war against France, it reached the highest sum at which it has ever stood, viz: £860,000,000, or \$4,300,000,000. From this time up to the commencement of the Crimean war it was reduced about £100,000,000, or \$500,000,000, but this war added £45,000,000 more, bringing it up to £805,000,000, or \$4,020,000,000. The interest on the debt has been very much reduced. At the beginning of the last century it was eight per cent.; now it is reduced to three and one-half per cent.

parliament in the time of William, now seems interwoven with the constitution. In 1694 the bank of England and the salt and stamp offices were established.

1702

ANNE.

1714

The Princess Anne of Denmark, second daughter of James II., succeeding to the crown by virtue of the *Act of Settlement* made in King William's reign, was accordingly proclaimed queen in a few hours after that king's death.

Both houses of parliament immediately assembled and the queen addressed them. After alluding in fitting terms to the great loss the nation had sustained in the death of so excellent a king as William, she exhorted them to exert themselves for the encouragement of her allies to reduce the exorbitant power of France.

A few days after, her majesty declared the earl of Marlborough captain-general of all her forces, and wrote a letter to the *States General* to assure them of her inviolable friendship, and her resolution to maintain the alliances made with them, and to prosecute the plan her predecessor had begun.

The ministry at this time was made up of two parties—tories or high church, and whigs or those of a moderate spirit, which latter were the best friends of William. These parties were divided in their opinion as to whether England should enter into the war as principals or only as auxiliaries. The tories were in favor of the latter, but the whigs, the chief of whom were the dukes of Somerset and Devonshire, were for the former, and the earls of Marlborough and Pembroke joining with them brought the majority of the council to their opinion. And so war was declared in May against France and Spain.

What is said of a standing army? When was the bank of England and the salt and stamp offices established? Who was Queen Anne? When did she ascend the throne? What did parliament do? What did the queen do? What did the queen do in a few days after this? What two parties were there at this time? What were their different views as to the war? Which prevailed? What was the consequence?

The design was to restore the balance of Europe by taking the Spanish dominions out of the hands of the French king, which he had seized for his grandson, and placing the archduke Charles, the emperor Leopold's second son, on the throne of Spain, whom the allies now acknowledged as king.

This was the scope of the grand alliance which King William had been forming with the emperor and the states-general, to which acceded the kings of Portugal and Prussia, the duke of Savoy, and several other powers.

The queen appointed lord Godolphin lord high treasurer; Prince George, of Denmark, her royal consort, lord high admiral; and Sir George Rooke, vice-admiral of England.

We are now entering upon a war, the most glorious to England and her allies that was ever known. The confederates first took Keyzerswart, a strong tower on the Rhine. The states-general having given the command of their forces to the earl of Marlborough, he assembled the confederate troops the beginning of July, and marched after the enemy, who everywhere retired before him, till at last they entirely abandoned the Spanish Guelderland.

Sir George Rooke, with the combined English and Dutch fleet, and the duke of Ormond, who commanded the land forces, made an unsuccessful attempt upon Cadiz, but this was in a measure compensated by a victory shortly after, gained by the duke of Ormond, at Vigo; and the gallant achievement of admiral Hopson, who burnt, sunk or took the Spanish galleons, with the French men-of-war that convoyed them, in all about thirty-eight sail.

The new parliament met in October, for which the elections had generally gone in favor of the *Tory* or *High-Church* party.

What was the design of this war? What powers entered into this alliance? What appointments did the queen make? What is said of this war? What did the confederates first do? What did the earl of Marlborough do? What did Sir George Rooke do? What did the duke of Ormond do? What compensated this failure? When did new parliament meet? How had the elections gone?

The commons passed a bill *to prevent occasional conformity*, which was designed to exclude all dissenters from places of profit or trust, for which some of them would qualify themselves by receiving the sacrament *once* at church. The bill was rejected by the lords.

In December the queen conferred the title of duke upon the earl of Marlborough, for his eminent services, and assigned him £5,000 a year, out of the revenues of the post office, during his life.

A clause was added to a bill by the lords, and passed into a law, making it *high-treason* for any one to endeavor to deprive or hinder the next successor, according to the acts, from succeeding after her majesty; by which the *Hanover* succession was further secured.

The duke of Marlborough opened the campaign of 1703 with the siege of Bonne, which he took in a few days. Then marching into the *Low Countries*, he made himself master of *Huy*; and finding it impossible to bring the French to an engagement, he finished the campaign with the reduction of *Limbourg*. In the meantime the French gained many advantages in Germany and Italy, taking many important places. In November, England was visited by a terrible tornado, which did great damage both by sea and land, and many lives were lost. This tempest is still known by the name of the *great storm*.

The year 1704 began with some changes in the ministry; Robert Harley was made *secretary of state*, and Henry St. John, *secretary of war*.

The empire being in the utmost danger from a union of the French and Bavarians, the duke of Marlborough marched with a surprising expedition toward the Danube, and being joined by Prince Eugene, these consummate generals, on the

What is now said of the duke of Marlborough? What law was now passed? What is said of the campaign of 1703? What did the French army do? What is said of a tempest? What changes were made in the ministry this year, (1804)?

2d of August, attacked the grand army of French and Bavarians at *Blenheim*, and gained a most signal victory. The loss of the enemy was estimated at 20,000 killed and 15,000 prisoners. After this victory they retook Ulm, Landen and Trærbach, and all Bavaria submitted to the conquerors.

The duke returned to England, when the queen settled upon him the manor of Woodstock, where *Blenheim-House* was erected for him, as a monument of his glorious victory.

Gibraltar was taken this year, 1704, by Sir George Rooke, and has ever since remained in possession of the English.

In 1705, the duke of Marlborough marched into the Low Countries and saved the citadel of Liege, which the French had invested; after which he recovered Huy; and when the campaign was over he went to Vienna, where the emperor conferred upon him the title of Prince of Mindelheim. This year, (1705,) parliament passed an act for further securing the Protestant succession, and lords-justices were appointed for continuing the government in the name of the successor, till she or he should arrive in the kingdom.

Catharine, queen-dowager, widow of King Charles II., died this year.

In May, 1706, the duke of Marlborough and M. d'Auverquerque totally routed, with a dreadful slaughter, the French army under the duke of Bavaria and Marshal Villeroy, in the famous battle of Ramilleis; the consequence of this glorious victory was the reduction of almost all the Spanish Netherlands.

In Italy the allies were no less successful. Prince Eugene took town after town, until the French finally abandoned all their conquests in Italy.

Barcelona was this year blockaded by the French fleet, but

Give an account of the battle of *Blenheim*? What followed this battle? What is now said of the duke? When was Gibraltar taken? By whom? What is said of the campaign of 1705? What did parliament do this year? What is said of the campaign of 1706? What battle was fought? The consequence? What was done in Italy? What is said of Barcelona?

Sir John Leake, with the English fleet, obliged the French admiral to retire.

The year 1706 is memorable for beginning, and the next for completing the union of the two kingdoms of England and Scotland. This project met with great opposition in Scotland; but the articles of union were finally ratified and received the royal assent, March 6th, 1707.

By these articles the two kingdoms were, on May 1st, 1707, and forever after, united into one, by the name of *Great Britain*, to be represented by one and the same parliament. The respective church governments, *Episcopal* in England, and *Presbyterian* in Scotland, were secured by the act of ratification of the respective parliaments; and the Protestant succession was likewise established by the articles.

In 1707, fortune seemed to declare in favor of France and her allies. The earl of Galway lost the battle of *Almanza* in *Spain*; and Marshal Villars made himself master of the *German* lines at *Biehl* and *Stolhoffen*. In the *Netherlands*, the duke of Marlborough was unable to bring the duke of Vendosme to an engagement; and the design upon Toulon, by the duke of Savoy and Prince Eugene, with the assistance of the confederate fleet under Sir Cloudsley Shovel, unhappily miscarried.

The first parliament of *Great Britain* met in October, when both houses declared in an address, "That no peace could be honorable or safe if Spain, the West Indies, or any part of the Spanish monarchy, be suffered to remain under the house of *Bourbon*."

The French king, provoked at the late attempt upon Toulon, determined to retaliate by carrying the war into Great Britain. Accordingly "the Pretender," (now called the Chevalier de St. George,) embarked on board the French fleet, with a body of

For what is 1706 memorable? What is said of this union? What is said of the campaign of 1707? When did the first parliament of Great Britain meet? What did they do? What did the French king determine upon? What is said of the movements of the Pretender?

troops, for Scotland. But the timely approach of the English fleet under Sir George Byng, caused them to make the best of their way back to Dunkirk.

The glorious success of the allies during the campaign of 1708 made amends for the disasters of the last. The French had surprised Ghent and Bruges, and invested Audenarde; but Prince Eugene and the duke of Marlborough coming up with them two days after, a bloody battle ensued, in which the French were totally routed.

In October, Lisle surrendered to the prince and duke, and Ghent and Bruges were soon after recovered.

Sir John Leake took Cagliari, the capital of Sardinia, upon which the whole island submitted; and afterwards, by the assistance of a body of land forces under General Stanhope, he reduced Port Mahon and the whole island of Minorca.

Prince George of Denmark died in October of this year, of the asthma and dropsy. He was a prince of great justice and humanity, a hearty friend of the revolution, and zealously attached to the Protestant cause. Sir George Rooke, the famous admiral, also died this year.

In the beginning of the year 1709 the French king made some overtures of peace, in consequence of which a treaty was begun at the Hague, and forty preliminary articles were agreed upon; but as by one of them King Philip was to relinquish the Spanish dominions, this not being relished by the French court, the treaty came to nothing.

The peace being thus broken off, both armies again took the field. The duke of Marlborough soon after gained an important victory in the bloody battle of Blaregnies, which cost the allies about 18,000 men.

While the duke was thus pursuing his conquests in Flanders, a party was secretly forming against him at home, chiefly by Mr.

What is said of the campaign of 1708? What distinguished persons died this year? What is said of Prince George? What is said of a treaty of peace this year (1709)? What important battle was gained by the duke? What is said of a party forming against the duke of Marlborough?

Harley and Mr. St. John. Mr. Harley had been a whig, but being an artful, insinuating man, had, by means of a Mrs. Hill, afterwards Masham, private access to the queen, and by their intrigues prejudiced her against the duke of Marlborough and the management and continuance of the war.

A Dr. Sacheverel had preached a furious sermon against the whigs, in which he strenuously asserted high notions of hereditary right, passive obedience, and non-resistance; gave an odious turn to the revolution, the protestant succession, the union, and the toleration granted to the dissenters, and insinuated the church to be in danger under the present administration. This raised such a ferment in the country as effected the queen, who was doubtless a good and well-meaning princess, but had high notions of the church.

In 1710 the duke of Marlborough and Prince Eugene took Douay, Bethune, St. Venant and Aire.

In Spain, King Charles, with General Stanhope, having defeated King Philip in the battles of Almenara and Saragossa, made his triumphant entrance into Madrid, but was soon obliged to retire, his rival becoming superior by fresh re-inforcements.

After this, eight English battalions and as many squadrons were attacked and made prisoners of war, which was followed by an obstinate battle, in which Count Staremberg was worsted.

These misfortunes gave great encouragement to the enemies of the ministry, and the tories carried all before them in the elections. Many changes were now made in favor of the tories. Mr. Harley was made commissioner of the treasury, and Mr. St. John, secretary of state.

The new parliament met in November with a house of commons entirely devoted to the new ministers.

The Emperor Joseph died in April, 1711, and Charles III.,

By whom? What is said of Dr. Sacheverel's sermon? The consequence? What is said of the campaign of 1710? To whom did these misfortunes give encouragement? What changes now took place? What is said of the new parliament? When did the Emperor Joseph die?

of Spain, his brother, was chosen emperor in October, by the name of Charles VI.

Mr. Harley introduced and perfected his project for satisfying the public debts, by incorporating a company to trade to the South Seas, and in May was created earl of Oxford and made high-treasurer. Mr. St. John was also created Viscount Bolingbroke.

The new ministry were now determined upon a peace upon almost any terms. Parliament meeting in December, the commons fell in entirely with the ministry, but the house of lords being not likely to do so, twelve new peers were created at once, to make a majority; and in this session the *Occasional Conformity Bill* was passed under a new title.

The duke of Marlborough, not likely to accord with the ministers, was first industriously defamed, as if he wanted to carry on the war to his own advantage, and afterwards removed; when, obtaining leave to go abroad, he left the kingdom, and returned no more until the day the queen died.

The duke of Ormond succeeded Marlborough in the command of the forces, who was entirely disposed to comply with the pacific schemes of the ministers. The conferences for negotiating a peace began at Utrecht, January 29th, 1712, but the treaty was not signed until March, 31st, 1713. By the terms of the treaty, Dunkirk was to be demolished, and the English were to have Gibraltar and Port Mahon; yet Philip was left in the peaceable possession of the crown of Spain, to dispossess him of which, and so to restore the balance of power, was the chief object of the war.

The Princess Sophia, Duchess-dowager of Hanover, died about this time, by which the right of succession to the crown devolved upon the elector, her son.

By whom was he succeeded? What did Mr. Harley do? What were the new ministry determined upon? What was done in parliament? What is said of the duke of Marlborough? Who succeeded him? What is said of him? What conference was held? When? Where? Where was the treaty signed? The terms of it? Who died about this time?

After the peace there was nothing but quarrels and contentions among the ministers. Bolingbroke was for undermining the treasurer as not enduring to be second in the administration, and to gratify his ambition was for pushing matters to extremity against the whigs, and was even suspected of designs against the Protestant succession, and in favor of the Pretender; while the parliament took all proper measures against the latter and in favor of the former.

The queen's health had been failing for some time, and the animosity between the treasurer and the secretary, which broke out into a flame upon the rising of parliament, was thought to have hastened her end. She died August 1st, 1714, in the fiftieth year of her age and thirteenth of her reign.

She was undoubtedly a most virtuous, just, and pious princess, but was easily led by her favorites. The greatest part of her reign was glorious, and the whole might have been so if she had not been abused by those whom she favored with her confidence.

Queen Anne had by her husband, Prince George of Denmark, four sons and two daughters, all of whom died young.

What followed the peace? What is said of Bolingbroke? What is said of the queen's last illness and death? When did she die? In what year of her age and reign? What is said of her? What is said of her family?

THE HOUSE OF BRUNSWICK.

(1714)

GEORGE I.

(1727)

THE Protestant succession in the House of Hanover, having been so firmly established by several acts of parliament, that, notwithstanding the late endeavors of some to set it aside, in favor of the Pretender, it took place immediately upon the death of Queen Anne, August 1, 1714, without opposition.

George I. was the eldest son of Ernest Augustus, Elector of Hanover, by the Princess Sophia, daughter of Frederick, Elector Palatine and King of Bohemia, and of Elizabeth, eldest daughter of King James I.

Parliament met in the afternoon of the day the queen died, and both lords and commons immediately agreed upon addresses of congratulation for his majesty's peaceable and happy succession, promising to support his undoubted right to the crown, against the Pretender, and all other persons whatsoever. These addresses were transmitted to his majesty, and the two houses received most affectionate answers.

The hopes and fears of both whigs and tories were great at this time ; but the king had been prepossessed against the latter ; and a change was immediately effected in all important offices under government. The duke of Ormond was dismissed from his command, which was restored to the duke of Marlborough ; the earl of Nottingham was declared president of the council ; the great seal was given to lord Cowper ; the privy seal to the

When did George I. ascend the throne ? What is said of the mode of his accession ? How was he descended from James I ? When did parliament meet ? What do ? How were these addresses received ? What is said of the whigs and tories ? To which party was the king inclined ? What change was soon effected ? What is said of the duke of Ormond ? Of the duke of Marlborough ? Which party obtained the ascendancy ?

earl of Wharton ; and the vice-royalty of Ireland to the earl of Sunderland. Lord Townshend and Mr. Stanhope were appointed secretaries of state ; Mr. Pulteney, secretary of war ; and Mr. Walpole was made paymaster of the army. The post of secretary for Scotland was bestowed on the duke of Montrose ; and the duke of Argyle was appointed commander-in-chief of the forces of that country. Thus the whigs obtained an ascendancy both in and out of parliament.

When the parliament met, the earl of Oxford, the duke of Ormond, the earl of Strafford, and lord Bolingbroke, were impeached on account of the parts which they had acted in regard to the peace of Utrecht. Bolingbroke fled to the continent and was soon followed by Ormond. Upon which a bill of attainder of high treason was brought in and passed against them both. The earl of Oxford did not leave, but was seized and committed to the tower.

Meanwhile, the malcontents in England were increased by the king's attachment to the whigs ; and notwithstanding the proclamations against riots, several tumults were raised in the cities of London, Westminster, Staffordshire, and other parts of the kingdom.

The king early acquainted the parliament with the designs carried on in favor of the Pretender ; upon which both houses addressed him to put the kingdom in a posture of defense, and vigorously enforce the laws against rioters.

Soon after, a rebellion began in Scotland, which was abetted by another in England. That in Scotland was headed by the earl of Mar, who having assembled about three hundred of his vassals, and assumed the title of lieutenant-general, set up the Pretender's standard, at Bræ-Mar, September 6th. Expecting that the late duke of Ormond would make a descent upon Great

What did parliament next do ? What became of Bolingbroke ? Of Ormond ? What bill was brought against them ? What disturbance was raised ? What information did the king convey to parliament ? Course of the two houses ? Where did a rebellion next break out ? By whom was it headed ? Give an account of it ?

Britain, and calculating upon a general rising in England at the same time, the earl of Mar resolved to push his design.

The insurrection in the *West* of England, was prevented by the timely precautions of the government. But in the *North*, the earl of Derwentwater, Mr. Foster, knight of the shire for Northumberland, and others, raised a body of forces and proclaimed the Pretender in Warkworth, Mospeth, and several other places.

After an ineffectual attempt on Newcastle, they retired northward, and being reinforced by a body of troops under lords Kenmuir, Carnwath and Wintown, the insurgents advanced to Kelso, where they were joined by Mackintosh, who had crossed the Forth with a body of Highlanders.

A council of war being called, the rebels determined to re-enter England by the western border. They continued their march to Penrith, thence by the way of Kendal and Lancaster to Preston, of which they took possession.

General Willis marched against the rebels with six regiments of horse and one battalion of foot, and being reinforced with three regiments of dragoons under General Carpenter, the town was invested on all sides.

The rebels now proposed to capitulate, but the general refusing to treat, they surrendered at discretion. The leaders were secured and sent prisoners to London; some were tried and executed, and the soldiers were imprisoned at Chester and Liverpool, till the pleasure of the government respecting them should be known.

Let us now see what became of the rebels in Scotland. The very day on which the rebels surrendered at Preston, viz., November 13th, was fought the battle of Dumblain, between the duke of Argyle, and the earl of Mar. The duke's army

What is said of an insurrection in the west of England? In the north of England? Of what place did the rebels take possession? Who marched against them? What was the result? What was the result of the rebellion in Scotland?

was far inferior in point of numbers ; but he obtained the advantage, though both sides claimed the victory.

In the mean time, on December 22d, the Pretender arrived at Peterhead, in Scotland, and proceeded to Feterosse, where, being joined by the earls of Mar and Marischal, and some noblemen and gentlemen, he was proclaimed king. His declaration, dated at Commercy, was circulated through all the adjacent counties ; and he received addresses from the episcopal clergy and the laity of that communion in Aberdeenshire.

On the 5th of January, he made his public entry into Dundee ; and on the 7th he arrived at Sconce, where he assumed all the functions of royalty, and fixed his coronation for the twenty-third of the same month. This dream of royalty was of short duration ; for towards the end of January, the duke of Argyle, assisted by lieutenant-general Cadagan and the Dutch troops lately landed, marching to attack the rebels, they abandoned the place, and retired with the Pretender to Dundee, and from thence to Montrose, where finding that they were closely pursued by the king's forces, on February 14th the Pretender, with the earls of Mar and Melfort, the lord Drummond, and some other chiefs, found means to make their escape in a French ship which lay there. Soon after this the rebels dispersed, some submitted, and some were taken prisoners.

The rebellion being thus suppressed, the commons impeached the nobility who had been engaged in the affair, and the earl of Derwentwater and lord Kenmuir suffered death, February 24, 1716 ; but few of the lower ranks were executed in comparison with the number found guilty. About one thousand, who submitted to the king's mercy, petitioned for transportation, and were sent to America.

This year, (1716,) the king gave the royal assent to an act for "enlarging the time of continuance of parliaments." This

When did the Pretender arrive in Scotland ? Give an account of his movements. Who attacked him ? What was the result ? What did the parliament do ? What act respecting parliament was passed in 1716 ?

was the famous *Septennial Act*, whereby this, and future parliaments were continued *seven* years unless sooner dissolved by the crown, instead of *three* years, as by the Triennial Act, passed in the reign of King William.

The Spanish king having taken Sardinia and invaded Sicily, Great Britain, France, Holland and the Emperor, formed a quadruple alliance against his Catholic majesty. Admiral Sir George Byng sailed, with twenty ships of the line, for the Mediterranean, and on August 11th, 1718, he met, on the southern coast of Sicily, the Spanish fleet, consisting of twenty-seven sail. An engagement ensued, in which Sir George took or destroyed the greatest part of the hostile armament.

The Spaniards now formed a scheme in favor of the Pretender, and sent a squadron with six thousand regular troops and twelve thousand stand of arms, under the duke of Ormond, to invade Great Britain. The Spanish fleet, however, was dispersed by a violent storm, which defeated the intended expedition; but two frigates arrived in Scotland, with the earls Marischal and Seaforth, the Marquis Tullibardine, and three hundred Spaniards. These were attacked by general Wightman, and entirely defeated. Soon after, lord Cobham made a descent on Spain, and took Vigo; and his Catholic majesty acceded to the quadruple alliance, which, indeed, was chiefly in favor of the emperor, who was desirous of adding Sicily to his other Italian dominions.

In 1719, a great number of journeymen weavers assembled in a riotous and tumultuous manner, crying out, "down with the calicoes," and pulling and tearing them off the backs of such women as wore them. At the same time petitions came from almost all parts, complaining of the decline of the woollen and silk manufacturers, by reason of these calicoes, and other East

What alliance was now formed? By whom? What did Sir George Byng do? What did the Spaniards now do? What became of the Spanish fleet? How many landed in Scotland? What followed? What caused the calico war? The result? What subject came before parliament in 1719?

India goods. The result was, that an act was passed prohibiting "the use and wear of painted, printed or stained calicoes."

Parliament, in November, 1719, considered proposals of the *South Sea Company* and the *Bank of England*, for reducing all the public funds into one, in order to discharge the national debts, on some valuable considerations to be granted them, and certain advantages to the government. After much debate it was determined in favor of the *South Sea* scheme, and their proposals were accepted.

However honestly the above mentioned scheme might have been designed, it was attended with fatal consequences, to the enriching of a few, and the impoverishing of thousands; for it became a mere bubble and decoy for artful and cunning men, to catch the unwary but covetous adventurers.

This scheme was projected by Sir John Blount, and while the matter was in agitation the stock of the company rose from one hundred and thirty to nearly four hundred; and though the Mississippi Scheme, of Law, had ruined many thousand families in France in the preceding year, the people of England were so infatuated, that the example did not act as a warning. The desperate who ventured first were generally gainers, while the wiser and more cautious, who came in later, were many of them great sufferers; and so the *wrong-heads*, (as was then the saying,) had the better of the *long-heads*.

By a promise of high dividends and other artifices, the South Sea stock was carried to one thousand. Exchange Alley was daily filled with an infatuated crowd of all ranks; but in the course of a few weeks the stock fell to one hundred and fifty; and the ebb of this tide of hope was so violent, as to overwhelm in ruin an immense number of families. Public credit sustained a terrible shock. The principal actors in this nefarious undertaking were punished by parliament, and measures were adopted for giving some redress to the injured parties.

When the new parliament of 1722 met, the king acquainted both houses with a conspiracy for overturning the established government and setting up the Pretender. Among the individuals supposed to be implicated in this, were Atterbury, bishop of Rochester; the earl of Orrery; the lords North and Grey; Cochrane and Smith, from Scotland; Christopher Layer, a young counselor of the Temple; George Kelley, an Irish clergyman; Cotton, Bingley and Fleetwood, Englishmen; and one Naynoe, an Irish priest. These were all taken into custody and committed to prison.

His majesty informed parliament of the nature and extent of the plot, which, he said, but for its discovery, would have involved the whole nation in blood and confusion. The parliament suspended the *habeas corpus* act for one year; but the opposition in the house of commons was so violent that Mr. Robert Walpole, the prime minister, endeavored to rouse their apprehensions by informing them of a design to seize the bank and exchequer, and to proclaim the Pretender on the Royal Exchange. To corroborate this, an original and printed copy of a declaration, signed by the Pretender, was laid before the house. In this remarkable paper, the Chevalier expatiated on the grievances of England, and very gravely proposed, that if King George would relinquish the throne of Great Britain, he would, in return, bestow on him the title of King in his native dominions, and secure to him the succession to the British crown, whenever, in due course, his natural right should take place.

These acts were followed by the trial, conviction and execution of Layer. Against the lords who had been arrested, no evidence was produced; but Atterbury had rendered himself too conspicuous to escape punishment. On mere hearsay evidence, a bill of pains and penalties passed the lower house against

What conspiracy was set on foot in 1722? Who were some of the persons implicated? What did the king say about this? What did the parliament do? What remarkable declaration did the Pretender publish? What soon followed these acts? What is said of the bishop of Atterbury?

him, and was sent up to the lords when the trial commenced. Nothing could be proved against him except the uncertain evidence of the clerks of the post-office; yet the bishop was deprived of all offices, benefices and dignities, and rendered incapable of enjoying any for the future. He was also banished the realm, and subjected to the penalty of death in case he should return.

The remainder of the reign of George the First presents little to excite attention.

The king was suddenly seized with a paralytic disorder, on the road from Holland to Hanover, and was conveyed in a state of insensibility to Osnaburg, where he died on Sunday, the 11th day of June, 1727, in the sixty-eighth year of his age, and the thirteenth of his reign.

George I. was plain in his person and simple in his address. His deportment was grave and composed, though easy and familiar in the hours of relaxation. Before he ascended the throne of Great Britain he was considered an able and experienced general, a just and merciful prince, and a consummate politician. His private character was very reprehensible. He married the princess Sophia Dorothy, daughter of the duke of Zell, from whom he separated before he came to England. She was generally believed to be innocent of any crime, yet the king confined her for thirty-two years in his own castle, where she died in 1726. Her son George doted upon her and was fully persuaded of her innocence, but was not permitted to see her. Compared with conduct like this, even that of Henry VIII. may be regarded as merciful.

(1727)

GEORGE II.

(1760)

GEORGE II. was proclaimed king, June 15th, 1727, in about

What is said of the remainder of this reign? What is said of the king's sickness and death? What of his character? Whom did he marry? What is said of the king's treatment of the queen? When and at what age was George II. proclaimed king?

four days after his father's death, in the forty-fifth year of his age.

His majesty declared his firm purpose to preserve the constitution in church and state; and at the same time he took and subscribed the oath for the security of the Church of Scotland, as required by the act of union; and continued in their places all the great officers of state.

Parliament met on the 27th, according to proclamation, the principal business of which was, the settlement of the civil-list revenue and of a revenue on the queen, in case she survived his majesty.

Their majesties' coronation took place on the 11th of October.

In 1733, the famous *excise scheme* of Sir Robert Walpole came before the parliament. This was a project for bringing tobacco and wines under the laws of excise, and thereby preventing frauds in the revenue. This measure met with a violent opposition, and raised such a ferment throughout the nation, that though the minister had a triumphant majority in the house of commons, he was obliged to waive the advantage and abandon the scheme.

Augustus, king of Poland, elector of Saxony, died in 1733, which event was productive of a war; for the king of France concerted measures to raise his father-in-law, king Stanislaus to that throne, while the Russians resolved to support Augustus, son of the late king. The Russians were joined by the emperor, and entered Poland with an army in August, 1733. Stanislaus, who by intrigue had been elected king, was obliged to leave the kingdom, and Augustus was proclaimed. Meanwhile, the kings of France, Spain and Sardinia made war upon the emperor in Germany and Italy. The Dutch entered into a

What oath did he take? When did parliament meet? Their principal business? When did the coronation take place? What was the *excise scheme*? What is said of it? The consequence of this measure? When did Augustus, king of Poland, die? What event followed? What did France wish to do? Russia? What nations were involved in this war?

new treaty with France, and England employed herself in mediation.

The war in 1734 was carried on by the confederates against the emperor with great success.

In 1735, the war began to slacken both in Germany and Italy, and toward the close of the year, a suspension of hostilities was agreed to; and in 1736, a treaty of peace was signed by all the belligerent powers, in which, among other articles, it was agreed that France should restore all the places taken from the empire; the duchy of Tuscany should be given to the duke of Lorraine after the death of the grand duke, at which time Lorraine was to be put into the hands of his most Catholic Majesty, and remain annexed to the French monarchy; king Stanislaus should be acknowledged king of Poland, and then resign that kingdom, voluntarily, in favor of king Augustus, who was to restore Stanislaus' estate in Poland; Stanislaus was to have immediate possession of the duchies of Lorraine and Barr; and Don Carlos should be acknowledged king of Naples and Sicily.

This year, (1736,) the prince of Wales was married to Augusta, princess of Saxe-Gotha.

The year 1739 was remarkable for the beginning of a war with Spain, occasioned in a great measure by the cruelties and depredations committed by Spanish merchants resident in South America, upon English merchant-vessels. The captains of their armed vessels made a practice of boarding and plundering English ships, on the pretense of searching for contraband goods.

These outrages were loudly and justly complained of. Petitions from different parts of the kingdom were presented, and the relief of parliament was implored against these acts of

What course did England take? What was the progress of the war in 1734? What is said of the campaign of 1735? When was a treaty of peace signed? What were some of the terms of it? What marriage took place in 1736? For what was the year 1739 remarkable? What was the cause of this war? What was the effect of these outrages in England?

violence. It was moved that all the memorials and papers relative to the Spanish depredations should be laid before the commons; and though Sir Robert Walpole proposed some alteration, he was obliged to comply.

This minister was either fond of peace or afraid that a war would injure his administration. Every endeavor, therefore, to prevent a rupture with Spain was industriously employed, and at last a convention was concluded and ratified, by which the king of Spain bound himself to pay, within a limited time, ninety-five thousand pounds, to be employed in discharging the demands of British subjects on the crown of Spain.

The Spaniards not fulfilling their agreement, letters of marque and reprisal were granted against Spain; a large fleet was assembled at Spithead; the land forces were augmented, and an embargo was laid on all merchant vessels. After another fruitless attempt to negotiate, war was at last formally declared, October 19, 1739.

This year, (1739,) a new sect, called Methodists, made their appearance under the lead of George Whitfield and the two brothers Charles and John Wesley. Their enthusiasm found so many votaries among the common people as greatly to alarm the friends of the established religion.

In March, 1740, vice-admiral Vernon made himself master of Porto-Bello, with six ships only. The arrival of this news caused great rejoicings throughout the united kingdoms; the two houses of parliament joined in an address of congratulation on the success of his majesty's arms, and the commons granted all the necessary supplies for carrying on the war.

Charles VI., emperor of Germany, and the last male of the house of Austria, died in 1740, and was succeeded by his eldest

What is said of Sir Robert Walpole? What agreement did Spain enter into? Did the Spaniards keep their promise? The consequence? When was war declared between England and Spain? What is said of the denomination of Christians called *Methodists*? What did Admiral Vernon do? What was the effect of this in England? What did parliament do? When did Charles VI. of Germany die?

daughter, Maria Theresa, married to the grand duke of Tuscany; but, though this princess became queen of Hungary, by virtue of the pragmatic sanction, the restless ambition of her neighbors would not suffer her to enjoy those possessions, which had been guaranteed by all the powers of Europe. Frederick, the king of Prussia, laid claim to Silesia, which he entered at the head of twenty thousand men. At the same time, the elector of Bavaria refused to acknowledge the archduchess as queen of Hungary and Bohemia, alleging that he himself had legitimate pretensions to these dominions. Thus a war was kindled in Germany; and the archduchess made requisition on England, of twelve thousand men, stipulated by treaty to be furnished.

As men could at this time be less conveniently spared than money, the house resolved that three hundred thousand pounds should be granted to his majesty to enable him to assist the archduchess.

The peace policy of Sir Richard Walpole caused so general a discontent that his adherents began to tremble, and that minister well knew that the majority of a single vote would commit him prisoner to the tower; he therefore prudently meditated a retreat, was created earl of Oxford, and resigned all his employments in 1741, after having been a minister for twenty years.

Mr. Sandy succeeded Sir Robert Walpole as chancellor of the exchequer; and the earl of Wilmington was appointed first lord of the treasury. Lord Carteret became secretary of state for the foreign department; and Mr. Pulteney was created member of the privy-council and soon after created earl of Bath.

In the year 1742, the war was carried on with various success.

In 1744, the French projected an invasion of Great Britain,

By whom was he succeeded? What did her neighbors do? What requisition was made upon England by the archduchess? What was done? What is said of the policy of Walpole? Its effect? What did Walpole do? Who succeeded Mr. Walpole? What other appointments were made? What is said of the campaign of 1742? What did the French do in 1744?

and made preparations for that purpose, at Bolougne and Dunkirk, under the inspection of Charles Edward, who was called the *young Pretender*; but Sir John Norris appearing with a fleet superior to that which was to convey the French forces, the expedition was laid aside for the season.

In 1745, Marshal Saxe, natural son of Augustus, king of Poland, with the French king and the dauphin, invested Tournay. The duke of Cumberland with the allied army attempted the relief of the place, but, after a severe contest, was obliged to retreat. Tournay surrendered; Ghent was taken; Ostend, Dendermonde, Oudenarde, Newport and Aeth were successively reduced.

The son of James II., who excited a rebellion in Scotland and England during the reign of George I., was now too old to engage personally in such plots, but his son, Charles Edward, who was called the *young Pretender*, fired with ambition and the hope of ascending the throne of his ancestors, resolved to risk an invasion of Great Britain.

Being furnished with a sum of money and a supply of arms, with a few Scottish and Irish adventurers, he embarked on board of a small frigate, designing to land on the western coast of Scotland. After much difficulty he effected a landing on the coast of Lochaber, July 27, 1745, expecting that the Scots would in great numbers flock to his standard. The king was at this time in Germany, and the duke of Cumberland, who commanded the English forces, was in Flanders, which afforded a favorable opportunity for the enterprise.

The young Pretender was in a few days joined by about twelve hundred men, who made a successful march to Edinburgh, of which they took possession Sept. 16th. He here caused his

How was this attempt frustrated? When and by whom was Tourney invested? The result? What did the young Pretender do? When and where did he land? The consequence? Where were the king and the duke of Cumberland at this time? What is said of the progress and success of the young Pretender?

father to be proclaimed, and fixed his residence in the royal palace of Holyrood-House.

The English government did not at first apprehend any danger from this conspiracy, but it was soon found to be a more serious thing, and a reward of £30,000 was offered to any person who would apprehend the pretender. The pretender in his turn offered the like reward for the head of King George.

The king soon returned from Germany, and made preparations to conquer the Highlanders and Charles Edward. On the 20th of September, the Pretender with his army, which had now increased to about two thousand five hundred Highlanders, attacked and completely routed an army under Sir John Cope, at Preston-Pans. By this victory Charles was supplied with a train of field-artillery, and found himself possessed of all Scotland except the fortresses. Had he confined himself to the kingdom of Scotland he might have maintained a very long and perhaps successful struggle; but he resolved to make an irruption into England.

Accordingly, on the 6th of November, he entered Carlisle, whence he advanced to Penrith, and continued his route through Lancaster and Preston to Manchester, where he was joined by about two hundred English Jacobites. Crossing the Mersey, he advanced to Derby, at which place a council was held, and it was determined to return to Scotland. The retreat was effected with all the artillery and military stores, in spite of two hostile armies stationed to intercept the rebels. These Highland soldiers behaved with wonderful gentleness and humanity towards their captives and to the people of the towns through which they passed, committing no violence or outrage, notwithstanding the extremities to which they must have been reduced.

At length, after various defeats and losses, the whole High-

How did the English government look upon this movement? What rewards were offered? When did the king return from Germany? What did he do? What did the young Pretender do? What did he resolve upon? Give an account of his movements. What was the conduct of his soldiers?

land army was attacked and routed with a terrible slaughter, by the duke of Cumberland, on the 16th day of April, 1746, at the battle of Culloden.* Thus, in one day, all the hopes and ambition of the Pretender sunk together; and instead of thrones and sceptres, he saw himself a miserable outcast. He wandered about for five months, during all which time he was constantly in danger of capture; sometimes chased by armed troops from hill to dale, from rock to cavern, sometimes escaping in female attire, and obliged to depend on the fidelity of the poorest of the people. Yet, though £30,000 were offered for his head, not one of these poor creatures betrayed him; and at length they enabled him to escape to France.

To the eternal disgrace of the conquerors, they spread terror wherever they went; the whole surrounding country was one sad scene of slaughter, desolation and plunder; and, in a few days, there was neither man nor house to be seen within the circuit of fifty miles. All was ruin and silence.

Punishment now awaited those who had escaped death in the battle field. Seventeen rebel officers were executed at Kennington Common, near London, and several lords suffered decapitation on Tower-Hill.

In 1747, the French fitted out two squadrons at Brest, one to make a descent on the British colonies in America, the other to assist their operations in the East Indies. These squadrons, however, were attacked by Admirals Anson and Warren, and nine ships were taken, with a large quantity of bullion.

Soon after, Admiral Hawke defeated a French fleet, taking

In what battle were the Highlanders defeated? When was this battle fought? What was the consequence of it? What is said of this battle? What was the fate of the Pretender? What was the conduct of the conquerors? What was the fate of the prisoners? What did the French do in 1747? The object? What was the fate of these squadrons? What did Admiral Hawke do?

* This was the last battle fought on the island of Great Britain, and it was also the last effort made by the Stuart family to recover the throne of Great Britain.

seven ships of the line, and several frigates; and the British cruisers were everywhere successful.

In 1748, the king informed the parliament that the preliminaries for a general peace had been signed at Aix-la-Chapelle, by the ministers of Great Britain, France and the United Provinces, on the basis of a general restitution of conquests.

By the treaty of Aix-la-Chapelle, it was stipulated that the duchies of Parma, Placentia and Guastalla, should be ceded to Don Philip, heir apparent to the Spanish throne; that the fortifications of Dunkirk to the sea should be demolished; that the king of Prussia should be secured in his possessions of Silesia; and that the queen of Hungary should be guaranteed in her hereditary dominions. No mention was made of the right of the English to sail in the American seas without molestation, though this claim was the original cause of the difference between Great Britain and Spain.

In short, it would be difficult to point out one advantage which England gained by a war that had cost so many millions of money.

In the year 1752, parliament decreed that the new year should begin on the first day of January, and that eleven intermediate nominal days, between the second and fourteenth of September, should this year be omitted, so that the day succeeding the second should be denominated the fourteenth.

In 1755, the French began to erect forts on the back of the British settlements in North America, and they also attempted to seize Nova Scotia.*

What was done in 1748? What were the terms of this treaty? What advantages did England gain by this war? When was the *New Style* introduced into England?

* The French, as discoverers of the Mississippi river, claimed all the country watered by that river and its tributaries. By the same right, they claimed the country watered by the St. Lawrence, and the lakes, subsequently known by the name of Canada. These remote points they wished to connect, by a line of military posts, extending from lake Ontario to the Ohio river, and from the Ohio river to New Orleans. They thus interfered with

The English government receiving only evasive answers from the court of France, on the subject of the encroachments in America, ordered the governors of that country to expel the French by force from their settlements on the Ohio river.

Colonel Washington, who afterwards made himself so famous in the cause of American Independence, was despatched from Virginia with four hundred men, and occupying a post on the banks of the Ohio, was attacked by the French, who compelled him to surrender the post.

France sent re-enforcements of men and supplies of ammunition to Quebec; and the ministry of Great Britain exhorted the governors of the provinces in North America to repel the incursions of the enemy.

Admiral Boscawen being sent with a squadron to protect the province of Nova Scotia, captured two French ships. General Braddock, who had been sent to Virginia, took the command of the forces destined to act against the French, was suddenly attacked by a general fire, both in front and flank, from an invisible enemy, concealed behind the trees and bushes. The general himself was killed, and the few remaining soldiers instantly fled. Sir William Johnson defeated a body of French and Indians, near Oswego, this year.

On November 1st, a terrible earthquake destroyed the greatest part of the city of Lisbon, with an immense number of its inhabitants, while the survivors were exposed to misery and

What did the French do in 1755? What claims did they set up? What rights did the English claim? What orders did the English government issue? What is said of Colonel Washington? What did France next do? What did the ministry of Great Britain do? What did Admiral Boscawen do? What is said of Braddock's defeat? What did Sir William Johnson do? What is said of an earthquake in Lisbon?

the pretended rights of the English, who, in virtue of the discovery of the Cabots, claimed not only the coast of what is now the United States, but also an indefinite extent of country in the interior. The Ohio company had obtained a large grant of land of the king of England, west of Virginia, and near the Ohio river. The misunderstandings of the French and English, in and near the settlements, brought on the war here alluded to.

famine. On this occasion the parliament of Great Britain voted one hundred thousand pounds for the distressed Portuguese.

In 1756, a treaty between his Britannic majesty and the king of Prussia was signed, by which they mutually engaged not to suffer any foreign troops to enter Germany.

This year also, Mr. Pitt, and Mr. Legge, the most popular members of the administration, disapproving of some of the measures which had been adopted, were dismissed from office, and the seals were transferred from Sir Thomas Robinson to Mr. Fox, whose abilities were universally acknowledged.

Addresses pouring in from all parts in favor of these discarded ministers, the king thought proper to re-instate Mr. Pitt in his former situation of secretary of state, and Mr. Legge in the office of chancellor of the exchequer.

On the 27th July, 1758, Louisburg and Cape Breton surrendered to the British under Major-General Amherst; and Fort-du-Quesne, which the French had evacuated, was garrisoned under the name of Pittsburgh, in compliment to the minister.

The conquest of Canada was now prosecuted vigorously. Major-General Wolfe was directed to undertake the siege of Quebec, while General Amherst, after reducing Ticonderoga and Crown Point, was to join Wolfe, under the walls of the capital. The city of Quebec was well fortified, and M. de Montcalm, the French commander, had taken every precaution of defense which the nature of the country afforded.

The British forces under General Wolfe encamped near the falls of Montmorenci.

On the last day of July, Wolfe made disposition for an as-

What treaty was signed in 1756? What were the terms? What ministers were dismissed from office this year? Why? Why were the discarded ministers restored? What is said of Louisburg and Cape Breton, and Fort du Quesne? Give an account of the taking of Quebec. How was the conquest of Canada completed?

sault, under cover of the fire from the ships in the river, but was obliged to retreat.

This mortifying check preyed on the spirits of the gallant Wolfe, who could not brook the most distant prospect of censure or disgrace, and who declared that he would rather die than fail of ultimate success. At length, a new plan of operations was concerted for landing the troops in the night, within a league of Cape Diamond, in hopes of ascending the heights of Abraham, which rise abruptly with a steep ascent from the banks of the river, that they might gain possession of the grounds on the back of the city, where it was but slightly fortified.

This plan was put in execution, and the troops were disembarked during the night, with secrecy and silence; but the precipice still remained to be ascended. With great labor and difficulty, the troops reached the summits of the heights of Abraham, and the general drew them up in the order of battle, as they arrived.

Montcalm advanced his men with great intrepidity to meet them. A furious contest ensued, and General Wolfe, who stood in the front of the line, early received a shot in the wrist, to which he paid little regard; but, advancing at the head of the grenadiers, another ball pierced his breast, and compelled him to quit the scene of action.

As he reclined in the arms of an officer, he was roused by the exclamation, "they run, they run!" "who run?" said the brave Wolfe, with great eagerness; "the French," replied the officer. "Then," said he, "I die contented;" and almost immediately expired in the arms of victory.

The French general, Montcalm, was also mortally wounded in the battle, and died soon after; but the advantage remained wholly on the side of the English. Quebec surrendered, and the capture of Montreal, soon after, by General Amherst, completed the conquest of Canada.

Success now attended the arms of England, in every

quarter of the globe. Fort Louis and the Isle of Goree in Africa submitted to the British, as did Gaudaloupe in the West Indies. Cherbourg was taken by Commodore Howe, and Havre-de-Grace bombarded by Admiral Rodney.

In the Mediterranean, M. de la Clue was defeated by Admiral Boscawen, and another fleet under M. de Conflaus was attacked by Sir Edward Hawke, when a furious battle ensued, and night alone saved the French from total destruction.

In Germany the war was carried on with great vigor, and the glory of the British arms raised to the highest pitch.

Such was the general posture of affairs when George II. died, on the 25th day of October, 1760, in the seventy-seventh year of his age and thirty-fourth of his reign.

He walked out in the morning of the day he died, and being left alone for a few minutes, he was heard to fall; being lifted on a bed, he desired, in a faint voice, that the Princess Amelia might be called, but he expired before she arrived.

George II. was a prince of very moderate abilities, parsimonious, and wholly indifferent as to science or literature. In his disposition he was prone to anger, yet soon appeased; in other respects he was mild and humane. He was personally brave and fond of war as a soldier.

His queen, the accomplished Caroline, acquired a great ascendancy over him, but he was no pattern of conjugal fidelity.

In this reign the constitutional government, as adjusted at the revolution, began to display its excellencies and faults, and to acquire its full force. Parliaments were regularly convened for the dispatch of business, and the prerogatives of the sovereign and the rights of the legislature were duly recognized and balanced.

This state of things begat confidence at home and respect

What successes now attended the English arms in Africa? In the West Indies? In the Mediterranean? In Germany? When did George II. die? In what year of his age and reign? Give an account of his death. What is said of George II.? What is said of his queen? What is said of this reign? What was the consequence of this state of things?

abroad. The public securities rose in value, commerce increased, domestic improvements were made, and the capabilities of the nation in arts, arms and industry, began to develop themselves.

(1760)

GEORGE III.

(1820)

On the death of George II., the eldest son of Frederick, Prince of Wales, succeeded his grandfather; he was the third of his name and the first prince of the house of Brunswick who was born in England.

The young king was greeted with enthusiasm, and in his first speech to parliament he uttered sentiments that sent a thrill of joy throughout the nation. "Born and educated in this country," said his majesty, "I glory in the name of Briton."

Parliament voted £800,000 for the maintenance of his majesty's household and the support of the royal dignity, in lieu of the civil-list revenues, which had been formerly appropriated for that purpose.

The king recommended a wise regulation of rendering the judges independent of the crown, which gave great satisfaction and rendered him very popular.

The war which commenced in the last reign was vigorously and successfully prosecuted. The island of Bellisle surrendered to Commodore Keppel and General Hodgson. In the East Indies the French lost all their possessions of importance; and Pondicherry, their capital settlement, was reduced by Colonel Coote and Admiral Stevens. In the West Indies, Martinico and some other islands were added to the list of British conquests.

Early in this reign, Mr. Pitt, anticipating the hostile designs of Spain, proposed a declaration of war against that kingdom; but meeting with opposition from the earl of Bute,

Who succeeded George II.? When? What is said of him? How was he received? What did parliament vote? What popular measure did the king recommend? What is said of the war commenced in the last reign? What island surrendered? What did the British gain in the East Indies? In the West Indies? What did Mr. Pitt propose? From whom did this measure of Mr. Pitt receive opposition?

who had acquired an ascendancy over the young king, and disdaining to act a subordinate part in the government, he resigned his office as minister and retired with a pension and a peerage for his lady.

The measures of Mr. Pitt were, however, finally adopted, and war was declared against Spain. Havannah, Manilla, and all the Phillipine islands became, in consequence, the reward of English valor.

In 1763 a treaty of peace was signed at Paris. By this treaty Great Britain obtained the province of Canada, East Florida, West Florida, the Grenadas in the West Indies, and some other acquisitions, but restored all the other conquests made during the war.

These terms were considered so degrading to the English, that lord Bute became very unpopular with the people, and resigned his office, and was succeeded by George Grenville.

Mr. Grenville was possessed of integrity and abilities, but wanted a sound discriminating judgment. To raise a revenue from the American colonies, he advocated the stamp act, which, being resisted by the Americans, was in a short time repealed; but the attempt and its failure laid the foundation for the contest which terminated in the independence of the American colonies.

A change in the ministry took place in 1765, the marquis of Buckingham being now made prime minister. This minister was moderate in his principles, and in the discussion of American affairs he took a middle course, between repealing the stamp act and declaring the right of Great Britain to tax the colonies. He was therefore deserted by most of his supporters, and retired from the ministry in 1776.

The duke of Grafton now became prime minister, and Mr.

What did Mr. Pitt do? Why did he resign? Were Mr. Pitt's measures adopted? What was the consequence? When was a treaty of peace signed? Where? What were the terms of it? What was thought of this treaty? The consequence? By whom was lord Bute succeeded? What is said of Mr. Grenville? What act did he advocate? The consequence? What change now took place in the ministry? What is said of the marquis of Buckingham? When did he retire from the ministry? Who succeeded him?

Pitt, now raised to the dignity of earl of Chatham, accepted the offer of privy-seal.

In 1766, Mr. Charles Townsend revived the design of taxing America, though taxation and representation can not constitutionally be separated; and while the earl of Chatham was confined by illness, he brought in a bill for imposing a duty on tea and some other articles imported into the colonies. Against this design the Americans formed a general combination for not receiving any of the commodities thus taxed from the mother country, and the acts were again repealed, except as to the duty on tea.

This concession, being unsatisfactory to the Americans, a general union of the colonies was formed to resist these aggressions. Meanwhile, Mr. Townsend having died, his place of chancellor of the exchequer was filled by lord North, who was made prime minister in 1770.

The earl of Chatham, who had long been treated with disregard, resigned his office of privy-seal, and from this time lived unconnected with the affairs of government, except that he sometimes took part in the exciting debates which agitated this period.

The discontents in America began to break out in a flame that spread to a general conflagration. Laws having been passed for quartering troops in the colonies, and for rendering the governors of the different provinces solely dependent on the crown, the Americans, on their part, determined to resist these measures. They destroyed a large quantity of tea in Boston, and forbid ships laden with that commodity from landing their cargoes. In consequence of these proceedings acts were passed for shutting up the port of Boston.

What is said of Mr. Pitt? What did Charles Townsend do in 1766? What did the Americans do? The consequence? Was this concession satisfactory? What union was formed? When did Mr. Townsend die? Who succeeded him? When was lord North made prime-minister? What is now said of the earl of Chatham? What laws were passed in reference to the American colonies? What did the Americans determine to do? What did they do?

The colonies now entered into a solemn *league and covenant* to suspend all commercial intercourse with Great Britain till those acts were repealed. Meanwhile a general congress of the colonies was held, and a bold and spirited remonstrance, soliciting a redress of grievances, was addressed to the king. All remonstrances and petitions were, however, disregarded, and the Americans determined to have recourse to arms.

The first battle was fought at Lexington, on April 19th, 1775, in which many were killed on both sides; but the loss of the British far exceeded that of the Americans.

On June 17th, of the same year, the battle of Bunker Hill, near Boston, was fought. This was a very severe and bloody battle, and although the British claimed a victory, their loss in killed and wounded amounted to nearly half their number.

The general congress published a declaration stating their reasons for taking up arms; they also appointed George Washington general and commander-in-chief of the American forces. Another petition to the king was voted by congress, in which they earnestly beseeched his majesty to adopt some method of putting a stop to the contest between Great Britain and the colonies; but this petition obtained no answer.

In the meantime the Americans made every preparation, and, animated with the enthusiasm of a people contending for liberty, no longer confined themselves to defensive operations. Ticonderoga and Crown Point were taken by a party of Americans; and it was determined to fit out an expedition against Canada, under Generals Montgomery and Arnold; but in an attempt against Quebec, Montgomery fell, and Arnold, after being dangerously wounded, was compelled to retreat.

What league was entered into? What is said of a general congress? How were the petitions and remonstrances of the congress received? When and where was the first battle of the American revolution fought? What is said of it? When was the battle of Bunker Hill fought? What is said of it? What did the general congress do? What other petition was addressed to the king? The effect? What was the next determination of the Americans? What is said of the expedition against Ticonderoga and Crown Point?

Washington compelled the British to abandon Boston, and the English troops were precipitately embarked and conveyed to Halifax; and Washington entered Boston in triumph.

On the 4th of July, 1776, congress, in a solemn declaration, withdrew all allegiance from the king of Great Britain, and assumed for the colonies the style of "Free and Independent States." They also published articles of confederation and perpetual union between the provinces; while in proportion as the prospect of bringing them to submission was lessened, the arrogance and infatuation of the British ministry, at the head of whom was lord North, seemed to increase.

This year the English made an unsuccessful attempt on Charlestown; but General Howe obtained possession of New York, and General Clinton and Sir Peter Parker took Rhode Island.

In the campaign of 1777, the Americans were defeated by General Howe, in the battle of Brandywine; and the English entered Philadelphia in triumph. On the other hand, General Burgoyne was obliged to lay down his arms to General Gates, at Saratoga.

The success of the Americans now determined France to declare in favor of the new republic. The prospects of the British were now so gloomy, that in 1778, they sent commissioners to America to treat of peace; but they met with no success.

Hostilities commenced with France, by a naval engagement between Admiral Kepple and Count d'Orvilliers; and the victory would have been decisive in favor of the British, had Sir Hugh Pallisor obeyed the signals of the admiral.

Pondicherry, in the East, and the island of St. Lucia in the West Indies, were captured by the English; but Dominica, St.

What did Washington do? What did congress do July 4th, 1776? What is said of the attempt on Charlestown? What did generals Howe and Clinton do? When was the battle of Brandywine fought? The result? The consequence? What is said of the battle of Saratoga? What did France now do? What did the British government do in 1778? The result? How did hostilities commence with France? The result? What places were captured by the English?

Vincent, and Grenada, were taken by the French, who assisted the Americans with a fleet commanded by the Count d'Estaing.

In 1779, his majesty announced to parliament that Spain had joined the alliance against England. With thirty ships of the line, Spain joined the French, and these combined fleets for some time rode triumphantly in the British channel, and menaced the English coast with impunity. Spain took New Orleans on the Mississippi, and invested Gibraltar.

In 1780, Sir George Rodney gained a victory over a Spanish fleet off Cape St. Vincent; he afterwards relieved Gibraltar, and had three indecisive engagements with the French fleet in the West Indies.

This year, also, happened one of the most dreadful riots in London, recorded in history. A bill had been passed in parliament for the relief of Roman Catholics. Ever since the reigns of the Stuarts, the nation had retained so great a dread, lest the Romish faith should again become the ruling religion, that very severe laws had been passed against the Roman Catholics. Now that Protestantism was firmly established, it seemed but just that these vigorous laws should be softened. Parliament, therefore, abolished the worst of these statutes; but some bigoted men, led on by lord George Gordon, took it into their heads that the protestant religion was endangered by this act of clemency. A mob of about 20,000 collected, pulled down or burnt several popish chapels and many private dwellings, and among others, Lord and Lady Mansfield's house, with all the valuable library and furniture were destroyed.

The mob then went to Newgate, broke it open and liberated both felons and debtors. In a few days, however, the riots were quelled, and lord George Gordon, the president of the association, was committed to the tower.

What places were taken by the French? What nation now joined the alliance against England? What is said of the combined French and Spanish fleet? What did Sir George Rodney do in 1780? What riots occurred this year? The cause? Give an account of the affair. For what other event is 1780 memorable?

The year 1780 is also memorable for the armed neutrality entered into by the northern powers, for the purpose of resisting the English in exercising the right of searching neutral vessels, on the principle that, "free bottoms make free goods."

It being discovered that the States-General had concluded a treaty with the American government, England declared war against Holland.

In America, alternate successes and reverses attended the arms of Britain; but even victory was fatal to England, while defeats were doubly injurious, and gave great encouragement to the colonists. Indeed the cause of Britain in this contest with her American colonies daily declined and became more desperate.

In 1781, Earl Cornwallis was at length surrounded by General Washington, assisted by the Marquis de la Fayette, and obliged to surrender the whole of his forces, amounting to seven thousand men, to the combined French and American army at Yorktown, in Virginia. This terminated the hopes of the British government in America, and ended the war.

About this time St. Eustatius was recovered from the English; and the Spaniards made themselves masters of West Florida. The siege of Gibraltar was also carried on with vigor; but the place was very ably defended by the heroic governor, General Elliot.

After the surrender of Cornwallis, a complete revolution in the British ministry took place. The marquis of Rockingham superseded lord North; and the earl of Shelburne and Mr. Fox, were appointed secretaries of state.

The new ministry entered upon measures for effectuating a general treaty of pacification. For this purpose Mr. Grenville

With what nation did England now declare war? Why? What is said of the successes and reverses of the Americans this year? The effect of them upon the British? When did Earl Cornwallis surrender? To whom? Where? The consequence? What other losses attended the British? What is said of the siege of Gibraltar? What change now took place in the ministry? What measures did the new ministry enter upon?

was sent to Paris with full powers to treat with all the belligerent nations, and orders were dispatched to the commanders-in-chief in America, acquainting them with the pacific views of the British cabinet, and with the offer of Independence to the United States.

After the capture of Cornwallis and his army, the English suffered a series of losses in America. The French took Nevis, St. Christopher's and Montserrat; the Bahama islands surrendered to the Spaniards; and Jamaica was threatened by the fleets of Spain and France, on board of which was an army of twenty thousand men.

This formidable army, however, was prevented from uniting by the promptitude and bravery of Admiral Rodney, who gained a most complete victory over the French, before it could form a junction with the Spanish fleet.

This victory, which was achieved on the 12th of April, 1782, put a stop to the intended project against Jamaica.

The valor of the British arms was most remarkably displayed at Gibraltar, where the English, under that brave veteran General Elliot, on the 13th of September, 1782, acquired immortal honor, and converted one of the most formidable attacks that had ever been made in the history of sieges, to the destruction of the assailants, and the frustration of all the hopes of the enemy. The enthusiasm and gallantry of Elliot and his garrison were emulated by lord Howe and the fleet. To the admiration of all Europe, that brave admiral, with thirty-four sail of the line, passed the straits in the face of a superior enemy, and threw succors into the fortress.

This was the last transaction of importance during the continuance of the war in Europe; and thus the military career of Britain, after her repeated misfortunes, terminated with

What is said of Mr. Grenville's mission to Paris? What other losses did the English sustain after the capture of Cornwallis? What is said of Admiral Rodney's victory? The consequence? What is said of General Elliot and the siege of Gibraltar? Of the exploit of lord Howe? What is said of this transaction?

great splendor. All the belligerent powers were now inclined to listen to overtures of pacification.

About this time died the marquis of Rockingham, who was succeeded by the earl of Shelburne; when Mr. Fox resigned his office of secretary of the northern department.

The new ministers, however, continued the negotiations for peace. At length, on the 30th of November, 1782, provisional articles between England and America were signed; and on the 3d of September, 1783, a definite treaty of peace was concluded at Versailles.

By this treaty the sovereignty and independence of the United States were fully acknowledged. So great indeed were the concessions of ministers on this occasion, that they neglected the interests of the loyalists, in America, whose estates had been confiscated, and who were thus thrown on the generosity of the British.

In the treaties of the English with the French, the Dutch, and the Spaniards, the same improvident facility was apparent; and these treaties when submitted to parliament, extorted the severest animadversions. The address of thanks for the peace was carried by a small majority in both houses.

By this war, Great Britain lost the best part of her transatlantic colonies, and, besides many thousands of valuable lives, squandered nearly one hundred and fifty millions of money.

This year, (1783,) Mr. North and Mr. Fox, formerly two bitter political antagonists, formed a coalition to put down the earl of Shelburne; in this they were successful, and a change in the ministry took place. The duke of Portland was placed at the head of the treasury, lord John Cavendish was made chancel-

To what were the belligerent powers now inclined? What changes were now made in the ministry? When and where were articles of peace signed between England and America? What were the terms of the treaty? What other treaties were signed? How were these treaties received by parliament? The consequence of this war to Great Britain? What other changes now took place in the ministry?

lor of the exchequer, and lord North and Mr. Fox were appointed joint secretaries of state.

Mr. Pitt made a motion for a parliamentary reform, and proposed to add one hundred members to the counties, and abolish a proportionate number of obnoxious boroughs; but his plan was defeated by a large majority.

In November, 1783, Mr. Fox introduced a bill for regulating the affairs of the East India Company. This bill proposed to vest the management and direction of the affairs of the company in seven commissioners, irremovable by the crown, except in consequence of an address of either house of parliament. This bill passed the lower house, but was lost after very animated debates in the upper, in which its unconstitutional principles were fully exposed.

This movement rendered the coalition ministry very unpopular, and another change in the ministry took place. The younger Mr. Pitt was appointed first lord of the treasury and chancellor of the exchequer; the marquis of Caermarthon and Mr. Townsend were nominated secretaries of state; and lord Thurlow was appointed lord chancellor. This change gave great satisfaction to the nation.

In the parliament of 1784, Mr. Pitt introduced a bill for the future government of India, which passed both houses.

In 1785, Mr. Pitt again brought forward his bill for a reform in the representation in parliament, and the extension of the elective franchise; but this bill, though just and liberal, was rejected by a majority of 274 to 174.

Among the various measures agitated by the parliament of 1786, was a plan for extinguishing the national debt.

By the report of a select committee appointed to examine

What motion did Mr. Pitt now make? Was this movement successful? What bill did Mr. Fox introduce in 1783? What is said of this bill? What was the effect of this movement? What change in the ministry now took place? How was the change received? What bill did Mr. Pitt introduce in 1784? What did Mr. Pitt do in 1785? The result? What was Mr. Pitt's proposition as to the national debt? What was Mr. Fox's suggestion?

into the annual income and expenditure of the state; the public income for the year 1785 exceeded the expenditure by £900,000. Mr. Pitt proposed to increase this sum to £1,000,000, and appropriate this sum to the liquidation of the national debt. This annual million, Mr. Pitt proposed to be vested in the hands of certain commissioners, to be by them regularly applied in the purchase of stock. Mr. Fox suggested an amendment, that whenever a new loan should be in future made, the commissioners should be empowered to accept of the loan, or such proportion of it as should be equal to the cash then in their hands; and that the interest should be applied to the purposes of the sinking fund. The bill passed and gave great satisfaction; and this measure has been in general pursued under almost every change of circumstances and amidst unexampled difficulties.

The year 1787 is memorable for the impeachment of Warren Hastings, late governor-general of Bengal. The trial lasted seven years, and terminated in his honorable acquittal.

In the parliament of 1798, the first discussion on the subject of the traffic in slaves commenced. Mr. Wilberforce, who had announced his intention of moving for the abolition of that abominable trade, was unavoidably absent; but, at the suggestion of Sir William Dolben, some regulations were enacted for restraining the cruelties practiced on board the slave ships.

During the summer of 1788, it was discovered that the king, who had been for some time indisposed, was afflicted with a mental derangement, which rendered him wholly incapable of public business.

While a violent discussion was going on between Mr. Fox and Mr. Pitt as "to the appointment of a regent," the king, to the great joy of the nation, sent a message to parliament

The result? For what is the year 1787 memorable? What is said of the trial of Hastings? When did the first discussion in parliament as to the slave trade take place? What is said of it? What was the state of the king's health in 1788?

on March 10th, 1789, informing them of his recovery and his ability to attend to the public business of the kingdom.

In the month of July, this year, a most extraordinary revolution took place in France.

The deranged state of the finances of France, and the moderate principles of Louis XVI. inducing him to assemble the notables of his kingdom, an opportunity was taken to subvert the monarchy and to reduce the king to a state of degradation, which prevented him not only from doing wrong, but from rendering any essential service to the state. The bastille, which had long been used for the most despotic purposes, was leveled to the ground and the prisoners liberated; while a national assembly, chosen by the people, wrested from the king the privilege of making war or peace, and abolished all titles of peerage and distinction of orders. The form of government was entirely changed, and a limited hereditary monarchy was established, in which the legislative authority was rendered superior to the executive, the latter being allowed only a suspensive vote.

In 1790, some British adventurers having established a settlement at Nootka Sound, on the north-west coast of America, for the purpose of trading with the natives, the Spaniards, who claimed the exclusive sovereignty of this coast, from Cape Horn to the sixtieth degree of north latitude, seized on the fort, and captured such English vessels as were found trading in those parts. The Spaniards being unwilling to make any atonement for these outrages, both nations prepared for war. The matter was settled by a convention, by which Spain ceded every point in dispute.

Parliament this year passed an act by which Canada was divided into two distinct governments, to each of which a legislative council and assembly were appointed, after the model of the British constitution. The councils were nominated by the sovereign, and the houses of assembly were chosen by the

The consequence? What revolution took place in France in 1789? Give an account of it. Give an account of a difficulty between England and Spain in 1790. What act was passed this year in reference to Canada?

people. The *habeas corpus* act became a fundamental law of the constitution of Canada; and the British parliament were restrained from imposing any other taxes than such as were necessary for the regulation of trade and commerce. This wise and salutary measure has been productive of the best effects, and will probably secure the loyalty of that province to Great Britain, by the strong tie of gratitude and interest.

In the year 1790, (and for some time previous,) Russia, leagued with Austria, had carried on a war against the Turks; and although the Turks gallantly resisted these outrages, the Russians were everywhere successful, and the inhuman Suwarroff, who commanded the Russians, caused about thirty thousand of the inhabitants to be put to death, and thus fixed an indellible stain upon his character.

The British court alarmed at this, a fleet was fitted out to prevent Russia from attaining the navigation of the Black Sea; but the popular voice being decidedly opposed to going to war with Russia, the armament was laid aside, and the Porte concluded a peace with the Czarina on her own terms.

Had the measures adopted by the administration of England been carried out, it is highly probable that the partition of Poland and other encroachments and revolutions which followed, might have been prevented.

The revolution in France excited much interest in England, and led to discussions which occasioned the supporters of the French revolution to be regarded as inimical to the British constitution; while the opponents of that measure were considered as its guardians and defenders. On the anniversary of the day on which the bastille had been demolished, the partisans of liberty in England agreed to celebrate the event in the principal towns and cities in the kingdom. This indiscreet act, in the

The effect of these measures? What is said of a difficulty between Russia and Turkey? What course did the British court pursue in reference to it? The consequence? What was the effect of the revolution in France upon England? What is said of the two parties?

then excited state of party spirit, led to the most lamentable results.

In Birmingham, where great animosity had long subsisted between the high church party and the dissenters, at the head of whom was Dr. Priestly, the meeting was attended with the most lamentable consequences. The persons who were assembled to commemorate the French revolution, were insulted by a furious mob, who shouted "Church and King," and who broke the windows of the hotel in which the company were assembled. Incited and inflamed by their leaders, the mob dispersed over the town and its vicinity, set on fire the meeting-houses and dwellings of the most eminent dissenters, and throwing off all restraint, committed the greatest excesses. The mansion of Dr. Priestly was consumed, with his valuable library and philosophical apparatus; and these infamous and disgraceful proceedings were kept up for four days, when, upon the arrival of some troops from Nottingham, order and tranquillity were restored. Many of the rioters were brought to trial and three of them capitally punished.

In the East Indies, Earl Cornwallis carried on the war successfully against Tippo Saib, who concluded a peace on the terms offered him, and gave his two sons as hostages for the performance of its conditions.

In the beginning of the year 1792, the finances of the nation, under the management of Mr. Pitt, were in a very satisfactory condition. These agreeable prospects were however obscured before the conclusion of the year. The continental powers of Europe, jealous of the principles which had been developed in the French revolution, determined to prepare for a war against France. The combined armies of Austria and Prussia entered France under the duke of Brunswick; and such was the con-

What disturbance took place in England? Give an account of it. The consequence? What was done in the East Indies this year? What course did the continental powers pursue in regard to the French revolution?

dition of affairs that it became evident that Great Britain could not long be kept out of the vortex.

The national convention deposed Louis XVI. and abolished royalty in France. Massacres, unparalleled in the annals of civilized nations, were perpetrated under the sacred name of liberty. Prisons were forced open, and all those murdered who had been confined for imputed sentiments of royalty. In short, the party which had usurped all power in France were guilty of atrocities which, to relate, would turn humanity pale.

After the deposition of Louis, the English ambassador was recalled from Paris; and although Chauvelin, the French ambassador, still remained in London, he was not acknowledged in any official capacity. The Austrian and Prussian armies were compelled to evacuate France, and the French General Dumourier overran the Low Countries in a series of triumphs; and, before the year was closed, nearly all the Austrian Netherlands had submitted to the arms of the republican invaders.

The convention now passed their famous decree, offering fraternity and assistance to all nations engaged in a struggle for liberty; and, on the capture of Antwerp, they declared the navigation of the Scheldt free, which Great Britain was bound by treaty to resist.

These decrees were justly obnoxious to the British ministry, and when the parliament met, the fraternizing decree of France, having excited alarm and indignation, a bill was passed authorizing his majesty to order aliens to quit the kingdom. It was now evident that hostilities between Great Britain and France would not long be deferred.

The execution of Louis XVI. on the 21st of January, 1793, created the intensest excitement in England, of which advan-

What did the national convention of France do? The consequence in England? What is said of the sources of the French? What famous decree was passed by the convention? How was this decree looked upon by the British ministry? The consequence? What is said of the execution of Louis XVI.?

tage was taken to unite all parties in the vigorous prosecution of the war. Chauvelin, the French minister, was ordered to quit the kingdom, and the French republic, regarding his dismissal as a direct act of hostility, declared war against the king of Great Britain, and the prince of Orange, as the stadtholder of the United Provinces.

The necessity for this war was warmly disputed in parliament; and it was affirmed that hostilities with France, on the grounds alleged, were neither for the honor nor the interest of Great Britain.

The English troops under the command of the duke of York having joined those of Austria and Prussia, the combined armies defeated the French Generals Valence, Miranda, Dumourier and Dampierre, and took the cities of Valenciennes, Conde, Mentz and Quesnoy; and a detachment of the British forces under the duke of York made an unsuccessful attempt on Dunkirk. During the campaign of 1793, the allies had preserved Holland and recovered the Netherlands; but the tide of success now began to turn against the confederates, who seemed to be acting without any regularly concerted plan.

In 1794, the king acquainted parliament with the avowed intentions of the enemy to invade England. A great augmentation of the militia, and an additional volunteer corps, were accordingly voted. On the continent the allied armies experienced great reverses during this campaign, but Lord Howe gained a splendid naval victory over the French fleet, which had ventured from Brest harbor for the purpose of protecting a large convoy from America. In the East and West Indies also the English were everywhere successful. This year, also, Poland, overwhelmed by a foreign despotism, was blotted out

The effect? When was war declared by France? What were the views in England as to the necessity of this war? Who commanded the English troops? What is said of the success of the combined English, Austrian and Prussian army? With what did the king acquaint parliament in 1794? The consequence? Give an account of the campaign of 1794? What is said of Poland?

from the number of European kingdoms, and its territories were divided between Prussia, Austria and Russia.

The successes of the French during this campaign had disposed most of the neighboring powers to acknowledge the Republic. Prussia and Spain concluded a treaty with France in 1795; and Holland being fraternized by the French, the Dutch became the open enemies of Great Britain. Warm debates took place in the British parliament on the subject of peace, but the warlike proposals of ministers were still supported by large majorities.

At this period of the contest the nation seemed wearied and dispirited, but another victory at sea, gained by lord Bridgeport, off port l'Orient, tended to encourage the people and to convince them that they were invulnerable on their native element.

In the spring of the year 1795, his royal highness, the Prince of Wales, married the Princess Caroline Amelia, daughter of the duke of Brunswick. This marriage afterwards proved a source of much domestic infelicity and national inquietude. In the following year the princess gave birth to a daughter, and soon after a formal separation of the parents took place.

A spirit of discontent was inspired among the people by illegal practices for the recruiting service, and the scarcity of provisions; and the reforming societies commenced their operations with great boldness. On the day of the meeting of parliament the king was grossly insulted by a furious mob, who clamorously demanded peace and the dismissal of Mr. Pitt. This year also, the Cape of Good Hope and part of Ceylon were wrested from the Dutch.

During this year, (1796,) the directory made vigorous preparations for placing the armies of the republic in a most

What treaties were concluded in 1795? The consequence? What debates took place in parliament? What was the prevailing feeling as to a peace? What victory tended to give encouragement to the nation? What is said of the marriage of the Prince of Wales? What caused great discontent among the people? What societies were formed? What did they demand? What places were this year taken from the Dutch? What did the French Directory do in 1796?

formidable posture; and the French arms were attended with much success.

General Bonaparte commanded the republican troops in Italy, and his advance into that country was an almost uninterrupted career of victory.

In Germany, too, the campaign was successfully commenced on the side of the French, but they were afterwards repelled by the Archduke Charles. This year the British ministry sent Lord Malmesbury as plenipotentiary to Paris to open a negotiation for a peace, in which he was unsuccessful. During this campaign Great Britain was uniformly successful in her naval engagements.

In 1797 the aspect of affairs was very gloomy; the national debt had rapidly increased, and the bank found it expedient to suspend specie payments; added to this, several mutinies broke out among the seamen, which were indicative of the great spirit of discontent which everywhere prevailed. About this time Admiral Sir John Jervis gained a splendid naval victory over a Spanish fleet off Cape St. Vincent, for which gallant achievement he was honored with a peerage. After this victory, Rear-Admiral Nelson made an attack on the town of Santa Cruz, in the island of Teneriffe. This attempt, however, was unsuccessful, and the gallant admiral lost an arm. This year, also, Admiral Duncan, after an obstinate engagement, gained a victory over a Dutch fleet. For this service the brave officer was raised to a peerage.

About this time, Austria signed a treaty of peace with the French republic, and Great Britain was left alone to combat with an enemy strengthened by a large accession of territory

What is said of the success of the French arms? Who commanded the republican troops? What is said of the campaign in Italy? In Germany? What is said of the success of the British at sea during this campaign? What was the condition of things in England in 1797? What victory did Sir John Jervis gain? What is said of Admiral Nelson's attack on Santa Cruz? What victory did Admiral Duncan achieve? What treaty of peace was now signed? The consequence?

and population, after all the other powers had been successively withdrawn or intimidated from the alliance with Great Britain.

In 1798, Ireland, which had long been agitated by foreign and domestic enemies, became the scene of an unnatural rebellion. The *United Irishmen*, who had formed a conspiracy against government, being disappointed in their expectations of receiving assistance from France, prepared for an extensive insurrection, without waiting for a co-operation from the continent. Stimulated by some persons of rank and consequence among them, they were guilty of the most savage atrocities; and few of the principal traitors being themselves betrayed, their wretched adherents, finding concealment no longer possible, broke out into open rebellion. In this unnatural contest many of the insurgents fell, while the survivors wreaked their vengeance on the prisoners that fell into their hands. At last, Marquis Cornwallis was appointed to the vice-royalty of Ireland. By offering pardon to all except the leaders, he prevailed on the greatest part of the insurgents to surrender their arms and take the oath of allegiance. The rest were defeated or overawed by the king's troops.

Meanwhile, Malta capitulated to the French under Bonaparte, and Egypt was speedily conquered by the same army.

This year, also, Admiral Nelson gained an important victory over the French fleet in the bay of Aboukir. For this service he was created Lord Nelson of the Nile, and received a pension of £2,000, besides other honors and rewards which were bestowed upon him by some of the sovereigns of Europe.

Paul, the new emperor of Russia, and the emperor of Germany now joined the confederacy against France; and the republic had again to contend with another powerful alliance.

The union of Ireland with England was concluded this year;

Give an account of the Irish rebellion. How was it quelled? The consequence? What places were conquered by the French about this time? What is said of a victory by Nelson? Who now joined the confederacy against France? When was the union of Ireland with England concluded?

which union was to go into effect January 1st, 1800. This measure reflects lasting honor on the premier.

The arms of Russia speedily gave a new turn to the war in Italy; the English recovered Naples, and Sir Sidney Smith repelled an invasion of Syria, headed by Bonaparte himself.

Bonaparte, in 1799, returned from Egypt to France, seized the reins of government, and dissolving the council, he established a new constitution, and was proclaimed as *First Consul*, with two subordinate consuls as his colleagues.

On his accession, Bonaparte addressed a letter to the king of Great Britain, requesting his majesty to concur with him in restoring peace to the world; but his overtures being rejected, he prepared to carry on the war with vigor. At Marengo he gave the Austrians a signal defeat.

Malta having submitted to England after a blockade of two years, the French entered into a treaty for evacuating Egypt; but the British government refusing to ratify this convention, the French re-commenced hostilities, and Sir Ralph Abercrombie was sent into Egypt with a powerful army. On the 21st of March, 1801, he defeated the French general, Menou, with great loss, but was mortally wounded in the action. General Hutchinson succeeded him and completed the reduction of Egypt.

The union between Great Britain and Ireland had been fixed by the legislature, to commence from the first day of the nineteenth century, and the imperial parliament of both islands met on the 22d day of January, 1801.

The emperor of Russia had now withdrawn from the confederacy against France, and had also stimulated Denmark and Sweden to enter into an armed neutrality against Great Britain.

When all Europe was thus combined against Great Britain,

What speedily gave a turn to affairs? What successes attended the allies? What did Bonaparte do in 1799? What letter did he address to the king of Great Britain? The consequence? What is said of the battle of Marengo? What is said of Malta? Who was sent to Egypt? The result? When did the first union parliament of Ireland and Great Britain meet? What course did Russia now take? The consequence?

and almost every port shut against her, Mr. Pitt and his principal coadjutors resigned their situations, apprehending, as was supposed, that their continuance in office might prove an impediment to the restoration of peace.

Mr. Addington was appointed first lord of the treasury and chancellor of the exchequer; Lord Hawkesbury, secretary of state for the foreign department, and Earl St. Vincent, first lord of the admiralty.

A definite treaty of peace was finally settled between Great Britain and France, at Amiens, on the 27th day of March, 1802.

By this treaty Great Britain restored to France and her allies every possession or colony which she had taken from them during the war, except the Spanish island of Trinidad and the Dutch settlement of Ceylon. Egypt was to be restored to the Porte, and the integrity of the Turkish empire was guaranteed. The French were to evacuate the territories of Naples and of Rome. Malta was to be restored to its own order of knights.

It soon became evident that the treaty of Amiens would not be productive of any long period of tranquillity. The restless ambition of Bonaparte would not suffer the neighboring nations to repose in peace. His assumption of the presidency of the Italian republic, his subjugation of Switzerland, and the aims at dominion, which were every where visible, excited indignation in the breast of every friend of liberty, and withheld the English ministry from surrendering Malta. This produced a rupture between the two countries, and war was proclaimed by Great Britain against France in the month of May, 1803.

An invasion of England seemed now the principal object of Napoleon. Immense preparations were made for the defense of the country. The military force of Great Britain was augmented beyond all former precedent and stationed in different parts of

What did Mr. Pitt do? What new appointments were now made? When was the peace at Amiens signed? What were the terms of the treaty? How was the peace soon broken? When was war again proclaimed by Great Britain against France? What now seemed Napoleon's object?

the kingdom, while the English fleets blockaded the enemies' ports and confined their squadrons within the protection of their own batteries.

This year, 1803, the French government transferred Louisiana to the United States of America, for the sum of three millions of dollars.

In 1804 Mr. Addington resigned his office of chancellor of the exchequer and first lord of the treasury, and was succeeded by Mr. Pitt. At the same time the duke of Portland was appointed president of the council, and Lord Eldon, lord chancellor.

The aggressions of Bonaparte in Germany and Italy provoked another coalition among the European powers, and the army which was intended to invade England, and which had remained inactive for nearly two years, was withdrawn from the shores of the channel; but the fatal battle of Austerlitz, fought in 1805, destroyed the hopes of Russia and Austria, and compelled the latter power to accept such terms of accommodation as Bonaparte saw fit to dictate.

Bonaparte, on whom the people of France had conferred the rank and title of emperor of the French, made an overture to the king of England, in which he expressed a wish for peace, and deprecating the continuance of hostilities as tending to a useless effusion of blood. The reply of the British government was, that the king, though ardently desirous of peace, was convinced that this object could be attained only by arrangements which should provide for the future safety and tranquillity of Europe, and, in consequence, until he had communicated with the continental powers, he felt it impossible to give a more particular answer.

The brilliant success which attended the fleets of Great Brit-

The consequence in England? When was Louisiana transferred to the United States of America? The terms of transfer? What changes in the ministry took place in 1804? What is said of another coalition of European powers? What is said of the battle of Austerlitz? What overture did Napoleon make to the king of England? What was the reply? What is said of the naval success of the British?

ain compensated in some degree the misfortunes of the allies on the continent.

On the 21st of October, 1805, Lord Nelson encountered, near Cape Trafalgar, the combined fleets of France and Spain, amounting to thirty-three sail of the line, and hoisting his last memorable signal, "England expects every man to do his duty," the dreadful contest began; and although Lord Nelson was mortally wounded, he lived long enough to receive the assurance of a decisive victory, when, faintly smiling, he exclaimed, "God be praised," and expired.

Meanwhile, Sir Arthur Wellesley, afterwards duke of Wellington, in India defeated Scindiah, a powerful chieftain, and obliged him to cede a large tract of country to the British; and before the close of the year 1805, a peace was concluded with Holkar, another chief, by which Great Britain obtained another large tract of territory.

On the 23d of January, 1806, Mr. Pitt died, and Lord Grenville was appointed first lord of the treasury; Mr. Fox, secretary of state for foreign affairs; Lord Henry Petty, chancellor of the exchequer, and Mr. Windham, secretary of state for the department of war and the colonies.

Soon after these appointments a negotiation took place with France, which was no less singular in its commencement than fruitless in its result. A Frenchman disclosed to Mr. Fox a plan for the assassination of Bonaparte, but that minister dismissed the wretch with indignation and informed the French government of the meditated crime. This extorted from Bonaparte a well merited compliment to the honor and generosity of Mr. Fox, and a negotiation for peace between the two countries commenced, but no satisfactory issue was reached.

In the house of commons Mr. Fox moved a resolution, which

Give an account of the battle at Trafalgar. Give an account of Sir Arthur Wellesley's (1805) campaign in India. When did Mr. Pitt die? What changes now took place in the ministry? Relate the circumstance which led to a negotiation with France. The issue of the negotiation?

was carried into effect, which proposed to take effectual measures for abolishing the slave-trade; and an address from both houses was carried to the king, beseeching him to obtain by negotiation the concurrence of foreign powers in the abolition of the same nefarious traffic.

This year (1806) also, the Cape of Good Hope again surrendered to the British, but an attempt on Spanish South America proved abortive. In Italy the British arms were triumphant.

Napoleon now carried into effect a scheme for subverting the ancient constitution of the German empire, by establishing what is called the confederation of the Rhine. The members of this confederation were the emperor of the French, the kings of Bavaria and Wirtemberg, and several other German princes. Separating themselves from the Germanic empire, these princes chose Bonaparte for their protector, and established a federal alliance, by which they engaged to furnish a certain contingent of troops in case of a continental war.

On the 13th of September, 1806, died that illustrious statesman and friend to the human race, Charles James Fox. As a senator, Mr. Fox was distinguished for the comprehensiveness of his views, the liberality of his principles, and the persuasive and convincing power of his eloquence; as a minister, he displayed in the management of public affairs the same noble simplicity which characterized his conduct in private life; and as a man, his amiable qualities acquired him the cordial affection of his friends, and the generous admiration of his adversaries.

On the death of Mr. Fox, Lord Howick was appointed secretary of foreign affairs, and Mr. Thomas Grenville became the first lord of the admiralty.

Lord Grenville and his associates having introduced a bill into parliament for the purpose of empowering Roman Catholics to

What important resolution did Mr. Fox introduce in 1806? What is said of the Cape of Good Hope? Spanish South America? Italy? What was Napoleon's next scheme? Who were the members of the confederation? Give an account of it? When did Mr. Fox die? What is said of him? Who succeeded him?

fill high offices in the army and navy, the king expressed his decided objection to the measure, and demanded from his ministers a written pledge that they would never again bring forward any proposal connected with this question. As the ministers could not assent to this, they resigned their situations, and a new ministry was formed. The duke of Portland was appointed first lord of the treasury; Mr. Percival, chancellor of the exchequer; Lord Eldon, lord chancellor; Lord Liverpool, secretary for the home department, and Mr. Canning, secretary for foreign affairs.

A new parliament was assembled in 1807, which fully established the strength of the new ministers; and the first important measure was a plan for increasing the regular army from the militia.

A confederacy of the northern powers against Great Britain being now apprehended, the ministers sent a powerful armament against Denmark, which was compelled to surrender her fleet to the English, after the bombardment of her capital. This measure justly excited the indignation of Europe, and gave to the enemies of Great Britain a plausible pretext for their hostility.

In consequence of the decree of Bonaparte from Berlin, the English ministers issued orders subjecting all ports from which the British flag was excluded to the restrictions consequent on actual blockade, declaring all trade in the produce or manufactures of such countries to be unlawful, and authorizing the capture of all vessels engaged in that trade. To these orders Bonaparte published a rejoinder at Milan, in which he decreed that all ships which should be searched by a British vessel, or should pay any tax to the British government, were denationalized and might be lawfully captured wherever found.

These conflicting regulations respecting the trade of neutrals

Why did Lord Grenville resign his office? How was a new ministry formed? When did the new parliament assemble? What important measure came up? What confederacy against Great Britain was now apprehended? What did the ministry do? The consequence? What orders did the English ministry issue? What was Bonaparte's rejoinder?

occasioned an act in the American congress imposing a strict embargo on all vessels belonging to the American states, and commanding all foreign ships to quit the harbors of the United States.

The designs of Bonaparte against Spain became daily more manifest; and a treaty was concluded for the partition of Portugal.

The French soon obtained possession of the principal fortresses of Spain, and the approach of Murat with a powerful army increased the alarm of the Spanish people. The sovereignty of Spain was transferred to Napoleon, and Joseph Bonaparte, brother of the emperor, was installed king of Spain and the Indies, while Joachim Murat, the brother-in-law of the French emperor, was made king of Naples. The Spanish people, exasperated by the cruelties committed by the French in that country, implored the assistance of England. This request was readily granted, and a force of ten thousand men under the command of Sir Arthur Wellesley was sent. Wellesley soon gained an important victory over the French under Junot at Vimiera.

The disasters which befel the French armies in Spain intimidated Joseph Bonaparte, who, after a residence of ten days in Madrid, decamped, taking with him the regalia and crown jewels and some other valuables from the palaces and treasury. The French emperor, indignant at the discomfiture of his armies in Spain, placed himself at the head of his troops, declaring that he would crown his brother at Madrid and plant his eagles on the fortresses of Portugal. Accordingly a large and overwhelming force entered Spain, and the undisciplined troops of that country were easily defeated by the hosts of French vet-

What was the effect of these conflicting orders upon the American Congress? Give an account of the movements of the French in Spain. To whom was the crown of Spain transferred? Who was made king of Naples? What did Sir Arthur Wellesley do in Spain? What became of Joseph Bonaparte? What did Napoleon now determine upon? The result?

erans, commanded by the most able generals and animated by the presence of Napoleon.

Sir John Moore, hearing that Madrid had surrendered to the French, and that Napoleon was marching against him with a great body of forces, found himself compelled to retreat; having reached Corunna, after a most distressing march, as he was about to embark, he was attacked by the French under Marshal Soult. The British army achieved a victory under the most adverse circumstances, but in the engagement Sir John Moore was killed.

In 1809, Sir Arthur Wellesley was again appointed to the command of the army in the peninsula. He landed in Portugal, drove Soult from Oporto, and being joined by the Spanish general, Cuesta, he hastened to meet Marshal Victor in the south. The allied army was strongly posted at Talavera; an obstinate engagement ensued, in which the French were defeated with the loss of ten thousand men. For this victory Sir Arthur Wellesley was honored with a peerage by the title of Lord Viscount Wellington. After this battle the enemy collected in great force under Marshals Ney, Soult and Mortier, and the British army retreated to Portugal.

In the other districts of Spain the French were triumphant, and at the close of the campaign the principal armies of the patriots had been successfully defeated and dispersed.

War being again declared between Austria and France, the hostile armies were put in motion, and many bloody battles were fought, in which the French for the most part were successful.

A partial change in the administration took place in consequence of the resignations of lord Castlereagh, Mr. Canning and the duke of Portland. Mr. Percival united in his own person the offices of the first lord of the treasury and chancellor

Give an account of the last battle and the death of Sir John Moore. Give an account of Sir Arthur Wellesley's peninsular campaign of 1809. What was the consequence of another declaration of war between France and Austria? What new change in the British ministry took place?

of the exchequer; the marquis Wellesley was appointed secretary for foreign affairs, and Lord Liverpool secretary of war.

In 1810, the cause of independence was still unsuccessful in Spain; but Cadiz, which had become the seat of government, under the protection of the combined British and Spanish fleet, bade defiance to any attack of the enemy. Several places fell into the hands of the French, and Marshal Massena, the French general, fixed his head quarters at Santarem.

This year, also, Napoleon divorced the Empress Josephine, and married the Archduchess Maria Louisa, daughter of the emperor of Austria. This alliance was not less disgraceful to the Emperor Francis than injurious to the popularity of Bonaparte in France. The sovereignty of Holland was resigned by Louis, and the seven united states were annexed to the French empire. The French marshal, Bernadotte, was also elected crown-prince of Sweden.

The English were successful in the West Indies and in the Indian Ocean; they took the French islands of Bourbon and Mauritius.

In 1811 the king's malady returned, and the Prince of Wales was appointed regent. The commercial distress of the country demanded the attention of parliament, and a bill was passed empowering the treasury to issue exchange bills to the amount of six millions sterling. The legislature also passed a bill for preventing the current gold coin from being paid for a greater than its current value, for preventing Bank of England notes from being received at a value inferior to that which they represented, and for staying proceedings in any distress by the tender of such notes.

In the beginning of the year 1811 the affairs of Great Britain

What was the condition of things in Spain in 1810? What is said of Napoleon's divorce and second marriage? To whom was the sovereignty of Holland resigned? What followed? What was done in Sweden? What is said of the success of the English in the West Indies and Indian Ocean? What was the state of the king's health in 1811? What was the consequence? What acts were passed to reclaim the commercial distress of the country? What was the state of affairs in the beginning of the year 1812?

were approaching a crisis. The contest in Spain was doubtful, a dispute existed with America in regard to the orders in council, which produced an open rupture with that country, and France was preparing for the subjugation of Russia, which refused to comply with the treaty of Tilsit. At home the decline of trade produced severe distresses among the people, and a spirit of discontent and insubordination manifested itself in several of the manufacturing districts.

On the 17th of May, Mr. Percival was shot as he was entering the lobby of the house of commons, by a person named Bellingham; and, after some delay, a new administration was formed, in which Lord Liverpool was appointed first lord of the treasury; Lord Sidmouth, (formerly Mr. Addington,) secretary of state for the home department, and Mr. Vansittart chancellor of the exchequer.

One of the first acts of the present government was a revocation of the orders in council as far as regarded American property, but before intelligence of this repeal could be received in America the United States had declared war against Great Britain.

In the peninsular war the French were triumphant in the east of Spain, but in the west they suffered great reverses. Lord Wellington achieved a glorious victory over Marshal Marmont at Salamanca, after which he laid siege to Burgos, but failing to take it he retreated and established his head-quarters at Freynada on the Portugese frontier.

Napoleon's enterprise against Russia, which, in the boldness of its object as well as on the magnificent scale on which it was conducted, surpassed every expedition undertaken by any European power. The force employed in this undertaking has been estimated at four hundred thousand effective men. Napo-

What was the fate of Mr. Percival? How was the new administration composed? What was one of the first acts of the new government? What occurred before the report reached America? Give an account of the peninsular war in this campaign? What is said of Napoleon's enterprise against Russia? What was the size of his army?

leon entered the Russian territory with this formidable army on the 24th of June, 1812. The plan of his adversaries was to resist the progress of the invader without risking a general engagement, to lay waste the country, to harass him as he advanced and cut off his supplies. Bonaparte attacked the main Russian army at Smolensko, the Russians retreated, having first burned the city. The conqueror now hastened towards Moscow, of which, after the sanguinary battle of Borodino, he obtained possession.

On the entrance of the French emperor, the city was found to be on fire; and a violent wind arising soon after, the conflagration became general, and the whole extent of that ancient capital, for many miles, appeared like a sea of flame. Two-thirds of the city were destroyed.

Napoleon was now in the greatest difficulty. His stores were exhausted and his supplies intercepted by the Russian armies; and his soldiers, dispirited and discontented, were enfeebled by the fatigue and distress to which they had been exposed. A retreat was now inevitable. The horrors of this retreat, or rather flight, exceed the powers of description. The route of the army might be traced by the dead bodies of those who perished from cold, hunger, or fatigue; and of all this vast army, not more than fifty thousand men re-crossed the Russian boundary.

One of the first effects of this campaign was to rouse the other powers of Europe from their state of subjugation to the dominion of France. Prussia and Austria united their arms to those of Russia; and Sweden, subsidised by Great Britain, joined the allies. The battle of Leipsic was entirely decisive against the French; and the Dutch, availing themselves of this opportunity of throwing off the yoke of France, recalled from his long exile the prince of Orange, who entered

Give an account of the campaign. What was the effect of this campaign upon the other nations of Europe?

the Hague amidst the acclamations of the people. The influence of Bonaparte in Germany was now nearly annihilated; and the complete deliverance of Europe from the yoke of France, seemed no longer doubtful.

Lord Wellington, in Spain, defeated the French commanded by Joseph Bonaparte, under whom Marshal Jourdan acted as major-general; the French retired under the Pyrenees into France, and Joseph Bonaparte fled in confusion; thus terminating his possession of the Spanish monarchy.

Early in January, 1814, the allied armies in Germany passed the Rhine and entered France at different points. At Brienne, Bonaparte attacked and defeated Marshal Blucher; but at La Rothiere he was obliged in his turn to retire. The allies now advanced to Troyes, which was entered by the prince of Wurtemberg; Chalons on the Maine was evacuated by Macdonald, and Chalons on the Saone was taken by the Austrians. Bonaparte, now on the verge of ruin, made the most surprising and energetic efforts for his recovery. He determined to concentrate his forces, and by bearing vigorously on particular points, to destroy their communication with each other. In pursuance of this plan, he attacked the Prussian army under Blucher, and compelled him to retreat to Chalons on the Maine. He next directed his attention to Prince Swartzenberg and forced him to retire.

During these transactions, negotiations for peace were carried on at Chatillon. The ultimatum of Bonaparte, however, to maintain the integrity of the French empire, were deemed inconsistent with the balance of power in Europe, and on that account the conference terminated.

In the meantime, Wellington gradually progressed in the south of France. His army forced the passage of the Gave de Pau, and the next day crossed the Adour. A division under

Give an account of Lord Wellington's movements in Spain? When did the allied armies enter France? Give an account of transactions until the allied armies took possession of Paris?

Marshal Beresford entered Bordeaux, which declared for the Bourbons. Soult was defeated by Wellington at Tarbes, and afterward at Toulouse.

The allied armies in the north of France continued to advance, and, notwithstanding the extraordinary exertions and abilities displayed by Napoleon, they succeeded in obtaining possession of the city of Paris.

A provisional government was now appointed, which declared that Napoleon Bonaparte had violated the contract which united him with the French people, and had thereby forfeited his right to the throne of France. Under these circumstances, on the 4th of April, 1814, a treaty was concluded at Fontainbleau, by which Bonaparte, on certain conditions, abdicated, for himself and his heirs, the thrones of France and Italy. The isle of Elba was to be possessed by him in full sovereignty, and an annual revenue of two millions of francs, charged on the great book of France; and to his consort, Maria Louisa, were assigned the duchies of Parma, Placentia and Grastalla. On the 20th of the same month Napoleon set out on his journey to the isle of Elba, accompanied by four commissioners from the allied powers.

Louis XVIII. embarked at Dover, and was joyfully welcomed at Calais. Peace was now concluded between France and the allied powers, Austria, Russia, Great Britain and Prussia.

By this treaty the territorial dominions of France were restricted to the limits which bounded them on the 1st of January, 1792. England retained Malta, the Cape of Good Hope and the small island of Heligoland, besides some islands in the East and West Indies.

In the beginning of June, the emperor of Russia and the king of Prussia visited England, attended by Marshal Blucher

What was next done? What declaration did the provisional government make? What treaty was concluded at Fontainbleau? What were the terms of it? When did Napoleon set out for Elba? How was he accompanied? What peace was now concluded? What illustrious persons now visited England?

and other distinguished officers. The visit of these illustrious strangers was celebrated in London and other parts of the kingdom with great rejoicing and festivity.

The duke of Wellington's return was hailed with no less joy than the arrival of the allied sovereigns. The thanks of the house were addressed to him, and three hundred thousand pounds was voted to the purchase of a palace and domain suitable to his dignity.

Whilst peace was thus happily restored to Europe, the war between Great Britain and the United States of America raged with great animosity, devastation and bloodshed.

This war, (as has already been intimated,) was occasioned partly by the impressment of seamen from American vessels, by British naval officers, and partly by the capture and condemnation of American vessels by the British, under their orders in council, before alluded to.

War was declared by the United States on the 18th of June, 1812. It was presently followed by an unsuccessful invasion of Canada, and a very successful prosecution of hostilities on the ocean.

An immense number of British merchant vessels were captured by American privateers, and what was very mortifying to the British, the first pitched battle between single frigates resulted in the capture of the British ship. This was the *Guerriere*, Captain Dacres, which surrendered after a short but terrible fight, to the American frigate *Constitution*, Captain Hull, on the 19th of August, 1812.

During the same year, the *Wasp* captured the *Frolic*, the *Constitution* captured and destroyed the frigate *Java*, and the United States captured the *Macedonian*. Great Britain began

What is said of this visit? What is said of the duke of Wellington's arrival? What is said of the war in America? What were the causes of this war? When was war declared? How was it commenced? What is said of the American privateers? What was the first regular naval engagement? What other naval engagements took place in 1812?

seriously to apprehend that the prestige of her naval superiority would be forever annihilated.

The campaign of 1813 was signalized by an active but indecisive warfare on the Canada frontier, a distressing Indian outbreak in the south, and the usual success of the Americans in their naval operations. Of these last, the most brilliant was the battle of Lake Erie, fought on the 10th of September, in which the whole British fleet was captured by the Americans, under Commodore Perry. This was followed by some brilliant successes of General Harrison, by which he recovered from the British what had been lost by General Hull in his unfortunate campaign of 1812.

On the ocean, the battle between the *Enterprise* and *Boxer* terminated in favor of the American ship, and that between the *Chesapeake* and *Shannon* in favor of the British.

In the campaign of 1814, the operations by land as well as by water were altogether in favor of the Americans, although from the circumstance of England having just disembarrassed herself from her formidable antagonist, Napoleon, a very different result might have been anticipated.

There was some very hard fighting on the Canada frontier, and Lundy's Lane and Chippewa bore witness to the ability as well as to the courage of the Americans. The British invaded Vermont with a formidable army and fleet, but the total defeat and destruction of the naval force on Lake Champlain, by the American fleet under Commodore Macdonough, was instantly followed by the hasty retreat of the land forces and the removal of all apprehensions from that quarter.

General Ross made a sudden descent on the city of Washington, and disgraced himself by burning the public buildings, library, and national archives; but in a subsequent attempt on

Give an account of the campaign of 1813. What is said of the campaign of 1814? What is said of Chippewa and Lundy's Lane? What is said of the invasion of Vermont by the British? Give an account of General Ross' movements?

Baltimore, he was killed, and the British naval and military forces were signally defeated and repulsed.

The most extraordinary battle of the late war, however, was that of New Orleans, in which General Jackson inflicted the most terrible defeat which was ever experienced by the British army, and this, too, with the loss of only thirteen men in killed and wounded on the part of the Americans.

At length, however, on the 24th of December, 1814, a treaty of pacific action was effected between the two countries at Ghent, and for the first time in a quarter of a century a general peace prevailed in both hemispheres.

But this peace was of short duration. The return of Bonaparte from Elba created a strong feeling throughout Europe. This extraordinary man landed in the south of France, with a few followers, on the 1st of March, 1815, and was everywhere received with extravagant joy.

On the 20th of the same month Louis XVIII. fled from Paris, and on the evening of the same day Napoleon entered that capital and resumed the government.

The allies rejected the propositions of Bonaparte for peace, and began immediately to put their armies in motion, with the avowed design of once more displacing him and restoring the Bourbons. The English and Prussians were first assembled in the Netherlands under Wellington and Blucher, and Napoleon at the head of 150,000 men advanced against them on the 12th of June. At Charleroi he encountered the Prussians who retreated upon Wavre, where they were followed by the French right wing under Grouchy. On the next day the left division of the French army had a severe conflict with the English and Dutch at Quatre Bras, after which the British division retreated to Waterloo, where, meeting with re-inforcements, was fought on June 18th, one of the most terrible battles recorded in history.

Give an account of the battle of New Orleans. When was a treaty of peace effected? Where? What is said of this period of time? What soon created a great consternation throughout Europe? Give an account of Bonaparte's movements until he entered Paris. What did the allies now do?

The French made the attack about noon, and persevered with great fury during the whole day. About four in the afternoon a Prussian army under Bulow arrived on the field, and assisted in checking the impetuosity of the French; at seven o'clock the remainder of the Prussians under Blucher arrived from Wavre, and assailing the rear of the French, a general confusion took place in their army, and at nine o'clock they fled in disorder, leaving 30,000 killed and wounded, and all their cannon and materials of war in the hands of the victors.

The Prussians continued their pursuit throughout the night. On the side of the allies the total of killed and wounded was fully equal to that of the French, and among them were many officers of distinction.

The English and Prussian armies now advanced into France and invested Paris, and in a few days the French Provisional government entered into a convention. Louis XVIII. at the same time entered his capital; and although there was still a considerable French force in the field and in garrisons, it was soon reduced to submission by the armies of Austria and Russia, which had also penetrated France.

Meanwhile, Bonaparte, who, after abdicating at Paris in favor of his son, had proceeded to Rochefort for the purpose of embarking for America, but finding it impracticable to avoid the English cruisers, he went voluntarily on board a British man-of-war, which immediately sailed for Torbay. The British government decided that he should be conveyed to the island of St. Helena; there to reside as a state prisoner, under the inspection of commissioners appointed by each of the confederate powers.

By the arrangements of the congress, to which Lord Castlereagh was deputed on the part of the English government, the seven Ionian Islands were placed under the protection of Great

Give a history of the campaign, to the defeat of Bonaparte at Waterloo? What followed this defeat? What did Napoleon now do? What did the British government decide in reference to him? What disposition was made of the Ionian Isles?

Britain, to whose sovereign was also confirmed the title of king of Hanover.

While these events were passing in Europe, the British government achieved some valuable conquests in the East Indies.

An important revolution took place at this time in Ceylon, by which the king was dethroned, and his family excluded from the throne, and the dominion of the Candian empire was vested in the king of Great Britain.

In 1816 Great Britain undertook a naval expedition against Algiers, which had refused to abolish Christian slavery. After a tremendous conflict the Dey was obliged to accede to the terms of the English admiral.

In 1817 the Princess Charlotte, who was married to the prince of Saxe Coburg, died, and in 1818 Queen Charlotte, consort of George III., died on the 17th of November. In consequence of her death the duke of York was appointed guardian of the king's person, with a salary of ten thousand pounds a year.

At the close of the year 1819 the king's health began to fail, and on the 29th of January, 1820, he died, in the eighty-second year of his age and the sixtieth of his reign.

George III. was a man of great personal courage and firmness of character. He had a sound but not an enlarged understanding. He had little taste for literature and the fine arts, but hunting, agriculture, mechanical contrivances, and domestic intercourse, seemed to have occupied most of his leisure. He was punctually assiduous in the exercise of his royal functions, and exemplary in the fulfillment of all the social duties.

George III. had a numerous family. His male children were George Frederick Augustus, who reigned as George IV.; Frederick, duke of York; William Henry, duke of Clarence, afterwards King William IV.; Edward, duke of Kent, the father of

What is said of British conquests in the West Indies? What is said of Ceylon? Of the Candian empire? What expedition was undertaken in 1816? The result? When did the Princess Charlotte die? When did Queen Charlotte die? What followed? When did the king die? In what year of his age and reign? What was his character? What is said of his family?

her present majesty, Victoria; Ernest, duke of Cumberland; Augustus Frederick, duke of Sussex; and Adolphus Frederick, duke of Cambridge. The daughters of George III. were the Princesses Charlotte Augusta Matilda, Sophia Augusta, Elizabeth, and Mary.

During the reign of George III. great progress was made by science and the arts. Byron, who was commissioned in 1764 to explore the Atlantic and Pacific oceans and circumnavigate the globe, corrected by his observations the errors of former charts, and discovered several islands in the South Pacific.

A few years after, Captain Wallis sailed on a similar expedition, and in June, 1767, discovered the island of Otaheite (or King George's Island) in the South Pacific. Cartaret also traversed the Pacific and circumnavigated the globe. Each of these navigators contributed an accession of geographical knowledge.

To Captain James Cook, however, more than to any other individual since the time of Columbus, we are indebted for extending the boundaries of geographical science. In his first voyage to the Pacific, in 1770, he discovered the Society Islands, determined the insularity of New Zealand, and explored the eastern coast of New Holland.

In his second voyage, in 1773, he discovered New Caledonia, the island of Georgia, and an unknown coast, which he named Sandwich Land.

In 1776, another voyage of discovery being proposed by the government, the *Resolution* and *Discovery* were fitted out for that purpose, and Captains Cook and Clarke were appointed to this expedition. This last voyage was particularly distinguished by the extent and importance of its discoveries. Besides several small islands in the Pacific, Captain Cook discovered the group called the Sandwich Islands, explored the western coast

What is said of progress in science and arts during this reign? Of Byron's voyage and discoveries? Of Wallis? Of Cartaret? Of Captain Cook's voyages?

of America from latitude forty-three to seventy degrees north, and ascertained the proximity of the two great continents of Asia and America. In September, 1780, the Resolution and Discovery returned to England from this voyage round the world, but, to the grief of every one who respected worth and talents, without Captain Cook. He had been killed by a native of Owhyhee, one of the Sandwich Islands which he had discovered.

(1817)

GEORGE IV.

(1830)

George III. was succeeded by his son George Frederick Augustus, commonly known as George IV., in 1820. He had, previous to his father's death, governed England as prince regent for ten years.

The long reign of his father left the son in advanced life when he came to the throne.

George IV. was crowned July 19th, 1821, at the age of fifty-eight years.

The unhappy differences that existed between the present sovereign and royal consort have been noticed in the preceding reign. Queen Caroline was a very unhappy woman, her royal husband was a very dissipated man, and having no affection for his wife, he was very intimate with two or three women of bad character, who exercised a great influence over him.

In 1814, her royal highness embarked at Worthing, and after paying a visit to her brother, at the court of Brunswick, she proceeded to Italy, everywhere receiving the honors due to her rank. On the approach of winter she fixed her residence at Naples. She afterwards traveled through the different parts of the continent, visited Jerusalem and other towns of Palestine, as well as different places in the Mediterranean.

Of his death? By whom was George III. succeeded? What is said of him? When was George IV. crowned? At what age? Why was Queen Caroline a very unhappy woman? Give an account of the queen's travels in 1814?

On the accession of the present king, in consequence of the manner in which she had conducted herself after leaving England, her majesty's name was erased from the liturgy, and she was informed that, if she returned to England, judicial proceedings would be instituted against her, but if she would consent to live abroad, the sum of fifty thousand pounds a year would be allowed her. No sooner, however, was this proposition made to her than the queen immediately proceeded to Calais, and embarking on board a packet boat which lay in the harbor, she sailed for England, and on the 5th of June landed at Dover, where she was greeted by acclamations of the populace.

On the day of her majesty's arrival in London, the king sent a message to parliament requesting that an inquiry into the queen's conduct might be instituted, and that certain papers containing the evidence which had been collected at Milan might be examined. On this evidence it was intended to found a bill of pains and penalties against the queen. After much discussion a secret committee of the house of lords was appointed to examine the documents, and it was finally determined that her majesty should be tried by the peers of the realm.

During the queen's trial, which continued for forty-five days, the public mind was violently agitated and the spirit of party extreme. It was urged against the queen that she had raised a favorite Italian in her employment from a menial station to one of rank and honor, that she had permitted him to take familiarities with her, that having instituted a new order of knighthood called "the order of St. Caroline," she had decorated him with its insignia, and that she had otherwise demeaned herself in a manner unbecoming the character of a British princess.

What took place on the accession of George IV.? Of what was the queen informed? What did the queen do upon being informed of this? How was she greeted? What was the purport of a message sent by the king to the parliament? What was done? Give an account of the queen's trial. What was charged against her?

A very small majority of the lords having declared her guilty, the bill was, on the 10th of November, formally withdrawn.

The English people were very indignant at these proceedings, and their feelings amounted almost to detestation, and perhaps there never, in modern times, has been a monarch more generally unpopular than George IV. during the two years which immediately succeeded his accession to the throne.

The coronation of the king took place, and no room, even as a spectator, was reserved for the queen. She went to Westminster Abbey, and the doors were closed against her.

She seems to have sunk under this last effort and disappointment, being taken ill a few days after. Her mind was calm and peaceful, though her bodily sufferings were acute. She died protesting her innocence to the last, and forgiving her persecutors.

During the nineteen years in which George IV. held sway as regent and king, the English people, though opposed to the character and principles of his government, made very decided progress in obtaining useful measures. The state of peace to which the nation had returned, after a long war, hastened the course of these improvements so much that many changes which were slow in their beginning made a most rapid advance in the regency and reign of George IV.

One of the important measures of the reign of George IV. was the passage of the *Emancipation Act*, as it is called, by which those civil and ecclesiastical restraints to which the Roman Catholics of Great Britain and particularly of Ireland were subjected, were abolished.

The Roman Catholics in Ireland, (it will be recollected,) took part with James II. in the revolution of 1688, while the Protestants of that country favored the Prince of Orange, and were

How did the trial terminate? How did the English people regard these proceedings? What is said of the king's unpopularity? What transpired at the king's coronation? What is said of the death of the queen? What is said of the regency and reign of George IV.? What was the *Emancipation Act*? Give a brief account of the causes which led to its passage?

designated by the name of *Orangemen*. The battle of Boyne, in 1690, gave the ascendancy to the *Orange* party, and the Roman Catholics were exposed to the most cruel treatment, besides being subjected to heavy civil and religious disabilities. The operation of the Corporation and Test Acts, which remained in force till 1828, had closed the door against them and prevented their elevation to office.

Various attempts were made by different statesmen and other distinguished persons to remove these disabilities of the Roman Catholic inhabitants of Ireland.

During the reign of George III., various concessions had been made at different times, but none satisfactory to the whole Roman Catholic party. It was evident, therefore, that so long as the two kingdoms had separate legislatures it was in vain to hope for a quiet state of affairs.

The political union of England and Ireland was therefore resolved upon, and accordingly was effected, as has been said, in the year 1800. In this union nothing was done for the relief of the Roman Catholics; but Mr. Pitt, the author of the union, had led them to believe that he intended some measure of relief. But the opposition of George III. to the repeal of the Test Act, on account of his coronation oath, prevented Mr. Pitt from fulfilling his pledge, and he therefore resigned his office.

The emancipation of the Roman Catholics was favored by Mr. Canning, prime-minister under George IV., but was not effected until the duke of Wellington came into power in the year 1828, when the *Corporation* and *Test Acts* were both abolished.

In 1829, the *Relief Bill* was passed, under the influence of the duke of Wellington and Sir Robert Peel. By this bill,

What efforts had previously been made to remove the disabilities of the Roman Catholics? What is said of the political union of Ireland and England and its consequences? What minister under George IV. favored the emancipation? Under what minister was it effected? In what year?

Roman Catholics are eligible to all offices of state, except those of lord chancellor of England, the lord lieutenant of Ireland, and that of high-commissioner of the Church of Scotland.

Among the distinguished men who have labored most strenuously in behalf of Catholic emancipation and the repeal of the act of union of England and Ireland, no one has been more prominent than Daniel O'Connell. He was a distinguished lawyer, and for nearly half a century was the zealous and active partisan of his oppressed countrymen, and acted a leading part in all the efforts they made for admission to the rights of British subjects. He was elected a member of parliament for Clare, and afterwards for Kerry. He died on the continent of Europe, whither he had gone for the benefit of his health, in June, 1847.

Frederick, duke of York, the second son of George III., died in 1827, in the sixty-fourth year of his age. In the year 1795 he was appointed commander-in-chief of the British land forces, and continued in office until 1809, when he resigned his office. In the year 1811 he was reinstated, when he devoted himself with much success to the moral, social and military improvement of the army. In 1818 he was appointed keeper of the person of his father, George III., then laboring under mental alienation.

George IV. died in the year 1830, leaving no children.

(1830)

WILLIAM IV.

(1837)

WILLIAM HENRY, duke of Clarence, succeeded to the throne in 1830, under the title of William IV.

He was the third son of George III., and was born in August, 1765. He entered the navy as a midshipman, and passed through all the grades of the service. He was appointed lord high admiral by Mr. Canning, which office he resigned soon

Who was one of the strongest advocates of emancipation? What is said of Daniel O'Connell? When did Frederick, duke of York, die? What is said of him? When did George IV. die? Who succeeded George IV.? When? What is said of him?

after the duke of Wellington was made prime minister. He married the princess Adelaide of Saxe-Meningen in 1818, but had no children by that marriage.

Earlier in life he became attached to Mrs. Jordan, an actress, by whom he had several children, who were known by the name of Fitz-Clarence.

An important act in reference to *tithes* to the established church, was passed during the reign of William IV. Previous to the passage of this act, the church was entitled to a *tithe* or tenth part of the increase yearly arising from the profits of lands, the stock upon lands, &c.; and the *tenth* was allotted to the clergy for their maintenance. Thus, if a farm produced ten bushels of wheat, ten sheep, ten swine, &c., one of the ten, was, by the law of the land, given to the parish priest. By the act for the commutation of *tithes*, they were to be paid in money instead of produce, in proportion to the average value of corn during the seven preceding years.

The *marriage act*, so called, passed in this reign, removed one of the principal grievances of the Dissenters.

Previous to the passage of this act, no person was allowed to be married, except under the forms and ceremonies of the Church of England. By this act, every person was allowed to marry with whatever religious ceremonies he might prefer, or without any religious ceremony, or any other form, except that of making a declaration of the act before a public officer.

Another very important measure of the reign of William IV. was the passage of an act for a *parliamentary reform*.

For several centuries previous to this reform the distribution of representatives among the several towns was fixed; and many places, formerly populous and entitled to be represented, had dwindled into insignificance, but yet retained their original

Give an account of the act in reference to *tithes* to the church. What was the *marriage act*, so called? What was the law previous to the passage of this act? What was the effect of the act? What other important measure was passed during this reign? Give an account of the *rotten borough* system.

privilege of sending members to parliament. These were called *rotten boroughs*. Other cities had, in the meantime, risen to importance, with a large and dense population, without enjoying the same privileges.*

The *reform of parliament* was effected by taking the undue privilege from the "*rotten boroughs*," and bestowing it upon the towns or cities, in some proportion to their present population.

An act for the abolition of slavery in the British West India colonies was also passed during this reign.

By this act, all children under six years of age, or born after August 1st, 1834, were declared *free*; and all slaves above the age of six years were divided into two classes; one of which was to become free in August, 1838, and the other in August of 1840; so that, after the latter period, no one was to remain in a state of slavery. The sum of twenty millions of pounds sterling was granted to the owners of the slaves, to indemnify them for the loss.

The duke of Kent, fourth son of George III., was born in 1767, educated in England, Gottingen and Geneva; and in 1790 went in a military capacity to Gibraltar. He visited America twice; the last time in 1800. In 1802 he was made governor of Gibraltar. In 1818 he married the daughter of the duke of Saxe-Coburg, the widow of the prince of Leiningen, Alexandrina Victoria. The daughter of this union was born in May, 1819. The duke of Kent died January 3d, 1820.

On the evening of September 16th, 1834, both houses of par-

What was the effect of the *reform* bill? What act was passed in reference to slavery in the West Indies? What were the provisions of this act? Who was the duke of Kent? What is said of him?

* As an instance of what has been called a "*rotten borough*," it may be stated, that *Old Sarum*, which had become so reduced in population as to contain only an old frame house and the ruins of a castle, sent, before the reform of parliament, two members; while Birmingham, Leeds and Manchester, three of the large cities of England, containing each more than one hundred thousand inhabitants, had no representation in parliament.

liament were destroyed by fire. The libraries and papers of State, however, were preserved. New and splendid buildings for the accommodation of parliament were soon after erected.

The king died on the 20th of June, 1837, leaving no legitimate issue, and was succeeded by the present queen, Victoria.

William IV. was a sovereign whose many good qualities, public and private, made him highly respected and beloved, and caused peace and prosperity to distinguish his reign. All the manufactures of the country were in a more flourishing state than they had been under any of his predecessors; new railroads were in progress of construction to unite the remotest parts of the kingdom; and in London especially, improvements were commenced, which have ever since been carried on to an amazing extent, so that it can be truly said of the great metropolis, "that it is a city of palaces."

(1837)

VICTORIA.

William IV. was succeeded by his niece, Victoria, the only daughter of Edward, duke of Kent.

Her accession was hailed with enthusiasm, and at a civic banquet, held November 9th, the popular feeling was displayed on a scale of magnificence such as had been unknown in England for many years.

The queen found the political parties of the country more moderate than they had been under her uncle; but the social condition of the masses in her vast empire was truly alarming. A rebellion occurred in Lower Canada, and though it was easily suppressed, a spirit of dissatisfaction survived which soon manifested itself in fresh revolts. Similar disturbances took place among the working classes in England. From the circumstance

Give an account of the burning of the houses of parliament. When did William IV. die? What is said of him? What is said of his reign? Who succeeded William IV.? How was Victoria descended? How was her accession received? What was the state of things in England at the time? What is said of a rebellion in Lower Canada? What spirit was manifested by the working classes in England?

of their demanding a charter which should guarantee to them specific and fundamental rights, they received the name of *Chartists*.

The very important act of this reign, and one in which more persons were immediately interested than in any other measure brought before the parliament, was "the repeal of the *Corn Laws*."

The corn laws were the restrictions laid on the importation of *corn** or bread stuffs. The object of these restrictions was the encouragement of agriculture; and they operated very much in favor of the landed proprietors, but very severely on the poorer classes, the tendency being to raise the price of bread stuffs.

The opposition to the repeal of the corn laws was very great in the house of lords, consisting, as that body does, of the greatest landholders, whose interest it is to prevent the importation of foreign grain, and thereby keep up the price of that which they raise.

By these two parties, the *Chartists* and the *repeal* party, the country was more or less agitated for many years.

In February, 1840, the queen married Prince Albert, of Saxe-Coburg-Gotha. The year following was signalized by a change of ministry, and the formation of a cabinet, at the head of which was Sir Robert Peel.

Great Britain was a party to the settlement of the Eastern question, in 1840. At the same time she restored Shah Soojah, the lawful chief of Cabul in Affghanistan, to the government of which he had been deprived by a revolt. The war contin-

What were they called? Why? What was the most important act of this reign? What is said of the *corn laws*? Who opposed their repeal? Why? When and whom did the queen marry? What was done in 1840? When did the war with China take place?

* The term *corn*, in England, is understood to embrace all kinds of bread stuffs, such as wheat, barley, oats, maize, &c. What in this country is usually called *corn*, is properly *maize*; an article till recently but little known, and still but little used in England.

ued, however, until 1842, and was attended on both sides with circumstances of revolting barbarity.

Meantime, a more important war was waged against the Chinese. In 1839, the emperor of China, seeing large quantities of opium smuggled into that country, resolved to put a stop to the illicit trade, and compelled Captain Elliot, the English resident at Canton, to consent to the destruction of several cargoes of opium.

War was declared by the English government against China; Canton and Ning-po, two of the most important cities in China, were taken by the British armies, who advanced rapidly towards Peking.

The Imperialists were finally forced to make a treaty, August 29, 1842, by which the island of Hong-Kong was ceded to them forever; the Chinese were bound to pay the expenses of the war, and a compensation for the destroyed opium, and five of the principal Chinese ports were thrown open to foreign commerce.

In 1842, the dispute with the United States concerning the Maine boundary was settled by treaty.

The year following, the Free Church of Scotland was formed by a large number of ecclesiastics, who denied the right of civil government to interfere with the concerns of religion.

The next event of importance was the arrest of O'Connell, whose exertions in Ireland in favor of repeal had long agitated the British empire. He was found guilty (May, 1844,) of sedition and conspiracy; but the house of lords reversed the decision. From this time till his death, he was rather a silent collector of repeal tax than a popular leader. The death of the great advocate of repeal did not end the agitation in Ireland. Famine and pestilence spreading through the un-

What was the cause of it? What is said of it? The consequence? What dispute was settled in 1842? What occurred the year following? What was the next event of importance? What is said of O'Connell?

fortunate island, drove the people to desperation, and young, bold and eloquent leaders were not wanting at the crisis. Meetings were held in Dublin, and in all the Irish towns, at which the most violent and determined language was used by orators. John Mitchell, the editor of the "United Irishman," made enthusiastic appeals to his countrymen to organize, and to prepare themselves for the last resort of man struggling for their rights—open force. Arms were manufactured in great quantities. The training went on daily. O'Brien, Meagher, Doheny, O'Gorman, and other orators traversed the country to arouse the people to action. The government resolutely prepared to meet the crisis. Mitchell, the editor, was arrested, tried for sedition, and condemned to transportation for fourteen years. There was no attempt made to prevent the execution of the sentence. The arming and training of the people, however, continued.

In England great distress prevailed, causing discontent among the masses of the people. The radical party, called *Chartists*, greatly increased in strength. Universal suffrage, vote by ballot, annual parliaments, and the separation of Church and State were demanded. Meetings were held throughout the island. In the manufacturing towns the Chartists were in the majority. The radical leaders in parliament were very active. Feargus O'Conner, Joseph Hume, Richard Cobden and others, advocated the rights of the masses. Suddenly the news of a revolution in France called the Chartists of England to action. In the latter part of February, 1848, the masses of Paris arose, overthrew the monarchy, and drove the king, Louis Philippe, and all the royal family, out of the country. Louis Philippe fled to England, where he was respectfully received and protected till his death. The greater part of Europe was convulsed

What was the state of feeling in Ireland? What did John Mitchell do? What other popular leaders are mentioned? What did government do? What was the fate of Mitchell? What was the condition of things in England? What did the Chartists demand? What news was received from France?

by the shock of the French revolution; and the successful establishment of a democratic republic raised the hopes of the liberals in every country. The Chartists of England thought that the time for a strong demonstration had arrived. It was given out that a great meeting would be held at Kensington common, at London, on the 10th of April, and that a petition would be prepared, signed by millions of names, and carried to the parliament-house by a vast procession of Chartists. Government prepared to put down any attempt at revolution. Under the direction of the duke of Wellington, the most efficient disposition of the military and police force was made. These preparations overawed the Chartists. They had no great leader whose position, talents and influence were sufficient to command general respect. O'Connor had not sufficient energy for the crisis. The meeting was held upon the day appointed, but it was small. Some energetic speeches were made, but they were not responded to by the masses. The monster petition was sent to parliament, and the meeting dispersed. Several of the Chartist leaders were arrested and sentenced to be imprisoned for a few years, and the storm blew over for the time.

In Ireland the agitation of the repeal question was maintained with great energy. The leaders of the repeal party sought to secure the aid of the French republic, but Lamartine, the minister of foreign affairs in that country, kept a neutral position. On the 20th of July a collision took place between some of the insurgents, headed by Smith O'Brien and Doheny, and the police, when several of the former were killed or wounded. O'Brien, Doheny, Meagher, and several other prominent agitators were arrested and tried for high treason. The three chief leaders were sentenced to be hung; but this punishment was afterwards commuted to banishment. After this event the agitation was quieted.

How did this effect the Chartists? What is said of a great meeting at Kensington common? What did government do? Give an account of the affair. What did the leaders of the repeal party do in Ireland? Give an account of the affair.

The repeal of the corn law was effected in 1846, under the administration of Sir Robert Peel. This measure gave great satisfaction to the poorer classes.

Meantime, while the agitation was going on, and civil war was threatened, famine and pestilence were making havoc among the people of Ireland. It is credibly stated that upwards of two thousand persons sometimes died in a day. The attention of the government was directed to the relief of the Irish, but with little effect. Thousands emigrated to America, trusting to find a happier home than their own beautiful but unfortunate island had afforded.

In 1846, the disputed claim of the United States to the Oregon territory was adjusted by a treaty with that power.

In India, after one or two reverses, the British subdued the Sikhs and annexed the rich territory of the peninsula.

In that quarter of the world the power of Great Britain was rapidly becoming predominant. The natives were as much benefited thereby as the conquerors, since their most horrible customs have been entirely abolished.

Great Britain remained neutral during the continental wars of 1848 and 1849, but afterwards supported the sultan of Turkey, when he refused to surrender the fugitives from Hungary.

Ministerial changes were the most important events in Great Britain from 1848 to the close of 1853. The ministry, headed by Lord John Russell, had been sustained by a majority in the house of commons for several years, when, by combination of the opposition, it was defeated, and compelled to resign in February, 1852.

A new ministry was formed under the leadership of the earl of Derby and Mr. Benjamin D'Israeli, the high tory and protectionist orators. This ministry could not long command a majority, and resigned in December, 1852.

When was the repeal of the corn law effected? Under whose administration? The effect of the repeal? What is said of a famine in Ireland? What claim was settled in 1846? What was going on in India? What was the most important events between 1848 and 1853?

A ministry was now formed under the premiership of the earl of Aberdeen, and included Lord John Russell and nearly all the leaders of parliament who were not members of the protectionist party.

In the meantime Great Britain was compelled to mourn the loss of her greatest warrior and her greatest statesman, viz., the duke of Wellington and Sir Robert Peel.

Sir Robert Peel died on the 3d day of July, 1850, at the age of sixty-two years. The duke of Wellington died on the 14th of September, 1852, at the age of eighty-three years. The funeral honors paid to his memory were of the most imposing and magnificent description.

A World's Fair, held in a crystal palace in London, at which were exhibited the productions of human arts and industry from all parts of the world, and a great anti-papal agitation in consequence of the appointment of an English cardinal, were the other events of general interest occurring in Great Britain during 1852. By the exhibition of the industry of all nations, the interests of peace were thought to have been greatly advanced. The appointment of the cardinal was denounced as an encroachment of papal power, and the adoption of violent measures was apprehended, but a war of words was the only result.

In 1851 the discovery of a great gold-field in New South Wales raised Australia to a level with California in the eyes of the commercial world. From the 29th of September to the 17th of December, the quantity of gold mined and washed was valued at £730,242. New discoveries were constantly being made. Fortune-seekers flocked to Australia from all parts of the commercial world. The population and trade of the country has increased at an astonishing rate, and an enterprising spirit was manifested by new comers, which has effected great changes in

What changes took place in the ministry? When did Sir Robert Peel die? When did the duke of Wellington die? What events of interest occurred in 1852? What is said of the exhibition? Of the appointment of the cardinal? When was gold discovered in Australia? What was the effect of the discovery?

that quarter of the world—so long considered fit only for the establishment of penal colonies.

The designs of the czar of Russia upon Turkey had long been suspected by the ministers of the other great powers of Europe, but they were not prepared to see them put in execution at so early a period as that which Nicholas had fixed. On the 28th of February, 1853, Admiral Prince Menschikoff arrived at Constantinople, charged with a mission “concerning the restoration of the Holy Places, and the securing of adequate protection to the Greek Christians of Turkey.” The sultan refused to comply, and on the 2d day of July the Russian troops under Prince Gortschakoff crossed the Pruth and invaded the Turkish territory.

In the meantime the other great powers of Europe did not regard those movements with indifference. France and Great Britain expressed a determination to uphold the independence of Turkey, and preparations were made for a general European war.

Unavailing efforts were made for the amicable settlement of the difficulty, and the porte made every preparation for a war which now seemed inevitable. Three hundred and fifty thousand troops were soon in the field, and the greatest enthusiasm prevailed among the Turks. Omer Pacha was appointed commander-in-chief, and for some time the Turks generally had the advantage.

Lord Aberdeen, the English premier, was averse to engaging in this war, but the spirit of the English people was aroused, and the consequence was, inevitably, war.

The movements of Nicholas threatened the existence of Turkey as an independent power, and foreshadowed either her dis-

What is said of the designs of the czar of Russia upon Turkey? How did the difficulty between the two nations commence? What did Great Britain and France do? What is said of efforts as to a settlement? What preparations for war were made by the porte? What was Lord Aberdeen's policy? What was the feeling of the English people in regard to the war? What is said of the movements of Nicholas?

memberment or entire absorption into his empire. This done, Russia, mistress of the Black and Caspian Seas and of the eastern Mediterranean—Russia, in the path to India and China—not England alone, but all Europe would have cause to fear her overgrown strength.

England had a still higher motive. She was bound by treaty to defend the sultan against the assaults of Russia, and there was, moreover, an earnest hope that a warfare against this giant of despotisms might result in the restoration of Hungary and Poland.

With Louis Napoleon the war was a means whereby to strengthen himself upon the throne, by feeding the passion of the French for glory, and fomenting their hatred against Russia.

The British government issued a declaration of war in April, 1854, and at about the same time Napoleon III. announced that war existed between France and Russia by the act of the latter power.

Immediately after the declaration of war a convention was entered into between France and England. By its terms the two powers agreed to do what depended on them to restore peace between Russia and Turkey on a solid and durable basis, and to guarantee Europe against the return of those "lamentable complications which have so disturbed the general peace." They were to receive into their alliance for co operation in the proposed object, any of the other powers of Europe that might wish to join it.

They pledged themselves not to accept in any event any overtures for peace, nor enter into any arrangement with Russia, without having previously deliberated upon it in common. They renounced in advance any particular advantage to themselves from the events which might result. And finally they agreed

What motives had England for entering upon the war? What was Napoleon's object? When did the British government issue a declaration of war? What announcement did Napoleon make? What is said of a convention between France and England? What were the terms agreed upon?

to supply, according to the necessities of the war, determined by a common agreement, land and sea forces sufficient to meet them.

It was confidently affirmed that Austria would soon join the alliance; but whether with her help or not, the allies felt sure of success. The czar, it was said, was rich in men but poor in money, and the bravery of his soldiers and the skill of their commanders were spoken of with almost contempt. The successes of Omer Pacha and his Turks against the generals of the czar in the former campaign had induced a strong belief that a handful of disciplined French and English would be a match for a horde of the mere "men-machines" of the czar.

Arrangements were made by the allies to march 90,000 men—30,000 British troops and 60,000 French—to the banks of the Danube. Lord Raglan was appointed to command the British forces, and Marshal St. Arnaud those of France. Napoleon authorized a loan of 250,000,000 francs, to be taken by his own subjects, and more than the amount was subscribed. In both England and France the greatest enthusiasm was manifested in the support of government measures.

It is not our purpose in this volume to enter upon any detailed account of this war, farther than may be deemed necessary to show the part which England took in relation to it.

Hostilities between the allies and Russia commenced by the bombardment of Odessa, March 22d, 1854. Admirals Dundas and Hamelin approaching that town, an English vessel bearing a flag of truce was fired upon by the batteries. The next day the magazines, batteries and vessels in the harbor were destroyed, the town being left uninjured.

The day of the bombardment of Odessa was the same upon which the Russians, fifty thousand strong, under Generals Gortschakoff and Luders succeeded in crossing the Danube.

What nation did they expect would join the alliance? What did the allies think as to the power of the czar? What arrangements were made by the allies? Who commanded the French and English armies? How did hostilities commence? When? What is said of the bombardment of Odessa?

The Russian army continued to advance, and by the 1st of April had laid siege to Silistria. Omer Pacha, in the mean time, had retreated with the main body of the Turkish army, to the strong mountain position of Schumla. By the 14th the Russians had raised heavy batteries on the north side of the river, and opened a heavy fire upon the tower.

Silistria was held by Mussa Pacha and 8,000 men: it was assailed by 53,000 men; with numerous and heavy artillery; its fall seemed certain. The siege was an alternation of bombardments and assaults, interspersed with daring sorties by the besieged. On the 11th of May, a Russian assault was forced back with a loss of over 2,000 men. Ten days later, another general assault was attempted, and a repulse once more sustained. Again, on the 29th of May, the Turks drove back their enemies with tremendous slaughter; the loss of the Russians being about 5,000.

During this time, a large Anglo-French army had accumulated at Varna, only seventy miles from Silistria, while at Schumla, still nearer, lay Omer Pacha with an efficient force of about 70,000 Turks. Yet no effort was made to succor the intrepid Mussa Pacha and his brave comrades. But in June, when the unequal contest before the walls of Silistria had been waged for more than a month, Omer Pacha dispatched 30,000 men to the relief of the besieged.

A grand assault was made upon the town on the 29th of June, from which the Russians were repulsed with tremendous slaughter. Among their generals, Count Orloff was killed, Generals Luders, Schilders, and Gortschakoff were severely, and Prince Paskiewitch desperately wounded.

Mussa Pacha, the Turkish commander, was killed. Thus ended the siege of Silistria, and one of the bravest defenses on record.

Give an account of the siege of Silistria. Where were the Anglo-French and Turkish armies all this time? What was their conduct? How were the besiegers finally repulsed?

All this time the French and English forces lay inactive at Varna, cholera and fever sweeping through their lines and weakening their armies more than an ordinary field campaign.

The people of England and France, indignant at this shameful delay, loudly demanded action. St. Arnaud and Raglan received orders to embark for the Crimea.

The Crimea is a large peninsula extending into the Black Sea, and joined to the main land by a narrow isthmus. Sympheropol was the Russian capital, and had a population of about 8,000; Sebastopol contained 40,000 inhabitants, and the whole peninsula about 300,000. Sebastopol was strongly fortified by the Russians, and its harbor was the rendezvous of their fleet in the Euxine.

The allied flota of convoys and transports, consisting of about three hundred vessels, and conveying 58,000 troops, (of whom 25,000 were British, 25,000 French, and 8,000 Turks,) weighed anchor on the 7th of September, leaving a strong reserve at Varna. The fleet came to anchor in Kalamita bay, on the 14th, and the troops landed without opposition.

An incident connected with the debarkation will well illustrate the administrative difference between the English and French armies. The French, and even the Turks, carried their camp equipage ashore with them the first day. The British did not. A cold, pelting rain storm came up at night, and while the former were comfortably sheltered, the latter were exposed to all the inclemencies of the elements. The soldiers were soaked through and through; their blankets and coats were saturated with water, and they had no change of raiment.

The result of this exposure was an increase of sickness, and the cholera, which had all along hung about the armies, mark still greater ravages among the British troops.

What were the French and English armies doing at this time? How did the French and English people regard this delay? What orders did St. Arnaud and Raglan receive? What is said of the Crimea? What is said of the movement of the fleet? What incident is spoken of in connection with their landing? What was the consequence?

A similar contrast, and equally as striking, appeared after the battle of Alma. The English ambulance corps had been left behind at Varna, and their wounded men were sent down to the ships, a distance of three miles, on jolting carts or tedious litters. The French had well appointed hospital vans, large enough for the conveyance of ten or twelve men, and drawn by mules.

Early on the morning of the 19th, the allies commenced their march along the shore towards Sebastopol. The armies came in sight of the Russian forces during the day, and some skirmishing ensued. They bivouacked at night on the south bank of the Bulgavac, the Russians being strongly entrenched on the heights south of the Alma river.

On the 20th of September, the allied army crossed the Alma, and a bloody battle ensued, in which the Russians were finally defeated with a loss of 1,762 killed, 2,315 wounded, and 700 taken prisoners. The Russian force engaged mustered between 40,000 and 50,000. The loss of the allies was 606 killed, and 2,699 wounded.

Marshal de St. Arnaud, whose health had been very feeble for some weeks, kept his horse twelve hours on the field of battle, though suffering so acutely that, at last, he had to be supported in the saddle. A few days after, he resigned his command to General Canrobert, and embarked for home, but died at sea on the 29th.

On the 23d, the allied army resumed their march; and on the 24th, at night fall, the English encamped on the left bank of the Balbec river, about four miles from Sebastopol. The French were posted on the hills in advance. The fleet was anchored off the mouth of the Katcha. On the 25th, the English seized Balaklava, which they established as their basis of operations.

What other contrast is mentioned? What was the next movement of the allies? When did they cross the Alma? Give an account of the battle of Alma. What is said of Marshal St. Arnaud? Who succeeded him? What were the next movements of the allies? When was Balaklava taken?

The French joined their allies, and on the 28th, the united forces took position on the heights at the south side of Sebastopol.

Sir John Burgoyne, a peninsular veteran, and the chief of the British engineers, boasted that one day's bombardment only would be necessary.

On the night of the 16th of October, it was decided that the allied fire should be opened on the Russian line the following morning. Accordingly, at daylight on the 17th, the silence was broken by a tremendous peal of artillery. A hundred and twenty-six pieces, many of them of the largest calibre, opened at once upon the Russian defenses, and were answered by a still larger number of equal range and power.

The French batteries on the right, overpowered by the Russian guns, were very much weakened, and their fire slackened minute by minute. Shortly after, the magazine in this portion of the works blew up with an enormous explosion, killing and wounding a hundred men. The Russians cheered, fired with renewed vigor, and crushed the French fire almost entirely.

In the afternoon the magazine in the Redan was fired by an English shell, and a great number of guns silenced by its explosion. The English fire told heavily on the round tower. The allied fleet attacked the sea forts during the bombardment, but at great disadvantage, and with considerable loss.

The next morning the French were unable to resume their fire, and the Russians directed theirs, which was much heavier than on the previous day, on the English attack alone. They supplied the places of their dismounted guns with fresh pieces from their arsenals, and repaired during the night the damage done to their lines through the day.

The result of one day's fire, which Sir John Burgoyne had

When did the allied forces take position before Sebastopol? What was Sir John Burgoyne's prediction? Give an account of the first bombardment of Sebastopol. What did the result of one day's fire show?

asked for, taught the assailants that their task was one of infinitely more difficulty than they had fancied.

It was the next day, the 18th, while watching the increased vigor of the Russian fire, and seeing their own men dropping under it in the trenches, that they received the mail from home bringing the announcement of the fall of Sebastopol and the details of their imaginary victory. The contrast with the reality was a bitter and galling one.

Thus commenced the siege of Sebastopol. The bombardment continued with little interruption till the 20th, when Russian troops began to show themselves in the valley of the Tchernaya. This force soon increased to full thirty thousand men. Once or twice their guns opened fire on the Turks garrisoning the outpost in front of Balaklava, but with little effect. Their position threatened the rear of the allied camps and their communication with Balaklava.

The battle of Balaklava, in which was displayed a brilliant valor, an excess of courage, and a daring which would have reflected lustre on the days of chivalry, began at day-break on the 25th of October, with a cannonade from the Russian guns upon the Turkish outposts. In this bloody battle the allies gained an advantage but no decisive victory. The ensuing day a force 8,000 strong sailed from Sebastopol and attacked the right of the English position, but were repulsed, Gortschakoff, then commander, being wounded. The fire of the allies upon the town became more and more effective. The 5th of November was determined upon by Canrobert and Raglan for an assault. But that day was allotted otherwise. Its bloody page in the book of history was foreordained for the battle of Inkerman, not the storming of Sebastopol.

The battle of Inkerman was commenced by the Russians in

What news did the allies receive from home? When was the battle of Balaklava fought? Give an account of it. What is said of an attack the next day? When was the battle of Inkerman fought?

full confidence of victory. Menschikoff boasted in his despatches to St. Petersburg, that the destruction of the allies was certain to be accomplished.

The Russians had every advantage. It was a dark, foggy morning, and the allies could tell neither the position nor strength of the enemy; and it is highly probable that, had the day been clear, so that the discouraging disproportion of numbers engaged could have been known, the allies would have fled in dismay. The strife more resembled a succession of hand to hand personal conflicts, in which a handful of men coped with hundreds of opponents, than a battle. We can here only detail one or two of the many incidents of the day. For a long time 500 of the Coldstream Guards kept at bay more than 7,000 antagonists. A two-gun battery was captured and recaptured no less than five times, the English defending it being outnumbered by fifty to one. At another battery an artillery sergeant was seen defending himself with his sword alone, amid a hundred foes, for full five minutes. When, at last, the Russians retired, after nine hours fighting, there was little exultation among the allies. It was a gloomy triumph. The Russian forces engaged numbered between 40,000 and 50,000. Their entire loss was 2,967 killed, and 5,701 wounded. Opposed to them were 8,000 English, re-enforced by 6,000 French. The loss of the allies was far severer in proportion than that of their opponents, amounting to 2,612 killed, wounded and missing among the English, and 1,724 of the French.

Although each successive engagement since the landing in the Crimea had terminated in favor of the allies, yet the successes had cost a terrible expenditure of life; and the allied force of 60,000, which had debarked at the outset, notwithstanding the reinforcements that had been sent out, had diminished at a most fearful rate.

Give an account of it? Mention some instances of heroic bravery. What number of Russians were engaged? What was their loss? What was the force opposed to them? Their losses? What is said of the war thus far?

The siege of Sebastopol was now suspended for the season, and the allies prepared themselves as best they could for the winter.

We will now for a few moments turn to the war as developed in another quarter.

Early in the spring, Sir Charles Napier had been dispatched with a powerful fleet to the Baltic. He was afterward joined by a French squadron, and in August by a French land force of 25,000 men, commanded by General Baraguay d'Hilliers. The mission and pledge of Admiral Napier was to shatter the Russian fortresses in the Baltic, and, especially, to master Cronstadt, the strongest of them all, and the key to St. Petersburg. Very little, however, was accomplished save the taking of a few minor forts and some prizes. The only important result was the capture of Bomarsund, a strong fortress on one of the Aland isles.

The war was still as popular as ever in England, but indignation began to be rife at the manner in which it was conducted. Seemingly, aimless and barren of results thus far, the great contest had nothing to show save the storied heroism of contending soldiers,—their steady valor and calm defiance of death,—the fanciful glories of Alma, Balaklava and Inkerman. The most hopeless incompetency, the saddest poverty of resources, the tamest plodding after the slowest ideas, on the part of those who should have managed the British war establishment, disgraced their administration in every branch of the service. Lord John Russell, in a speech in parliament, characterized the news received from the camp before Sebastopol, as “not only painful, but horrible and heart-rending.”

The army before Sebastopol suffered for want of provisions and stores of all kinds, for dearth of huts and proper clothing,

What did the allies now do? Give an account of Sir Charles Napier's expedition. What was now the feeling in England in regard to the war? How did Lord John Russell characterize the war? What was the condition of the army?

and for lack of medical attendance. The name of Florence Nightingale will live forever on the page of history. At the head of a party of nurses which she had been instrumental in organizing, she gave herself to alleviating the sufferings of her wounded and invalid countrymen, with a devotion which at last imperiled her own life. Upon one occasion, when a large number of wounded soldiers arrived from the Crimea, she applied upon her own responsibility to a store keeper for bedding and other necessary articles. He refused to deliver them without a written order from the head of his department. Pressed by the emergency, she requested the stoutest of the wounded soldiers about her to break open the door of the store-house, which accomplished, she served out the requisite articles with her own hand, saving, probably, by her prompt action, a hundred lives that routine would have sacrificed.

The contrast was striking between the English and their brothers in arms, the French. The latter suffered somewhat, indeed, but the thorough organization of their army diminished to a great extent the rigors of their position.

Mr. Roebuck motioned, in the House of Commons, for the appointment of a select committee to inquire into the immediate causes of the Crimean disasters, and the conduct of the war generally. Lord John Russell resigned the important position which he held in the Aberdeen ministry. The committee of inquiry being ordered, Aberdeen and his colleague resigned, and a new ministry was formed, of which Lord Palmerston was the head.

The nation felt much confidence that he would prosecute the war with energy.

A conference of the contending parties having been determined upon at Vienna, eleven leading diplomatists and statesmen representing England, France, Turkey, Austria and Russia,

What is said of Florence Nightingale? What is said of the contrast between the condition of the English and French? What was done in parliament? The consequence? Who was at the head of the new ministry? Give an account of a conference.

assembled on the 15th of March, and took into consideration the following four points: 1. That Russia should abandon her claim of a protectorate over Moldavia, Wallachia and Servia, the privileges recognized to those provinces by the sultan being under the guarantee of the five great powers.

2. The free navigation of the Danube.

3. The abolishment of Russian preponderance in the Black Sea, and the attachment of the Ottoman Empire to the European balance of power.

4. The abrogation of all treaties under which Russia had claimed an official protectorate over the Christian subjects of the sultan, the latter guaranteeing the religious privileges of the different Christian communities in Turkey.

Russia agreed to the first and second of the above points, but the third was one of more difficulty. The czar would not consent to the conversion of the Black Sea into a mere mercantile lake. How should he surrender his defensive fleets and arsenals? To Russia, the Black Sea was what canals and the southern waters were to England. The Euxine was the chief outlet of Russian activity. On the Euxine depended the harbors of the sea of Azoff, and the security of the Russian possessions beyond the Caucasus. As well ask Great Britain to surrender Gibraltar, or France to give up Toulon.

Russia's persistent objection to this point ended the conference. About this time, Nicholas, emperor of Russia, died, and the friends of peace hoped that Russia, thus in a critical strait, and deprived of her head and right arm of the unsparing energy and iron will of Nicholas, would soon succumb.

But their hopes were soon dissipated, for the new czar, Alexander II., eldest son of Nicholas, announced in a manifesto his adherence to the policy of his ancestors, and that the struggle

What were the four points? The result of the conference? When did the Emperor Nicholas die? What did the friends of peace hope? How were their hopes dissipated?

with the invaders of his territory would be carried on as determinedly as ever.

The allied army in the Crimea had struggled manfully through the hardships of winter. Disease and the frequent sorties of the Russians had fearfully weakened their strength. But in the spring, reinforcements arrived and raised it to an effective force of 100,000 men.

On the 17th of February, 1855, the Russians made an attack upon Eupatoria, an important point, which was bravely defended by the Turks commanded by Omer Pacha. The English steamers in the bay contributed energetically to the defense of the place, and the Russians withdrew about noon.

Monday, the 9th of April, was the day fixed upon by the allied generals for the commencement of the second bombardment of Sebastopol. Orders were given for beginning the cannonade at the dawn on that day. As soon as the French and English gunners could catch sight of the opposing batteries they opened fire. The magnitude of this cannonade is without a parallel in military history. The French employed three hundred and sixty guns and mortars, and the English pieces numbered one hundred and forty. During the first six days the British alone fired the immense amount of between 16,000 and 17,000 thirty-two-pound and sixty-eight-pound shot, 7,800 thirteen-inch and 4,500 ten-inch shells, making an aggregate of about 2,200 tons of shot and 500 tons of powder. The French, being so much stronger in artillery, would swell the gross amount to nearly 1,600 tons of powder and at least 6,000 tons of shot and shells, which were hurled against the devoted city.

Sixteen days, without intermission, the bombardment continued, when, from exhaustion of both men and material, it was again for a time suspended.

What was the condition of the allied army in the spring? What is said of an attack upon Eupatoria? When did the second bombardment of Sebastopol commence? Give an account of it. How long did the bombardment continue?

In May, General Canrobert resigned the control of the army to General Pelissier, and for a while took the command of the first division. About this time, Sardinia joined the alliance with 15,000 men. The allied army then numbered 215,000 men of the following nationalities: 110,000 French, 30,000 English, 60,000 Turks, and 15,000 Sardinians. The Russians in and about Sebastopol were 130,000 strong.

On the night of the 22d of May a body of French troops made a successful attack on the rifle-pits near the quarantine battery. In this attack the French loss was about 1,600, that of the Russians nearly 2,000.

The third bombardment of Sebastopol commenced on the 6th of June. At three o'clock in the afternoon over three hundred guns and mortars on the side of the French, and one hundred and fifty-seven on that of the English, burst from silence into uproar, and after a short space the Russians replied with a fire heavier than in former attacks, but by no means so well directed. All that afternoon and through the night the cannonade continued, and the next morning the Russian fire which had begun so spiritedly, was much subdued.

It had been arranged before unmasking the batteries that on the second day an assault should be made. The time chosen for the assault was half past six in the afternoon. Accordingly, upon the given signal, General Pelissier with his forces left their trenches, and dashing over the line of intrenchment which the Russians had drawn in front of their works, after a hot encounter, made themselves masters of the Mamelon. The Russians hurried off towards the Malakoff, while the tri-color was hoisted on the captured work.

Flushed with success, the French pursued the Russians and attempted to storm the formidable Malakoff itself, but they

Who now joined the alliance? Give an account of an attack made on the 22d of May. When did the third bombardment commence? Give an account of it. When was the assault made? Give an account of the French attack.

were driven back amid a tremendous roar of musketry and cannon, and they retired to the Mamelon.

While the French were thus engaged, the English detachment advanced towards the Redan. The English succeeded in making good their footing in the Quarries, while the French intrenched themselves in the Mamelon. The carnage on both sides had been dreadful.

The strip of debateable ground between the besiegers and the besieged was now very narrow. From the Russians in the Malakoff to the French on the Mamelon the distance was only five hundred yards, while the Quarries, held by the British, was not over two hundred yards from the Redan.

The 18th of June, the fortieth anniversary of the battle of Waterloo, was appointed for a grand assault. The French were to attack the Malakoff, and the English the Redan. Pelissier commenced the assault at daybreak. Scarcely, however, had the French storming columns made their appearance beyond their own lines, when they were assailed by a murderous fire of grape and musketry, both from the Russian works and steamers. Observing this, Raglan ordered an advance upon the Redan. After a heroic struggle for several hours, the enormous losses of the allies compelled them to retreat.

The French for a short time established themselves in the Malakoff, but they were soon expelled with severe loss. The losses of the different combatants in this attack is estimated as follows: French, 37 officers killed, 19 desperately wounded, and 17 prisoners; 1,544 men killed and missing, and 1,644 wounded. English, 19 officers killed, 74 wounded; 1,589 men killed and wounded. Russians, 2 general officers and 78 men killed, 4,194 wounded.

While the assailants were somewhat discouraged by their ill

Of the English attack. What was now the distance between the besiegers and the besieged? When was the grand assault made? What was the plan of it? Give an account of it. What were the losses of the combatants?

success, the official reports transmitted to the czar did not reveal so flattering a picture of the condition of Sebastopol as had been before presented. The south side of the town had suffered severely; while in the northern part, which escaped with far less injury, there was hardly a house whose walls or roof had not been perforated by ball, shell, or rocket, or whose window frames and panes had not been destroyed by fragments of exploding shells.

On the 18th of August, the signal was given for a re-commencement of the bombardment of Sebastopol. Instantly all the guns in the English works broke out in one loud roar. Undismayed by the attack, the Russians replied with fierce energy, and the contending parties were soon enveloped in clouds of red smoke, chiefly from the explosion of mortars on both sides.

As the day advanced, the effect of the English fire was easily perceptible in the destruction of the Russian works, and the ragged appearance which they began to present. Towards night the English cannonade began to slacken somewhat, as did that of the Russians. At half-past six, a volley of shells from an English battery fell into the advanced works of the Russians, and exploded a magazine with a terrific crash, amidst the enthusiastic cheers of the English soldiers. Shortly afterwards another explosion took place, of almost equal magnitude.

Under cover of the English fire, the French proceeded rapidly in their works against the Malakoff, until their approaches were close upon it.

On the 5th of September, the cannonade which had diminished in intensity for a few of the previous days, was recommenced with a greater and more sustained vigor than in any previous fire. This was continued through the 6th and the 7th, but on these two days the Russians replied but feebly.

What was now the condition of Sebastopol? When did the bombardment again commence? Give an account of it.

On the 8th of September, the final assault upon Sebastopol commenced. The plan of attack was as follows: the French right under General M'Mahon's division was to assail the Malakoff; General Dulac's division was to attack the Little Redan; General La Motterouge was to march against the curtain connecting these two extreme points; and the Great Redan was to be assaulted by the English.

The French, after a desperate struggle, raised the tricolor over the parapet of the Malakoff, which was the signal for the British assault; and their divisions advanced toward the Redan. This attack was not so well planned as that of the French, and after a most obstinate and bloody conflict, the divisions were forced back by the Russians with great slaughter.

Of the four points assaulted, only the Malakoff was carried. The French attack upon the Little Redan was a failure; as was also the assault upon the Central Bastion.

During the twenty-three days preceding the capture of the Malakoff, the loss of life in the Russian army was immense. On the 17th of August, the opening day of the last bombardment, they lost 1,500; on the four following days, 4,000; then, in fifteen days, to the 5th of September, 8,000; and finally, from the 5th to the 8th, 4,000; making a total of 17,500 killed and wounded during the bombardment. Then came the assault. During this, the Russians had 2,684 killed, 6,058 wounded, 1,185 contused, and 1,763 missing—nearly 12,000 in all; so that their entire loss in twenty-three days, amounted to 30,000 men, to which we may add a loss from sickness of about 10,000 more. On the part of the allies, the loss amounted to about a fifth or sixth of this number. The offensive power of the garrison was completely crushed, and its defensive strength greatly reduced.

When did the final assault upon Sebastopol commence? What was the plan of it? Give an account of it. Give a summing up of the losses of the Russians for twenty-three days. What is said of the losses of the allies? Continue the account of the movements.

By eight o'clock at night, the Russians began quietly to withdraw from the town, in the principal houses of which they had previously stored up combustibles, in order to render Sebastopol a second Moscow. A little after midnight the Redan was deserted by all save the dead and the dying. Soon after, wandering fires gleamed through the streets and outskirts of the town, and flames enveloped the principal buildings. Stupendous explosions followed. One behind the Redan shook the whole allied camp. It was succeeded by four others, equally as startling. The city was wrapped in fire and smoke, and torn asunder with the tremendous shock of these volcanoes.

All this time a steady current of Russian infantry was passing in unbroken order to the north side, and but a little after dawn the last battalion crossed, and the opposite hill-sides were alive with their masses.

So closed the famous siege of Sebastopol, on which the gaze of the civilized world had for a year been rested. Gortschakoff had effected his retreat with masterly skill and with perfect ease, in the face of a victorious enemy. He had left the allies few trophies and many bitter memories.

In a historical point of view, the siege of Sebastopol has no parallel. It was nearly a year since the French and English armies had landed at Kalamita bay. In that time they had stormed the heights of the Alma, sustained the glorious disaster of Balaklava, fought the valorous fight of Inkerman, swept the sea of Azoff and its seaboard, wasted Kertch, and seized upon Yenikale, defeated their foe at the Tchernaya; and after passing through the summer's heat, and winter's frost and snow—after being purged in the ordeal of sickness and death, repulse and disaster, and above all, in the fiery glow of victory, their standards floated over Sebastopol. But the armies were not

Of explosions that took place? What is said of the movements of the Russians? What is said of Gortschakoff's retreat? What is said of the siege of Sebastopol? Give a brief review of events. What is said of the allied armies?

the same. Few who landed on the shores of Kalamita bay participated in the triumph. Marshal St. Arnaud and lord Raglan, who led the hosts to the Crimea, had both fallen illustrious victims. Some regiments had been thrice renewed; others had been changed twice over; others again had only a nominal existence.

Of all the pictures of the horrors of war ever presented to the world, the hospital of Sebastopol was the most horrible, heart-rending and revolting.

The emperor Alexander in November made a hurried visit to the south, to cheer his dispirited soldiers with his presence. He left it entirely in the option of Prince Gortschakoff as to what course should be pursued in the Crimea. That general having assumed the responsibility, proclaimed his resolution to hold his ground at all hazards, at least during the winter. He had been reinforced by 22,000 men and supplies, so that his army now numbered about 150,000 men. The allied army was supposed to number 180,000 men; 100,000 French, 35,000 Turks, 30,000 British and 15,000 Sardinians. The two armies began to prepare for winter quarters, where we will leave them for the present, to see what was going on in another quarter.

The fleet which England had this year dispatched to the Baltic was far more powerfully equipped than that which Napier had led. It was commanded by Admiral Dundas, and was joined as before by a smaller French squadron, under Admiral Penaud. On the 31st of May it took up the old station of observation off the stronghold of Cronstadt. No event of importance occurred to interrupt the monotony of the blockade till the 9th of August, when Sweaborg, in the gulf of Finland, one of Russia's strong places, was bombarded by the mortar and gun-

What is said of the hospital of Sebastopol? What is said of the emperor's visit south? What did Gortschakoff resolve upon? What was now the strength of the armies? Give an account of another expedition to the Baltic?

boats of the allied squadron. A conflagration, lasting forty-five hours, destroyed nearly all the magazines and store-houses of the arsenal, but the forts remained unshattered. The bombardment caused a heavy loss of life among the Russians, while in the fleet there was not a death. This was the only noteworthy result achieved during the season, and early in October the inclemency of the weather compelled the abandonment of the blockade.

Not among the least important events of the year 1855, was the interchange of visits between the monarchs of the allied nations, England and France. In April, Napoleon, accompanied by the Empress Eugenie, crossed the channel. His presence in England was fraught with much significance. As Emperor of France, the ally of England, and the invited guest of Victoria, he rode, amid cheers and welcomes, through the same streets that, but seven years before, he had walked as a special constable and a despised exile. French sovereigns and their empresses, either as prisoners, suppliants, or refugees, had touched those shores before, but for eight hundred years, he was the first who had come in an equal guise of friendship.

In August, the visit of the emperor and empress of the French to London, was reciprocated by Victoria and Albert. Whatever magnificence and ostentation of welcome had been put forth to greet Napoleon and Eugenie, was outdone in return.

Negotiations had been carried on, more or less constantly, through the medium of Vienna, but as yet, unsuccessfully. The new year saw the allies making preparations for a vigorous campaign, and Russia equipping herself for a determined defense.

It soon became apparent, however, that the gigantic preparations on either side were to be set at naught, and that the last campaign of the war had been contested. On the 17th of Jan-

The result of the bombardment? What is said of an interchange of visits between Napoleon and Victoria? What is said of the success of negotiations for peace? How did the new year find the armies?

uary, Russia commenced her acceptance of the last propositions for peace made by means of Austria.

An armistice was declared between the armies, and on the 25th of February, a congress of plenipotentiaries from France, England, Austria, Russia, Turkey and Sardinia, assembled in Paris, to deliberate upon the conditions of peace.

On the 30th of March, 1856, it was proclaimed officially that the treaty of peace had been signed that day. The event was announced in Paris and London by the roar of artillery; Paris was illuminated; and in England, the church bells pealed right merrily. The next day great rejoicings took place at St. Petersburg.

The most important points decided by the treaty were these: All conquered territory was to be restored. The Black Sea was neutralized and forbidden to the war ships of any nation, except a small naval force to be agreed upon between Russia and Turkey. Trade in its waters and ports was to be free, and no fortresses were to be constructed on its coasts. Turkey was admitted to an equal rank among the European nations. The Danube was to be free to navigation. The principalities had certain privileges granted to them. The independence and integrity of Turkey were guaranteed, and the reforms which the Sultan had granted his Christian subjects were approved.

The conditions of peace were generally received with favor by all parties. Some little disaffection was shown in England, for their army and navy had won few laurels; and counted vauntingly on the campaign to come. To show what she might do, England held an immense naval review at Spithead.

The events of importance subsequent to the peace of 1856, are scarcely yet matured into matters of settled history; and

When did Russia commence her acceptance of the propositions for peace? When did a congress meet? What powers were represented? When was peace proclaimed? The effect of the announcement? What were the most important points decided by the treaty? How were these conditions generally received? What did England do?

wishing to avoid a too near approach to the line which separates the historian and the journalist, I shall close, after giving a brief account of the present royal family, with a short review of the ground occupied.

Victoria reigns alone, by virtue of her own right,* and Prince Albert stands in the same relation to her that George, Prince of Denmark, did to Queen Anne; viz., the first subject of the realm. It will be seen by the chart that Victoria is an immediate descendant of Egbert, who in the year 827 united the Saxon Heptarchy, and became the first king of England; her ancestors have, therefore, with but little interruption, occupied the throne of England for more than a thousand years.

The present royal family of England consists of Queen Victoria, born May 24, 1819;

Prince Albert, her husband, born August 26, 1819; and their children:

Victoria Adelaide Mary Louisa, born November 21, 1840, and married to Prince Frederick William, of Prussia, January 25, 1858;

Albert Edward, Prince of Wales, and heir apparent to the crown,† and now on a visit to Canada and this country, born November 9, 1841;

Alice Maud Mary, born April 25, 1843;

Alfred Ernest Augustus, born August 6, 1844;

Helena Augustus Victoria, born May 25, 1846;

Louisa Caroline Alberta, born March, 1848;

Arthur Wm. Patrick Albert, born May, 1850;

Give an account of the present royal family.

* A queen reigning in her own right, is styled *queen regent*; the wife of a king, *queen consort*; and the widow of a king, *queen dowager*.

† An *heir-apparent* to the throne, is the person who, during the life of his ancestor, is entitled to succeed to the crown. An *heir-presumptive* is the person who, if the ancestor should die immediately, would be heir, but whose right of inheritance may be defeated by any contingency, as by the birth of a person who, by the rule of succession, would be entitled to the preference.

Leopold George Duncan Albert, born April 7, 1853;

Beatrice Mary Victoria Feodore, born April 14, 1857.

“The student has been conducted, in this volume, through a period of nearly TWO THOUSAND YEARS. He found these islands inhabited by tribes of NAKED SAVAGES, and leaves them in possession of the most CULTIVATED PEOPLE on earth, renowned in ARTS, ARMS, COMMERCE, and AGRICULTURE.

“He has seen them a prey to ROMAN AMBITION; and has since seen Rome itself captured and occupied by even a small division of British troops. He has beheld them without ships to oppose the invasions of the Romans, the Saxons, the Danes, and the Normans, and he now finds them GREAT ON EVERY OCEAN; and their commercial shipping covering all seas under the protection of a flag everywhere respected.

“He found their rude population covered by CHIEFS of SMALL TRIBES or CLANS, and has beheld these extended to SEVEN kingdoms in England, TWO in Wales, ONE in Scotland, and THREE in Ireland, till after successive contests of power and patriotism, the whole have been united under ONE SOVEREIGN, whose dominion reaches through numerous colonies to every clime in the four quarters of the world.

“He was first introduced to such people as formerly inhabited the woods of America, and living in HUTS and CAVERNS; but in 1860, he finds a country of MATCHLESS CULTIVATION, abounding in all social improvements, affording examples to other nations, of the ARTS OF LIFE, and filled with SPLENDID CITIES, PALACES, and PUBLIC EDIFICES.

“In place, too, of the arbitrary will of the STRONGEST, and the LAW of the MOST DARING, he has traced the gradual development of a system of equal JUSTICE, and the heroic conquest of mind over brutal strength, in the firm establishment of a POLITICAL CONSTITUTION, which, when equally balanced in its three estates, will merit the admiration of the world, and the gratitude of the people who are its fortunate subjects.

“Above all, he has seen the DARKEST SUPERSTITIONS of savage life yield successively to the LIGHTS of CHRISTIANITY—and the abuses of the Romish Church corrected by a REFORMED ESTABLISHMENT, which, tolerating every variety of opinion, enables all to enjoy perfect freedom of conscience, and corresponding modes of worship.”

THE END.

APPENDIX.

ENGLAND is bounded on the south by the English Channel, on the east by the German Sea, on the north by Scotland, and on the west by the Irish Sea and St. George's Channel.

The surface of England is of a diversified character; the eastern districts being generally level, while along the western side of the island are large tracts of hilly and mountainous country.

The rivers of England can not be expected to rival in magnitude those mighty streams which roll through continents, and mark the boundaries of empires. The Thames is not the longest, but it deserves to rank as the first of British rivers on account of its breadth and fullness of current. The Trent is the longest river in England. The Severn is the only great stream which runs from north to south for a considerable part of its course.

The climate of England is variable—generally healthy, though rather moist. The soil is fertile and exceedingly well cultivated.

The constitution of Great Britain centers in the laws by which the country is governed, and in the union of powers by which the laws are made and the government is administered.

The *legislative* power is vested in the parliament, consisting of the king—an hereditary sovereign; the lords—an hereditary aristocracy; and the house of commons, consisting of members chosen by the people from among themselves. The *executive* power is vested in the king.

The royal *prérogative* is counterbalanced by the control which the representatives of the people in parliament exercise over the public purse. It will be recollected that as early as the reign of Edward I., a law was passed that the people of England should not be taxed except by the assent of the house of commons.

The king, without a grant from his people, has scarcely any revenue. He has the prerogative of commanding armies and equipping fleets, but without the concurrence of his parliament he can not maintain them. He can confer appointments to offices, but without his parliament he can not pay the salaries. He can declare war, but without the aid of parlia-

ment he can not carry it on. He has the exclusive right of assembling parliament, but by law he must assemble a parliament every three years. Though the head of the church, he can not alter the established religion, or call individuals to account for their religious opinions. There are many other restraints on the royal prerogative to which it is unnecessary here to allude, as minute detail is not the object of this general description.

The house of lords is composed of the lords spiritual and temporal of England; sixteen temporal peers of Scotland; one archbishop, three bishops and twenty-eight temporal peers of Ireland.

The house of commons, as a distinct branch of the legislature, is the peculiar boast of the British constitution. Through this representative assembly, while all the other greater kingdoms of Europe were subject to the arbitrary rule of a monarch, or to the vexatious domination of an oligarchy, the people acquired their due share in the national councils, and established among other rights that of regulating the collection and distribution of the public money, causing it to be recognized as a principle that they shall not be taxed but by their own consent.

The house of commons recently consisted of 658 members, viz.: English members, 471; Welsh do., 29; Scotch do., 53; Irish do., 105.

The privy council is composed of eminent persons appointed by the king, without restriction as to number, who are bound by oath to advise their sovereign, to the best of their judgment, with all the fidelity and secrecy which their station prescribes.

A cabinet council is not, strictly speaking, recognized by the constitution, but by custom it is a body selected by the sovereign to conduct the business of the state, and the members composing it are held to be responsible advisers of the crown.

The officers of state are those enumerated in the following lists:—

Officers of State forming the Cabinet.

First Lord of the Treasury,	Secretary of State for Colonies and
Lord Chancellor,	war,
Lord Privy-Seal,	Chancellor of the Exchequer,
President of the Council,	First Lord of the Admiralty,
Secretary of State for the Home	Master-General of the Ordnance.
Department,	President of the Board of Control,
Secretary of State for the Foreign	Chancellor of the Duchy of Lan-
Department,	caster.

Officers of State not of the Cabinet.

Lord Chamberlain,	Postmaster General,
Lord Steward,	Lieutenant-General of the Ordinance,
Master of the Horse,	First Commissioner of the Land Revenue,
Secretary of War,	Attorney-General,
Treasurer of the Navy,	Solicitor-General.
President of the Board of Trade,	
Paymaster of the Forces,	
Vice-President of the Board of Trade,	

Ireland.

Lord Lieutenant of Ireland,	Vice-Treasurer,
Lord Chancellor,	Attorney-General,
Commander of the Forces,	Solicitor-General.
Chief Secretary,	

The British orders of honor are six in number, viz.: The Garter, instituted in 1349 by Edward III. It is the highest order of English knighthood. The order of Bath, instituted in 1399, by Richard II., and renewed in 1725, by George I. The Scotch Thistle order of St. Andrew, from the year 787, but renewed in 1540 by James V., of Scotland, and in 1703, by Queen Anne. The Irish order of St. Patrick, instituted in 1783. The order of St. Michael and George, instituted in 1818, only for Malta. The order of British India, instituted in 1837, only for officers in India.

The institutions for public education in England are extensive and splendidly endowed. The two universities of Oxford and Cambridge are not only the wealthiest but the most ancient in Europe. Oxford has nineteen colleges, and Cambridge thirteen.

The most distinguished public schools in England are those of Westminster, Eton, Winchester and Harrow.

Colleges for the particular study of law and equity have long been established in London, under the names of inns of court and inns of chancery. The principal of these are the Middle and Inner Temple, Lincoln's Inn, and Grey's Inn.

Of primary schools, for the great body of the people, there is a great deficiency, although much has been done within a few years to raise the standard of general education. Laudable efforts have from time to time been put forth, and these efforts have been crowned with success, but as yet, millions of children in England are beyond the reach of a common education.

Of scientific institutions of England the foremost is "the Royal Society of London for Improving Natural Knowledge." In its infancy it owed much to the protection of Oliver Cromwell, and having survived the commonwealth, was incorporated by royal charter in 1663.

"The Society of Antiquaries" traces its origin to the reign of Elizabeth, but was not incorporated till 1821.

The total population of England, including Wales, is now about 20,000,000. The agricultural interests of England are immense, but it is not our purpose to enter upon detail. The amount of capital invested in the woollen and cotton manufacture almost exceeds computation, and in this branch of industry it is estimated that over two millions of people in England are employed.

The most valuable of metals in which England abounds are iron, copper and tin; her principal minerals are coal and salt.

In commerce, Britain is without a rival. Her exports and her imports, and her internal trade, are all on a scale of equal magnitude.

Of the churches, which are numerous, St. Paul's is the most extensive, the most noble and the most renowned. Its foundations were laid in 1675; the architect was Sir Christopher Wren. The cross of the dome is 372 feet from the pavement of the church. St. Paul's is by far the grandest Protestant church in the world.

Westminster Abbey is a famous and splendid ecclesiastical structure of the Gothic order of architecture. Many of the most illustrious men of the empire are buried within its precincts, and their monuments possess great interest.

The other remarkable edifices in London are the new houses of parliament, Lambeth Palace, Bank of England, Royal Exchange, Buckingham Palace, Mint, Post-Office, The Tower, and Chelsea Hospital for disabled and superannuated soldiers.

London is the first commercial city in the world; it is situated on both sides of the Thames river, and has a population of over 2,000,000.

Manchester, the second city in England in population, and the great center of the cotton manufacture, is situated on the Irwell, an affluent of the Mersey, 163 miles N. N. W. of London. It contains a population of about 700,000, the greater portion of whom are connected with, or dependent upon, the cotton and woollen manufacture.

Birmingham, the principal hardware manufacturing town in England, called, by Burke, "the toy-shop of Europe," stands on the side of a hill, near the river Rea, nearly in the center of England. Its population is about 350,000.

Liverpool, the second city in Great Britain in commerce, is situated on the east bank of the Mersey, 196 miles N. N. W. of London. The population at the present time is supposed to be about 650,000. Four-fifths of the trade between the United Kingdom and the United States now centers in Liverpool, and she has also a large share of trade with South America and the West Indies.

In the neighborhood of Manchester and Birmingham are a number of large cities, the chief support of which lies in manufactures, as Leeds, Bolton, Blackburn, Preston, Bury, Wigan and Sheffield.

Oxford and Cambridge are famous for their universities. Portsmouth is a great naval station and a busy city. York and Canterbury are noted for their cathedrals. Greenwich has a celebrated observatory and a hospital for disabled and superannuated seamen. Bath is a fashionable watering place. Plymouth, one of the great naval arsenals of the empire, is a large city and has a splendid and capacious harbor. Bristol is an ancient city and now contains many handsome buildings, and has an extensive inland trade.

Thus England is filled with populous cities and towns. Her agricultural population is comparatively small, and since the reduction of duties upon agricultural produce, many farmers and field-laborers have been reduced to poverty. Manufactures and commerce are the grand sources of national wealth, and to these the attention of the people and the government is now directed more than at any former period.



LIBRARY OF CONGRESS



0 021 933 879 A